Indian History and Claims:
A Research Handbook

Volume 1

Canada

85-1231/

INDIAN HISTORY AND CLAIMS:

A RESEARCH HANDBOOK

VOLUME ONE: RESEARCH PROJECTS

Prepared by

Bennett Ellen McCardle

for the

Treaties and Historical Research Centre
Research Branch
Corporate Policy
Indian and Northern Affairs Canada

December 1982
Second Printing, July 1983

©Published under the authority of the
Hon. Douglas C. Frith, P.C., M.P.,
Minister of Indian Affairs and
Northern Development,
Ottawa, 1983.

QS-3246-010-EE-A3

TABLE OF CONTENTS

VOLUME ONE: RESEARCH PROJECTS

Page

ABOUT THIS HANDBOOK 1

WRITING A BAND, RESERVE OR COMMUNITY HISTORY

Speaking to older people 5
Using pictures and maps 7
Using libraries and archives 10
Recording and writing up your findings 11
Some do's and don'ts for researchers 14
Bibliography 17

SPECIFIC RESEARCH PROJECTS

How this section is organized 25

Reserve Lands and Resources 29

The Signing of a Treaty 62

Carrying Out Treaty Promises 77

Surrenders and Sales of Reserve Lands and Resources 88

Economic Development and Finances 104

Hunting, Fishing and Trapping 121

Indian Status, Membership and Family History 130

Other Subjects 150

Other Aids to Research 197

VOLUME TWO: RESEARCH METHODS

The stages of a project 219

Step 1: Plan 221
Step 2: Research 226
Step 3: Evaluate 286
Step 4: Write 290
Step 5: Act 293

APPENDIX 1: Glossary of Terms used in Indian Historical Research 300

APPENDIX 2: Restrictions on Access to Records on Indian History 331

APPENDIX 3: Borrowing or Buying Microfilm for Research on Indian History 344

APPENDIX 4: Addresses of Major Archives, Libraries and Government Offices Holding Indian Historical Records 352
SUBJECT INDEX (for Volumes One and Two) 373

ILLUSTRATIONS

VOLUME ONE

Pages

USING PHOTOGRAPHS: Samson Beaver and family 8

USING PHOTOGRAPHS: Scallop fishermen 16

USING PHOTOGRAPHS: Band Council election 23

MAP OF AN INDIAN RESERVE 38

AN ABSTRACT FROM THE RESERVE GENERAL REGISTER 60

TREATY AREAS OF CANADA 64

A TREATY DOCUMENT 68

AN ORDER-IN-COUNCIL 103

AN INDIAN TRUST FUND STATEMENT 114

A TREATY PAYLIST 148

NATIVE NEWSPAPERS 182

VOLUME TWO

CHECKLIST OF BASIC RESEARCH EXPENSES 225

A TYPICAL LETTER FROM INDIAN AFFAIRS FILES 238

COMPUTERIZED SUBJECT INDEX TO RG-10 243

NOTE: The illustrations on pages 38, 60, 68, 103, 148 and 243 have been slightly retouched to improve the quality of the reproduction. Those on pages 114 and 238 are composite documents based on two or more originals. Identifying information has been deleted from documents on pages 60, 103 and 148.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I would like to thank the many people who have encouraged the writing of this handbook, or who have commented on earlier drafts and provided special material for it. A list of names is poor gratitude, but I would like to mention those whose help was especially welcome: Linda Ervin of the Department of Finance Library, Ottawa; Jim Gallo of the Treaty and Aboriginal Rights Research Centre of Manitoba; Ian Getty of the Nakoda Institute, Morley, Alberta; Donna Gordon, research consultant, Ottawa; Dean Jacobs of the Association of Iroquois and Allied Indians, Wallaceburg, Ontario; Professor Cornelius Jaenen of the University of Ottawa; Jean McNiven and Alison McHoul of the Department of Indian Affairs Library, Ottawa; Jim Morrison, research consultant, Haileybury, Ontario; Professor Donald B. Smith of the University of Calgary, Alberta; Professor Robert Surtees of Nipissing College, North Bay, Ontario; Leo Waisberg of Grand Council Treaty Three, Kenora, Ontario; the archivists of the Public Archives of Canada, especially Bill Russell, Dave Hume and Terry Cook of the Federal Archives Division, and Linda Camponi of the National Map Collection; the research staff of various branches of the Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, Ottawa, in particular Graham Swan and Marjorie Cameron of the Lands Branch, and Richard Berg, George Da Pont and Jack Stagg of the Office of Native Claims; Sandy Burrows of the Newspaper Division, National Library of Canada; and many other librarians and circulation staff of the National Library, whose patience when helping researchers to cope with an especially cumbersome institution deserves special notice.

The National Map Collection and the Federal Archives Division of the Public Archives of Canada (Ottawa), the Archives of the Canadian Rockies (Banff) and cartoonists Tom K. Ryan and Jim Unger kindly allowed me to use items from their collections as illustrations. Many librarians across Canada made special efforts to provide information on short notice about their holdings of Indian Affairs records on microfilm. The word processing staff of the Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development produced the text of the handbook with commendable efficiency.

I would also like to thank Dr. Katie Cooke, former Director of the Research Branch, and John Leslie, Chief of the Treaties and Historical Research Centre, for their promotion and support of the handbook project. Finally, I must record two special debts. The earlier one is to Professor R.W. Dunning (formerly of the Department of Anthropology, University of Toronto) for his thoughtful and comprehensive teaching on native issues. The other is to the Indian Association of Alberta and its affiliated Bands. It was during my work for them, and particularly with my colleagues Richard Daniel, Richard Lightning, Don McMahon, Richard Price, Ken Tyler, and Roland Wright, that I learned the skills shared with readers of these pages. The errors are all my own, but whatever is useful in this handbook can be attributed in some measure to them.

Bennett McCardle
Ottawa, Ontario
November 1982

ABOUT THIS HANDBOOK

This handbook is written for people who are learning how to research Indian history, and for more experienced researchers who want to refresh their memories about sources and methods. Beginners could consider using the approach described in Volume One to write a history of their community; they may also need the more detailed advice on research methods in Volume Two. People already familiar with basic methods may prefer the more technical material on specific topics, found in both volumes.

The handbook is designed for projects which rely on written records, and especially archival documents, as the major source of information. Other valuable sources, such as oral tradition and ethnological studies, are also discussed.

My perspective on research, and my assumptions about researchers' concerns, arise from my experience as a historical and claims researcher for various Indian groups in the Treaty areas of Canada. I believe that this experience is similar to that of many other workers in the same field today. This includes at least some researchers in the non-Treaty areas, even those whose work has traditionally focused on sources other than archives.

Using archival records

An archive, like a library, contains information on a wide variety of subjects. It is a special kind of repository in that it holds old and often unique records and papers. In an archive, you may find letters, reports, legal documents, maps, pictures, films, and sound recordings. These are the records that you, the researcher, can use to write Indian history. You may use documents that date from last year, such as minutes of Band Council debates on economic development plans, or on new forms of government. Your source may be the reports of an Indian-white council held to discuss a military alliance 200 years earlier. You may even use eyewitness accounts of the first meetings and tradings between Indians and non-Indians in Canada, almost five centuries ago.

Your archival research can be applied in a number of ways, alone or in combination with other types of study. Recently, some researchers have used archival records, together with the recollections of living people and studies done by scholars in other fields, to write local histories of Canadian Indian communities -- some of the oldest human settlements in Canada.

Researchers also go to archives to explain and document Indian claims. Archives contain records of events and agreements that affect Indian rights to land, minerals, wildlife, and other valuable resources. Such agreements may have important legal consequences. For example, you may find reports in an archive that describe the negotiation of a Treaty, and the promises made at the time, from several different points of view. After you read and compare these reports, you will be able to explain more clearly what Indians and non-Indians agreed (or thought they agreed) to do when they put their hands to the pen. This kind of fact-finding allows the long-standing claims of Indian people today to be better argued, and perhaps satisfied.

What the handbook aims to do

If this handbook speeds up or otherwise helps the research you are doing now, or if it gives you new ideas, it will have done its job. The handbook was written partly to help in the difficult business of resolving Indian claims -- work that has taken up the time and energy of hundreds of researchers (not to mention the many others involved) during the past decade alone. But it is also meant simply to interest people in Indian history. This handbook may be a dry record of sources and methods, but do not let that mislead you. The stories to be found in archives, and in the memories of living persons, are well worth retelling for their own sake. I hope that the people who use this book will write the histories we are all waiting to read.

How this handbook is arranged

The handbook is divided into two volumes. Volume One is made up of two parts. The first part suggests ways to write a local history, and gives some basic sources. The second part describes research on particular topics, such as Indian lands and resources, Treaties, Indian status, and economic history. It ends with a general bibliography.

Volume Two describes research techniques in greater detail. It suggests ways of planning and carrying out research projects, and describes where to find and how to use major archives, libraries, and other sources of information. Finally, it discusses ways to use research once it is completed. At the end of this volume, four appendices list technical terms used in research on Indian history, restrictions on access to documents, sources of microfilmed documents, and addresses of the most important archives, libraries, and other research collections.

Each segment of the handbook is written so that it can be detached and used on its own, as necessary.

WRITING A BAND, RESERVE OR COMMUNITY HISTORY

A history tells a story about something: a person, a group of people, a place, or even an idea. When you write a history of a Band, reserve, or community, you research and retell all the facts of your story. To do so, you can talk to the people in your community, and ask them to tell you about their lives and past events. You can use old pictures, photographs or maps to explain what life was like in the past. You can extract facts from books and documents.

The story you write can one day be shared with the people in the community. Perhaps your history could be taught to children in school, or used to educate non-Indians. It could be used as a base for other research on specific subjects.

Three methods are often used to collect basic information for a community history: interviewing older people, studying old pictures and maps, and using books and documents in libraries and archives.

Speaking to Older People

Elders remember life in the old days. These memories can be important for the history of the community. They may give you new and unique versions of events. They may reveal facts that challenge or confirm stories found in records kept by the government, or by others. You may be the first and only person ever to record these memories.

To collect these stories, interview elders who are regarded by the community as having a good knowledge of the past. Some people will tell you a great deal about past events without your having to ask them detailed questions. Others may not, because they do not know what kind of information you want. Thus, prepare a list of questions you want to ask before you talk to a person. These questions may be general: for example, you may ask people to describe what life was like in the past, or to speak about traditions they have been taught; or they may be specific questions about people or events in the recent past.

After you have written down your list of questions, check them over once again. Avoid questions that need only a "yes" or "no" answer, such as, "You were present at the signing of the Treaty, weren't you?" Ask instead, "What can you tell me about the signing of the Treaty?". Also, avoid questions that put words into the elder's mouth -- such as, "People who trapped here used to choose places for their traplines themselves, didn't they?" It is the other person's views you want to record, not your own.

The chance to speak to an elder may not come again, so make as complete a record of your meeting as you can. Write down as much of the interview as possible while the person is talking, or make a tape recording of it. Almost all researchers find that tape recording is best, because the result is accurate and complete, and because the recorder gives you, the interviewer, time to listen and think. Prepare yourself by finding a suitable machine, and check that it works smoothly. If necessary, enlist a friend to help operate it, or to take written notes. You can now go ahead and interview the people who have agreed to speak to you.

When the interview is finished, preserve your information carefully. Label tapes with the name of the person interviewed, the interviewer, and the date and place of the interview. Make a complete written copy or "transcript" of the interview as soon as possible. Translate the interview carefully, if necessary. Store the tape in a safe place, so that you or other researchers can refer to it again. (Some researchers have lost valuable interviews by failing to transcribe their tapes properly, and then losing the tape.)

Information collected and recorded in interviews is often called "oral tradition". History written using this information is called "oral history". Researchers often combine oral history with "documentary history" (information taken from written records).

Using Pictures and Maps

Old photographs, pictures, and maps can help you to collect information for a local history. Show these documents to people and ask them to tell you about the person, place, or event in the picture. Many people may think at first that they have no information that you can use. However, some of them will be able to remember a great deal if their memories are refreshed by pictures from their past.

To find useful pictures, ask your family, neighbours, or elders to search through their cupboards and drawers. They may come up with old, one-of-a-kind items. These may be fragile or rare, so make photocopies of them, or have a commercial photo store make duplicates. Then return the originals to their owners.

Where else will you find pictures? Many local offices, schools and libraries have them, filed away in boxes or proudly displayed on the walls. Some central archives also have picture collections. Here is a checklist:

Place to Look for Pictures	How to Find Addresses
Band or Tribal Council Office	Ask in community.
Local church, school, or hospital	Ask in community.
Indian Affairs District Office	Look in a local telephone book or ask at a federal government information office.
Local history museum	Ask at your local public library, or call a local history society, or consult the Directory of Canadian Museums and Related Institutions (Ottawa: Canadian Museums Association, 1981).
Provincial archives	Located in the capital city of each Province or Territory. See Volume 2 of this Handbook (page 353) for addresses.
Special photograph archives	See Volume 2 of this Handbook (page 358) for addresses.

Photo courtesy of Archives of the Canadian Rockies, Banff, Alberta.

Three good examples of local history built up from photographs are Julie Cruikshank and J. Robb's Their Own Yukon: A Photographic History by Yukon Indian People (Whitehorse: Yukon Native Brotherhood, 1975); Regina Beaudin and others, M'chigeeng (West Bay, Ont.: West Bay Band, 1981); and A.M. Lindsay, The Light of Yesterday. A Pictorial History of Life In Northeastern Manitoba during the 1920's (Ottawa: DIAND, 1975).

Maps can be used in the same way as pictures. Find and copy an old map of the reserve or community. Show the copy around and discuss it with other people. Ask them to point out any important landmarks, places, or other details. Study the map yourself, and try to find out when the map was made, who made it, and for what purpose. If you have more than one map, compare them to see how and why they differ.

Here is a checklist of useful map collections:

Place to Look for Pictures	How to Find Addresses
Band or Tribal Council Office	Ask in community.
Indian Affairs District Office	Look in a local telephone book or ask at a federal government information office.
Indian Affairs Regional Office (Lands Division)	See Volume 2 of this handbook (page 365) for addresses.
Provincial archives (Map Section)	See Volume 2 of this Handbook (page 353) for addresses.
Local Land Titles Offices	Ask at your local public library, or telephone the Attorney General's Office of your Provincial government (in the telephone book of your provincial capital) to locate the one nearest you.
Various federal archives	● The Legal Surveys Division of the Department of Indian Affairs. ● The National Map Collection. ● The Map Collection of the Legal Surveys Division, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources. See Volume 2 of the Handbook (pages 251, 257 and 358) for further descriptions of map collections.

OPPOSITE PAGE: A family picture. Samson Beaver, Leah Beaver and their daughter Frances Louise, taken by Mary Schaeffer during a packtrip in the Rocky Mountains in 1907.

The maps and pictures you collect can be used to illustrate your history when it is written. They will interest your readers, and may make your project easier to understand.

Using Libraries and Archives

Next, study other peoples' research. Four sources are especially useful when you are writing a basic local history of an Indian community. Look for them in your local library or bookstore.

1. Books on Indian history. Look for one or two general books about Indian people, either ones relating to Canada generally, or to your own region. Some useful ones are listed on pages 18 to 21 of this handbook.

2. General local histories. Read books or articles on the history of your area, province, territory, region, or neighbouring town. To find these, consult a librarian or local history society, or your Provincial Archives (see Volume 2 of this handbook, pages 353-357, for addresses).

3. Printed reports of the Department of Indian Affairs. Look for these in the "government documents" section of your library. Detailed advice on how to locate these reports is given on page 21.

The Annual Reports have been issued yearly since 1860. They describe Treaties, the setting up of reserves, land surveys, surrenders and sales, health, schools, farming, hunting and fishing, and many other matters. The reports for 1867 to 1916 are the most informative about individual Bands and reserves, but the later ones often also give useful facts. It is more difficult to find detailed information on Indian communities before 1867. Two useful government reports, issued in 1845 and 1858, partly fill this gap for Ontario and Quebec.

These reports were written by Indian Affairs officials to inform the Department in Ottawa. Thus, they represent the government's view of people and events. You may find them unsatisfactory or incomplete. Even so, they are a good place to start when you are looking for facts that general histories do not mention -- especially details of reserve land dealings or of a Band's economy.

4. Special collections of information on local history. These collections, found in many local libraries, include "vertical files" (cabinets holding documents, news clippings, and reports), special archives, and special indexes. Ask your librarian if your library has any, and if so, how to use them.

Your library may not have what you need. If so, you may still be able to borrow a specific book or report from another library, by mail, using the interlibrary loan network. Your librarian can explain this system to you.

You may also decide to look for documents in local or national archives. Because research of this kind takes extra time and effort, some researchers do not use this sort of material in their local histories. The later sections of this handbook describe archival records, and show how to find and use them.

Recording and Writing Up your Findings

As you read books, interviews and documents, record the facts you want to remember. Photocopy parts of the book or article that contain important information, or else take notes which summarize the main points.

Remember to identify each note or copy by writing the source on it. That is, put on each paper the title, author, date, publisher, and place of publication (if it is from a book) or the title, author, name of publication, date, volume, and page numbers (if it is an article in a magazine or journal). Mark maps and pictures in a similar way. You can then refer to your original source again at a later date. You will find more suggestions on how to take notes, and how to organize them, on pages 274-280 of volume Two of this handbook.

When you are finished, collect all your findings, and re-read your documents and notes. If you discover two or more versions of the same important event, such as a council, land surrender, survey, or Treaty session, compare them. Perhaps you have tapes of several elders discussing the event, and also a copy of an Indian agent's description of the same happening. Study each version, and note how each tells a different part of the story. Remember that people's memories are sometimes mistaken, and that written records are sometimes incomplete, or are slanted according to the prejudices of the writer.

Next, try to explain how different versions of the same story arose, and why. If there are any gaps in your information, see if you can find the missing facts.

When you have put all your facts in order, and have decided how to make them into a story, you are ready to write. Make an outline of what you want to say. Break your story up into manageable parts. You could write about each different subject separately, or you could simply retell events as they happened (in chronological order).

Every project is different, so the way you arrange your facts will be suited to your own needs. As an example, you might use these titles for six separate sections of your report:

1. The Earliest Days (traditional life and settlements)
2. Fur Trading, Missionaries, and White Settlers
3. The Signing of the Treaty (if you are in a Treaty area)
4. The Reserve (or Settlement): Its Lands and Resources
5. The Community Today
6. Family Histories

You can then write your history. When you have finished, ask someone else to read it and comment on it. Make any changes that are needed. Write up a final copy for use, and photocopy it. You can also organize your collection of interviews, documents, notes, and pictures, so that others can read and use them. Label the papers, arrange them in an orderly way, and mount or bind them. You can then display or store them for later use.

Where do you go from here? You may want to publish your history to inform the community or the public generally. You can use your work as a starting point for work on more specific topics. You may also use it as a base for research on a claim -- that is, an unresolved problem arising from the community's special rights to such things as land, resources, or wildlife. (All good claims projects begin with a well-researched local history.)

In the rest of this handbook you will find information on research projects that can be built on a local history. The next part of Volume One describes projects on specific subjects, such as reserve lands, Treaties, Indian status, and economic development. For example, you can use Volume One to make up a family tree, to document Treaty promises, to research the setting up a reserve or the loss of land from it, or to study the management of the Band's finances.

Volume Two gives more detailed advice on methods of doing research. It suggests ways to plan a project, and describes the major archives and sources of information. Finally, it discusses particular problems faced by all researchers, including the organizing of documents, photocopying, using microfilm, and locating special sources such as the Indian Act, archaeological records, and fur trade records.

SOME DO'S AND DON'TS FOR RESEARCHERS

1. Do tell people in the community what you are researching, and ask for their help.

2. Do plan interviews carefully. Prepare your questions beforehand. Don't ask leading questions, or questions with short "yes" or "no" answers. Record your interview accurately and in full.

3. Do discuss your findings with the people you interview. Ask them to comment on your pictures, maps, and documents.

4. Do look for information in as many places as possible. Expect your research to take time. (It is a sad fact, but there is rarely one single person, book or file that answers all your questions at once.)

5. Do contact the archives you plan to visit by writing or telephoning in advance. Archivists who know what you are looking for before you arrive may be able to find extra information for you.

6. Do be nice to people, even when they cannot find what you need. If you treat officials or archivists as if they are being unhelpful on purpose, they may decide to conform to your opinion of them. If you have a serious problem, go to an official higher up.

7. Mountains don't move overnight. Remember that even the most willing officials may not be able to find what you need quickly. They also may not be able to bend the rules of large offices or libraries for you.

8. Do take care of fragile documents and tapes. Make copies for use and store the originals safely away.

9. Do label every piece of information you collect, so that you know exactly where it came from.

10. Do keep all your papers in order.

11. Do ask for advice from other people who have written local histories.

12. If you aren't a member of the community about which you are writing, respect its people's opinions and interests as you would your own.

13. Whenever possible, do share your finished history with all the people in the community.

Indian fishermen working on scallop suspension
ropes at Sydney, Nova Scotia, in 1973.

Photo by C. McNeill, courtesy of NFB Photothèque ONF ©; neg. 73-2771.

BIBLIOGRAPHY FOR RESEARCH ON INDIAN LOCAL HISTORY IN CANADA

Local histories

Here are some good examples of published Indian local histories:

David Blanchard. *Seven Generations: A History of the Kanienkehaka*. Kahnawake (Caughnawaga): Kahnawake Survival School, 1980.

Peter S. Schmalz. *The History of the Saugeen Indians*. Ottawa: Ontario Historical Society, 1977.

Chief John Snow. *These Mountains Are Our Sacred Places: The Story of the Stoney Indians*. Toronto: Samuel Stevens, 1977.

Mae Whetung-Derrick. *History of the Ojibwa of the Curve Lake Reserve and Surrounding Area* (3 volumes). No loc.: Curve Lake Indian Band No. 35, 1976.

Oral history

Many researchers have collected and published Indian oral history. Here are some especially good examples of interviews with Indian elders, who speak about both traditional and modern life:

Edward Ahenakew, editor. *Voices of the Plains Cree*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart, 1973.

Marius Barbeau and G. Melvin, editors. *The Indian Speaks*. Toronto: Macmillan, 1943.

Randy Bouchard and D.I.D. Kennedy, editors. *Shuswap Stories*. Vancouver: CommCept Publishing Ltd., 1970.

Randy Bouchard and D.I.D. Kennedy, editors. "Lillooet Stories". *Sound Heritage* (1977) vol. 6(1) pages 1-78.

Dan Kennedy (Ochankugahe). *Recollections of an Assiniboine Chief*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart, 1972.

Donna Phillips, H. Whitecalf and R. Troff, editors. *Kataayuk: Saskatchewan Indian Elders*. No loc.: Saskatchewan Indian Cultural Colleges, 1976.

Donna Phillips and H. Whitecalf, editors. *Enewuk*. No loc.: Saskatchewan Indian Cultural Colleges, 1977.

Richard Price, editor. *The Spirit of the Alberta Indian Treaties*. Montreal: Institute for Research on Public Policy, 1980, pp. 103 - 160.

Evelyn Walkus Windsor et al. *Oowekeeno Oral Traditions As Told By The Late Chief Simon Walkus Sr.* (National Museum of Man Mercury Series, Canadian Ethnology Service Paper No. 84). Ottawa: National Museums of Canada, 1982.

For advice on how to interview elders, and on the use of oral history generally, see:

W.J. Langlois. *Aural History Institute of British Columbia: Manual*. Victoria, B.C.: Aural History Institute of B.C., 1974.

Barbara Allen and W.L. Martell. *From Memory to History: Using Oral Sources in Local Historical Research*. Nashville, Tenn.: American Association for State and Local History, 1981.

Jane McCracken, ed. *Oral History: Basic Techniques*. Winnipeg: Manitoba Museum of Man and Nature, 1974.

Ernie Dick and R. Lochead. *Recording Techniques for Oral History Interviews*. Ottawa: Public Archives of Canada, 1976. (A 15-minute tape recording which explains how to handle, make, and store tapes of oral history interviews. To obtain a copy, send a blank 30 minute per side cassette or a 1.5-mil reel tape to the Sound Section, National Film, Television and Sound Archives, 395 Wellington Street, Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0N3.)

Books and articles

The following are some useful books about Indian history and society across Canada. A selection of general books is listed first, followed by items on particular regions. Some of these are not completely satisfactory because of mistakes and omissions, or because of the tone adopted by the authors when speaking of native people. On the whole, however, they are the best available sources of information for basic research.

Canada

Philippe Jacquin. *Histoire des Indiens de l'Amérique du Nord*. Paris: Payot, 1976.

Diamond Jenness. *The Indians of Canada*. Ottawa: Queen's Printer, 1967.

Douglas Leechman. *Native Tribes of Canada*. Toronto: Gage, 1956.

Hope McLean. *Indians, Inuit and Métis of Canada*. Agincourt, Ont.: Gage, 1982.

E. Palmer Patterson II. *The Canadian Indian: A History Since 1500*. Don Mills, Ont.: Collier-MacMillan, 1972.

John A. Price. *Indians of Canada: Cultural Dynamics*. Scarborough, Ont.: Prentice - Hall of Canada, 1979.

Robert J. Surtees. *The Original People*. Toronto: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1971.

Fraser Symington. *The Canadian Indian: The Illustrated History of the Great Tribes of Canada*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart, 1969.

J.V. Wright. *Six Chapters of Canada's Prehistory*. Toronto: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1979.

The North

Keith J. Crowe. A History of the Original Peoples of Northern Canada. Montreal/London: Arctic Institute of North America/McGill-Queen's University Press, 1974.

June Helm, editor. Handbook of North American Indians. Volume 6: Subarctic. Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian Institution, 1981.

British Columbia

Philip Drucker. Cultures of the North Pacific Coast. San Francisco: Chandler Publishing, 1965.

Wilson Duff. The Indian History of British Columbia. Volume 1 only. (Anthropology in B.C., Memoir no. 5). Victoria: Ministry of the Provincial Secretary and Travel Industry, 1969, reprinted 1980.

Robin Fisher. Contact and Conflict: Indian-European Relations in British Columbia, 1774-1890. Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press, 1977.

H.R. Hays. Children of the Raven: The Seven Indian Nations of the Northwest Coast. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart, 1975.

The Prairies

John C. Ewers. The Blackfeet, Raiders on the Northwestern Plains. Norman: University of Oklahoma Press, 1958.

Ian A.L. Getty and D.B. Smith. One Century Later: Western and the Canadian Reserve Indians Since Treaty 7. Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press, 1978.

David Mandelbaum. The Plains Cree... Regina: Canadian Plains Research Centre, 1979.

Arthur J. Ray. Indians in the Fur Trade: Their Role as Trappers, Hunters and Middlemen in the Lands Southwest of Hudson Bay, 1660-1870. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1974.

G.F.G. Stanley. The Birth of Western Canada: A History of the Riel Rebellions. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1960.

Hugh A. Dempsey. Indian Tribes of Alberta. Calgary: Glenbow - Alberta Institute, 1978.

Richard Price, ed. The Spirit of the Alberta Indian Treaties. Montreal: Institute for Research on Public Policy, 1980.

Ontario

Emerson S. Coatsworth. Nomads of the Shield: Ojibwa Indians. Toronto: Ginn, 1970.

Charles M. Johnston. The Valley of the Six Nations. Toronto: Champlain Society, 1964.

W.V. Kinietz. The Indians of the Western Great Lakes 1615-1760. Ann Arbor, Mich.: University of Michigan Press, 1965.

J.L. Morris. Indians of Ontario. Toronto: Ontario Department of Lands and Forests, 1964.

George R. Quimby. Indian Life in the Upper Great Lakes, 11000 B.C. to A.D. 1800. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1960.

Edward S. Rogers, ed. History of the Indians of Ontario. Forthcoming, 1983.

Bruce Trigger. The Huron: Farmers of the North. New York: Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1969.

J.V. Wright. Ontario Prehistory. Ottawa: National Museums of Canada, 1972.

Quebec

Valerie Marchant, Toby Ornstein, et al. The First Peoples in Quebec. (3 volumes.) La Macaza, Que.: Thunderbird Press, 1973.

J.V. Wright. Quebec Prehistory. Toronto: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1979.

Maritimes

Phyllis R. Blakely. The Micmacs. Toronto: Addison-Wesley Canada, 1974.

H.F. McGee, ed. The Native Peoples of Atlantic Canada. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart, 1974.

James Tuck. Newfoundland and Labrador Prehistory. Toronto: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1976.

L.F.S. Upton. Micmacs and Colonists: Indian-White Relations in the Maritimes, 1713-1867. Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press, 1979.

W.D. and R.S. Wallis. The Micmac Indians of Eastern Canada. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press, 1955.

Eastern Canada (general)

Alfred G. Bailey. The Conflict of European and Eastern Algonkian Cultures, 1504-1700... (2nd edition). Toronto, University of Toronto Press, 1969.

Conrad E. Heidenreich and A.J. Ray. The Early Fur Trades. A Study in Cultural Interaction. Toronto: McClelland & Stewart, 1976.

Bruce Trigger, ed. Handbook of North American Indians. Volume 15: Northeast. Washington: Smithsonian Institution, 1978.

These are only a few of the best books on local Indian history and ways of life. To find others, or to find books and articles on special subjects, consult a reading list, or "bibliography". The three best bibliographies for this purpose are:

Robin Fisher. "Historical writing on native people in Canada". In: The History and Social Science Teacher (1982) volume 17(2) pp. 65-72.

George Peter Murdock. Ethnographic Bibliography of North America (5 volumes, 4th edition). New Haven: Human Relations Area File Press, 1975.

Robert J. Surtees. Canadian Indian Policy: A Critical Bibliography. Bloomington/London: Indiana University Press, 1982.

You will find more detailed lists of sources on pages 197 to 210 of this handbook.

Reports of The Department of Indian Affairs

Look for these reports in the "government documents" or "official publications" section of your library. If you cannot find them near home, all those listed here can be borrowed, in microfiche form, through the "interlibrary loan" system.

No yearly reports on Indian Affairs were published before 1860. Detailed information on individual Bands in eastern Canada is provided in these two special reports, dated 1845 and 1858:

"Report on the Affairs of the Indians in Canada" (parts I, II and III). In: Canada (Province of Canada), Legislative Assembly, Journals, 1844-45, Appendix "EEE" (including Parts I and II of report) and Canada, Legislative Assembly, Journals, 1847, Appendix "T" (Part III of report).

"Report of the Special Commissioners Appointed on the 8th of September, 1856, to Investigate Indian Affairs in Canada". In: Canada (Province of Canada), Legislative Assembly, Sessional Papers, 1858, Appendix 21. (Also published as a separate booklet in 1858).

Indian Affairs has been administered by different departments at different times since 1860. Thus the yearly reports are indexed under a variety of headings. Use the following list to locate them in a library:

Date	Department and Title of Report
1860/61 to 1866/67	Canada (Province of Canada). Department of Crown Lands. Annual Report (subsection on the Indian Department).
1867/68 to 1872/73	Canada. Secretary of State for the Provinces (or Secretary of State for Canada). Annual Report.

1873/74 to 1879/80	Canada. Department of the Interior. Annual Report.
1880/81 to 1935/36	Canada. Department of Indian Affairs. Annual Report.
1936/37 to 1949/50	Canada. Department of Mines and Resources. Annual Report (subsection on the Indian Affairs Branch).
1950/51 to 1964/65	Canada. Department of Citizenship and Immigration. Annual Report (subsection on the Indian Affairs Branch).
1965/66	Canada. Department of Northern Affairs and National Resources. Annual Report (subsection on the Indian Affairs Branch).
1966/67 to present	Canada. Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development. Annual Report.

In this handbook, the present Department of Indian Affairs is referred to by its legal name, the "Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development" (DIAND). Other writers sometimes call it by a semi-official short form, the Department of Indian and Northern Affairs (DINA or DIANA). The part of government responsible for Indian Affairs before 1966 is called "DIA" in this handbook for convenience, although it went by a variety of legal names (such as the "Indian Affairs Branch", or IAB, between 1936 and 1966).

Writing local history

These three books give detailed advice on how to research, write and publish local histories. They can be used by researchers anywhere in Canada. The first is especially recommended for beginning writers.

Eric J. Holmgren. Writing Local History. (Provincial Archives of Alberta Publication No. 3). Edmonton: Alberta Culture, Heritage Resources Division, 1975.

Hugh A. Dempsey. How to Prepare a Local History. Edmonton: Glenbow-Alberta Institute Archives, 1969.

Gerald Friesen and B. Potyondi. A Guide to the Study of Manitoba Local History. Winnipeg: University of Manitoba Press, 1981.

Election officials and candidates after the
counting of votes at a Band Council election,
Mistassini Lake, Quebec, in 1975.

Photo by J. Flanders, courtesy of NFB Photothèque ONF ©; neg. 75-6742.

SPECIFIC RESEARCH PROJECTS

How this section is organized

This second part of Volume One deals with specific topics which may call for special research skills or sources. The first seven sections cover major subjects of interest to most Indian historical researchers, especially those working on Indian claims. The eighth section gives shorter reviews of historical sources on a variety of other subjects. The ninth lists general research aids (histories, bibliographies, and catalogues) not previously mentioned.

In each section, I list questions often asked about the topic, and then review the information that is available to answer them. At the end of each section is a compact list of specific archival and other sources. You will find fuller descriptions of each type of source, with advice on how to use them, in Volume Two of the handbook, under "Research Methods". Technical terms used here are defined and explained in the Glossary (Appendix 1 of Volume Two). Refer to the subject index at the end of Volume Two if you cannot locate material on particular topics.

A word about claims research

This part of the handbook deals extensively with claims research, which is often work of a political or controversial kind.* This being so, I would like to comment on the researcher's sometimes problematical position in the claims process.

---

* Indian claims sometimes seek the recognition of very broad rights based on aboriginal title: the federal government calls these "comprehensive claims". Claims can also arise out of the provisions of more specific laws or agreements, and in particular from Indian Treaties or the Indian Act: these include such matters as allocation of reserves, hunting rights, surrenders, leases, and the administration of Band funds. The latter kind are called "specific claims" by the Federal government. More specific definitions of what the Federal government accepts as claims today can be found in its two current policy statements, In All Fairness. A Native Claims Policy: Comprehensive Claims (Ottawa, 1981) and Outstanding Business. A Native Claims Policy: Specific Claims (Ottawa, 1982). Indian positions as to claims can be obtained from the individual Indian organizations.

Claims researchers are part of a political process: that of settling Indian claims by negotiation, legal action, or other means. These methods are all adversarial -- that is, each side must treat the other side to some extent as an opponent, or an enemy, rather than as a partner. Some claims situations do involve co-operative negotiation and joint action. In others, the two (or more) sides are hostile and opposed on all points.

The researcher, who normally works for one or other of the sides in the process, seldom escapes being caught up in this adversarial situation, even if he or she wishes to be neutral. You may find that the information you collect has important effects on the rights, status, lands, and moneys of Indian groups, governments or "third parties". The facts that you find may be used by your side (whichever side it is) selectively and in a political manner to support its view of the claim. You may be under some pressure to come up with facts which strengthen your case and which weaken that of your opponents.

How do you deal with pressure of this kind? No one can give you a complete answer to this question. I can only offer some personal suggestions, based on my own experience.

First, make sure you find as many of the facts as you possibly can. Keep looking for as long as you have the resources to do so. If you cannot find the evidence your side wants and needs, you cannot invent it. But you will at least be able to say that you did your best for the case. You may even be able to explain why there is no evidence to be found.

Second, study and evaluate closely all your facts (and not just those that seem to support your case). Above all, be critical and skeptical. Keep in mind that each person who reports on an important matter -- an Indian agent, a Band chief or councillor, a missionary, a local settler -- has his or her own personal view of the event. Compare these versions and try to explain why they differ. Find and account for missing evidence. Don't accept as absolute truth any one version of a story that is not supported by at least one other reliable source. Finally, figure out all the possible interpretations of your facts, and report on them. This will prepare your side to deal with any arguments that can be made against your case, as well as the ones to be made for it.

Third, be aware of your own biases and prejudices about the case. You want your claim to succeed, and this may blind you to the arguments that the other side will make against it. The better you understand these arguments, the better you can defend your case.

Fourth, remember that not all research results in a claim. You begin a project with a particular understanding of the problem in mind. This may change into something quite different by the end of your research. Some old issues and grievances -- whose facts are hard to pin down and whose beginnings are unclear -- turn out to be caused by real mistakes, injustices, or illegal acts that can be remedied today. But not all grievances result in legal claims. (There are some land transactions managed by the Department of Indian Affairs that were properly carried out.) No amount of extra research can turn them into issues that a court or a claims process can settle.

Finally, avoid getting too closely involved in the political side of a claim. This is advice that some researchers disagree with, and it is certainly difficult to follow in many cases. Most researchers are responsible to political people, and must advise them; some are asked to take part in negotiations; and some are politicians and negotiators themselves. If you are involved in this way, you will have to walk a fine line between the partisan politics of the claim and the (more) objective research that goes into it. As I have said, objectivity -- that is, seeing and evaluating all sides of a question -- is valuable. It allows you to understand the problem as a whole. It prepares people on your side to deal with all possible outcomes of the case. If you lose these advantages, your work will be less useful.

Thus, as a claims researcher, you participate in the difficult process of settling claims. First, you find as much information as possible; then you carefully compare and evaluate the facts; and, finally, you summarize your findings fully and accurately for the people involved in settling the claim.

Even if no claim results, your work remains important. It may explain why the issue has remained alive in peoples' minds over the years. This explanation is valuable, because it will increase the understanding and confidence of the people concerned. It may also help you to guide future research in the right direction.

RESERVE LANDS AND RESOURCES

This section deals with Indian reserve lands and the resources on them. There are many different research topics in this field, most of which are complex. Thus I will deal separately with five major subject areas: (1) reserve land title; (2) reserve surveys and related matters, including reserve boundaries, leases, and land allotments or "locations"; (3) expropriation and rights of way; (4) Indian lands with special or unusual status; and (5) on-reserve resources (minerals, timber, and others).

To clarify certain problems, I refer, here and later, to two fictitious Bands: Fort Embûche in southern Quebec, and Black River, somewhere in the "numbered Treaty" area.

1. Reserve Land Title (Setting Up a Reserve)

Indian reserves can be created in a variety of ways. Some reserves were set up before Confederation by a Royal Charter, which granted land either to the Band or to a non-Indian group on their behalf. Some were provided for in the written terms of Indian Treaties. Some were originally lands granted by colonial government "licenses" or patents to Indian or private groups. A few were private lands deeded by their owners to the Crown for Indian use. Many of the reserves created since 1867 have been set up or "confirmed" by federal Orders-in-Council. In some cases the true origin of the reserve is uncertain.

To show how research on reserve land title can be done, I will use as examples the reserves of two fictional Bands, Fort Embûche (a pre-Confederation reserve) and Black River (a Treaty reserve set up after

Confederation). Here are descriptions of how these lands were set up, lists of questions you need to ask about them, and lists of documents you would use to answer these questions.

Les Embuscades Indian Reserve

The Fort EmbÛche Band, located in southern Quebec, originally lived in a wide area to the north and east of Montreal. Over 200 years ago, some of its members collected in a group around a trading post and church mission at Les Embuscades on the St. Lawrence River. Their descendants, and some Indian people from other groups, occupy the same land today.

Title to what is now the "Les Embuscades Indian Reserve" was granted by the French Crown in about 1750, perhaps to the missionary order, perhaps to the Indians (the documents have not yet been interpreted to everyone's satisfaction). Laws passed by the colonial government of Quebec (Lower Canada) between 1810 and 1860 appear to confirm the existence of a piece of Indian land at Embuscades. From Confederation (1867) to the present day, the land has been treated as an Indian reserve under the Indian Act.

Questions to ask	Documents to look for
When did the ancestors of the Fort EmbÛche Band first settle at this place?	• Historical records on the settlement written by fur traders, missionaries, settlers, or colonial government administrators. • Ethnological records describing the Band's traditional way of life and aboriginal territory. • Records describing the arrival of Indians from other groups to settle on the reserve.
Are there any legal grants affecting their land? Do they mention the Indian use of the land?	• Copies of the Royal charter (or other kinds of documents) granting title to the land, and any letters relating to it that explain the grant. • Copies of any other grants, laws, or other documents relating to later changes in the ownership of the land.

How has the land been used since it was first granted or set up as a reserve?	• Letters and reports, written by government or Band officials, missionaries, and others, describing the the use of the reserve since the Charter. • Legal documents, such as land surrenders or expropriations, that make statements about the status of the land.

The Black River Reserves

The Black River Band lives in one of the "numbered Treaty" areas of western Canada or northern Ontario. Before the Treaty, the people lived in small groups scattered around the northeastern part of the province. After signing the Treaty, when Indian hunting territories were becoming less productive, the Band agreed to choose reserve land. Two of its reserves, Black River and Amisk Lake, were established under a Treaty promise which stated that the Band was to receive "one square mile per family of five", or 128 acres of land per person. The third reserve, Fishing Island, was the Band's traditional base for fall fishing. It was left out of the original selection because the Band was not aware that they could lose it if they did not take it as a reserve. In 1915, a non-Indian squatter tried to get title to the island. The Band then asked that the island be granted to them as reserve land.

Black River and Amisk Lake reserves were surveyed in 1895 and "confirmed" by federal Order-in-Council in 1900. Fishing Island was chosen in 1915, but not "confirmed" until 1932, because of technical delays and the squatter's counter-claims to the land.

Questions to ask	Documents to look for
What territory did the Band use before the Treaty?	• Documents or elders' interviews describing Indian ways of life and settlements before the Treaty (including information on houses, camps, hunting territory, and livelihood). These come from Indian elders, fur traders, missionaries, settlers, government officials, and others.

Questions to ask	Documents to look for
What was said about land rights in the Treaty?	• Reports by eyewitnesses who describe the Treaty negotiations, especially anything that was said about land. • A copy of the Treaty's written text, particularly its provisions on land. • Any official documents of the time that describe the Indian peoples' choice of and attitude to reserve lands.
How was the reserve set up?	• Records of any formal meetings held to choose the land. • Surveyors' reports describing the land before and during the survey. • Legal documents confirming or establishing the reserve, such as charters, Orders-in-Council, transfers, patents and any maps attached to them. • Letters or reports explaining the methods used to set up the reserve.
What other events affect ownership of or "title to" the reserve?	• Documents explaining why Fishing Island was left out of the original survey. • Documents explaining why there was a delay in confirming it. • Documents explaining what sort of claim the squatter had to the island. • Documents concerning later non-Indian (especially provincial) claims to reserve lands.

Often it is not clear exactly when or how a reserve was created. This can be a special problem, especially for claims researchers. Collect all the legal documents, survey reports, maps, Orders-in-Council and other records you can find on this subject. Look for official lists (or "schedules") of reserves that include the land you are researching. Find legal records that treat the land as if it is a reserve (or as if it is not a reserve). Find statements or letters by Indian Affairs officials that call the land "reserve land". Information of this kind helps to solve difficult legal and historical questions relating to reserve land title. The following sections describe how the same records are used in related projects.

2. Reserve Surveys (and related matters)

Now you know why, and under what authority, the reserve was set up. You can now go on to research how it was finally surveyed, and what the reserve looked like afterward.*

Many of the land problems that face Band Councils today arise from surveys. Many researchers are asked to find, for example, the true location of a reserve's boundaries, after a dispute arises between the Band and its non-Indian neighbours. Others must research the ownership of non-Indian land, such as townsites, mission properties, trading posts, or homesteads lying within reserves; the legal ownership of roads or railways across the reserve; or the status of lands lying next to shifting bodies of water. Problems such as these can lead to bitter disputes between those involved if they are not researched and resolved.

To deal with cases of this kind, you will need the legal documents that set up the reserve in the first place, the records of the formal survey of the reserve, and documents connected with any later changes in the survey, or with any additions to or removals of land from the reserve.

---

* This section describes a case in which the survey precedes the official establishment of the reserve, but in many cases it is the other way around. It is still unclear exactly how one establishes a reserve (that is, from a legal point of view); thus the date on which land becomes a reserve may be in doubt in a particular case.

To show how all these documents fit together, I will retell the story of the survey of the Black River Band's reserves in 1895:

> In 1892 the Department of Indian Affairs sent out a surveyor, J. Lestock Reid, to survey land for the Black River Band under their Treaty. Reid was given a letter that instructed him to read the Treaty, consult the Band, and lay out land for them in the Black River area according to directions given by the Band and the Treaty itself.
>
> Reid arrived in the late summer of 1892 and met with the Band. He found that they were divided: some wanted the land laid out at their main settlement at Ningotchi, and some wanted land at Amisk Lake, ten miles away. They were also angered by the actions of settlers who were trying to lay claim to some of the land they wanted. Thus they rejected the surveyor's efforts to persuade them to take other land, or to accept the settlers' claims. Since it was late in the season, Reid left after doing only an incomplete survey of the Black River land.
>
> Reid was not sent back until 1895, by which time the opposing claims had become more complicated and entrenched. He met with the Band again. After some discussion, the Band agreed to take other land in place of the plots claimed by the squatters. Reid completed the survey of two reserves in that year: Black River I.R. (Indian Reserve) No. 267 and Amisk Lake I.R. 267A. Several councillors went with him on the survey to make sure that the right land was laid out. They personally helped to dig the pits and install the posts that mark the reserve boundary.

Reid returned to his tent at Mingotchi; there he wrote up his field notes and made up a complete map of the reserve. He mailed these to Ottawa and decamped south to celebrate the end of the season. Meanwhile, the Band assumed that the land was theirs and began to build new houses and break land on it.

In Ottawa, Indian Affairs Lands Branch officials received Reid's package. They inspected and corrected his notes and map, and registered the map in the DIA Legal Survey Records collection. With all due deliberation, the Department began the five-year process of having the reserves formally confirmed. This was not completed until an Order-in-Council was issued in 1900: it stated (among other things) that the land was "set aside under the Treaty for the Black River Band of Indians".

The Band asked for Fishing Island as a reserve in 1915. By this time the island had already been surveyed as public or "Crown" lands by local authorities. Thus it did not have to be resurveyed. The Department simply had it legally transferred from the office administering the land to the Department of Indian Affairs. The land was marked on an existing legal plan, and the plan was attached to an Order-in-Council "confirming" it as "Fishing Island I.R. No. 267B, for the Black River Band".

If you were the person responsible for reconstructing this story, how would you go about finding the facts needed to tell it? Look for these documents:

1. The legal documents setting up the reserves. These are the papers described in the first part of this section.

2. Records of the original survey. These documents should show you exactly how the reserve was surveyed, marked out by stakes or markers on the ground, and mapped. They may state what land the Band asked for. They may also describe later changes made to the original survey. Look for these records:

- The instructions given to the surveyor before he went out to survey the reserve. For example, surveyor Reid received a letter (and possibly also a set of printed survey rules) in which the Department of Indian Affairs told him what land to lay out at Ningotchi, and how to do it. Some instructions say exactly what land is wanted, or they may (as Reid's did) ask him to consult the Band. He could have been ordered to use certain kinds of measurements, markers or survey formulas. Instructions are important because they show what the government's intentions were. They may have some legal force in claims to disputed areas.

- The surveyor's field book. Surveyors record their work in a book of technical notes, known as the "field notes" or "field book". These contain sketch-maps, measurements, remarks on land quality, and sometimes longer written reports. The field notes are vital evidence if there is a dispute over the exact location of the boundaries.

- The surveyor's final report. Surveyors often write out a report describing the survey and any unusual events that happen during it. This may be put on a file, or in the field book, or may be printed in a government document, such as the Department of Indian Affairs' Annual Report.

- The surveyor's final map and the "legal plan". After finishing a survey, a surveyor usually makes up a map from his field notes. This shows the outline of the reserve; the main lines surveyed;

its estimated size; landmarks; and other information. This map may then be used as a "legal plan"; that is, it may be registered by DIA in its Legal Surveys registry along with all other official maps of the reserve. The map (or a copy) may be attached to a formal document that confirms the reserve. Together with other evidence -- including the field-notes and the survey markers "on the ground" -- this map may be used to decide where the legal boundaries of the reserve lie. The sample map printed on page 38 shows how you can interpret this information.

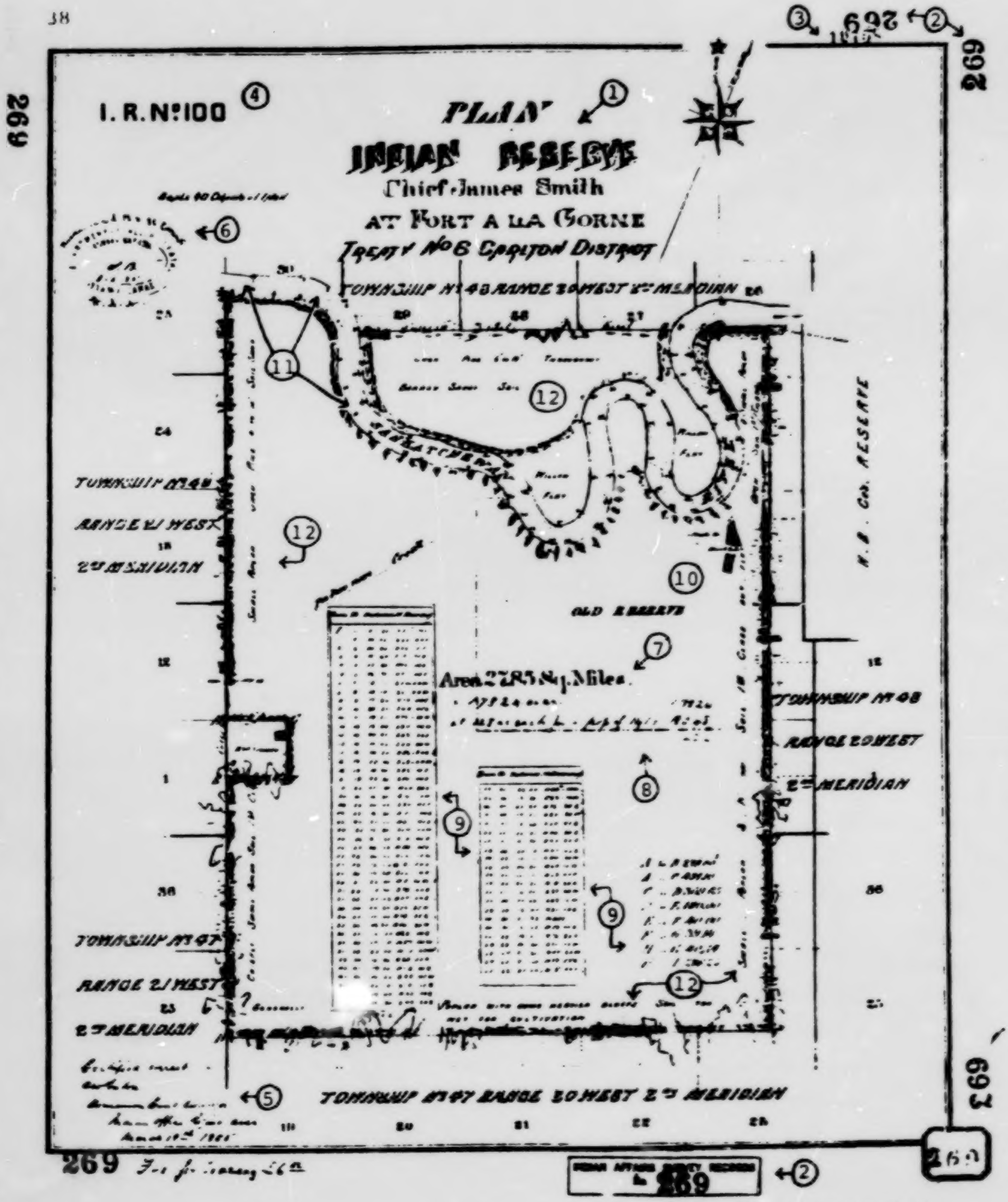
- Other evidence. In cases where evidence on the survey is very confused, other documents, such as letters, petitions, and statements by people present at the survey, may be needed to interpret the survey notes and maps.

3. Changes made to the original survey. A rich variety of land problems arises from irregular surveys, or from changes made to the reserve between the actual survey and its final confirmation. Look for the following:

- Changes made by the surveyor to his survey notes and maps, so that what the Band chose, or what is marked "on the ground", does not correspond to the reserve as described in the documents.

- Changes made by Ottawa officials who alter the survey documents -- for example, to correct mistakes, or to deal with land claims by non-Indians.

- Mistakes in interpreting the survey. A misunderstanding of the field notes may lead to mistakes in the final legal plan, or in the legal document confirming the reserve. (This can include anything from the drawing of a single house-lot wrong, to the granting of the reserve to the wrong Band.)


I. R. No 100
④
PLAN
①
INDIAN RESERVE
Chief James Smith
AT FORT A LA CORNE
TREATY No 6 CARLTON DISTRICT
⑥
⑪
⑫
TOWNSHIP No 48 RANGE 20 WEST 2nd MERIDIAN
TOWNSHIP No 48
RANGE 21 WEST
2nd MERIDIAN
⑩
OLD RESERVE
⑦
Area 27.85 Sq. Miles
⑧
⑨
TOWNSHIP No 48
RANGE 20 WEST
2nd MERIDIAN
TOWNSHIP No 47
RANGE 21 WEST
2nd MERIDIAN
H. B. Co. RESERVE
⑤
TOWNSHIP No 47 RANGE 20 WEST 2nd MERIDIAN
269
②
③
INDIAN AFFAIRS SURVEY RECORDS
269

PAC map, NMC [illegible]. Reproduction courtesy of Public Archives of Canada, National Map Collection.

MAP OF AN INDIAN RESERVE

James Smith I.R. No. 100, Treaty 6, Saskatchewan

(DIA Legal Surveys Plan 269)

MAP OF AN INDIAN RESERVE

This is a map made by the Survey Branch of the Department of Indian Affairs in 1885. It is probably the surveyor's original plan, drawn from his field notes and "certified correct" by him personally. It was then registered in the Indian Affairs Survey Records.

NOTES

1. Title of Map. This shows the name of the Chief and/or the Band, the location of the reserve, and the Treaty that authorized the survey, if any.

2. Registration Number. The map's official registration number in the Indian Affairs Survey Records (or, in later years, the Canada Lands Survey Records).

3. Reference/File Number. A file or letter number put on the map when it was received in Ottawa from the surveyor in Regina. This number is entered in the Department's "Letter Register" and could be used to trace other related records in historic Indian Affairs files in the Public Archives of Canada, Record Group 10.

4. Reserve Number. A special number given to the reserve at the survey. Almost every reserve in Canada has such a number, but several separate number sequences exist in different parts of the country.

5. Surveyor's Signature. The surveyor (A.W. Ponton) has signed and dated the map.

6. Surveys Branch Examination Stamp. This shows that the map has been checked by a senior official of the Surveys Branch, in this case, "S.B." or Samuel Bray. It was later rechecked by another ("W.A.A.", or W.A. Austin).

7. Acreage. The size of the reserve as a whole.

8. Annotations. These relate to Treaty land entitlement (the per capita amount of land granted to the Band under the Treaty). Annotations often yield extra information about land transactions on the reserve after the date of survey.

9. Survey Data. Mathematical information used to calculate the exact location of reserve boundaries. In this case, both distances and astronomical bearings are given. These figures can be interpreted by referring to the surveyor's field notes and to the actual survey markers "on the ground".

10. Old Reserve. This annotation suggests that a smaller reserve had been surveyed at the same place some time previously.

11. Traverses. The diagonal lines marked across the river are surveyor's reconnaissance lines, or "traverses". These give readings that allow him to map the course of the river without actually surveying along the entire length of its shores.

12. Remarks on Terrain. Short comments by the surveyor on the reserve's main land-forms, soil types, and vegetation.

The map itself is now in the National Map Collection of the Public Archives of Canada. There are copies at the Department of Indian Affairs (Legal Surveys Division) and at the Department of Energy, Mines and Resources. The Indian Affairs collection also includes related material, such as surveyor's field notes from which the plan was drawn up; preliminary sketches of the reserve; official duplicates or "tracings" of the final map; various unofficial copies; and revised versions made as a result of major changes in the reserve, such as resurveys, additions or surrenders.

- **Conflicts with other claims or survey systems.** The survey done by Indian Affairs may conflict with other non-Indian (e.g., colonial, provincial or federal) surveys in the same neighbourhood. This may not be discovered at once, but it may lead in the end to the same land being claimed by both Indians and non-Indians. Examples include counter-claims to reserve land by individuals, private bodies (such as the Hudson's Bay Company, railways, or land companies), provincial governments, or federal government departments other than Indian Affairs.

- **Resurveys that change the outline of the reserve.** There have been resurveys done within the last 10 years that have thrown the entire outline of a 100-year-old reserve into question. These new surveys may be done incorrectly, they may be done using the wrong rules, or they may uncover mistakes made by previous surveyors. Whatever the cause, look for the new surveyor's instructions, field notes, and maps, just as you would for an original survey.

4. **Major changes after the original survey.** These include any additions to the reserve, subdivisions of land within the reserve, or land removed from the reserve. Here are five typical problems:

- **Additions.** Land may be added to a reserve by the federal government for a number of reasons. For example, the Band may need more land, or may be owed more land under a Treaty. Land may have been left out of the original reserve (as in cases involving non-Indian claims, mission properties, roads or townsites). The addition, like so many other land transactions, may be wrongly or poorly surveyed. The land document adding it to the reserve may have mistakes in it, or may be of uncertain legal meaning.

- **Land Surrenders.** Surrenders are agreements by the Band to give up reserve land for sale to non-Indians. They may cause or complicate land problems. Cases of this kind are discussed in a later section of this handbook, on pages 88 to 103.

- Other cut-offs. Other unusual or irregular methods have been used to remove land from reserves. (See the section on "Surrenders".) Study each cut-off as a special case.

- Locations and leasing. Land within the reserve may be surveyed into lots (or "subdivided") and then allocated as "lots" or "locations" to individual Band members or groups within the Band. Reserves may also be subdivided for leasing to non-Indians. Problems sometimes arise if these surveys are not properly done.

For example, Les Embuscades is an older eastern reserve with some farmland and woodlots. It has been divided up for generations into lots, each one used by a particular family. These lots or "locations" can be passed down from parent to child, willed to other Indian-status persons on terms laid out in the Indian Act, or privately leased. But they are not owned by those who use them. They remain under Band or Ministerial control; the extent of this control depends on how they are first set up. The different types of location are discussed in the Glossary in Appendix 1 of this handbook, under "Location".

Some of the farmland on the Embuscades reserve is not allotted to any particular person. It used to be leased to non-Indian farmers. Before the leases could be made, the Band had to make a "surrender for lease". This did not "alienate" the land (that is, it did not remove the land from Band control forever) but it authorized the Department of Indian Affairs to lease it out for the Band's benefit. The Fort Embûche Band Council has now taken over the management of its own leases, although under the present Indian Act the Department of Indian Affairs still retains some formal control over them.

The federal government's lease and location policy has changed over time. More and more control is passing to the hands of individual Band councils. Thus, recent Band and District (Agency) records may be more useful than Ottawa records on this topic. Also, not all lots are granted in the same way. Many Bands, especially those in western Canada, still allot land to Band members "by custom" (according to their own rules) rather than by the rules of the Indian Act.

Checklist of documents for research on a location or lease

Survey documents	The surveyor's field notes and reports on (a) the subdivision of the reserve, or (b) the survey of the lease area.
Official maps	Maps that show how the lots or leases are laid out.
Location documents ("Location Tickets", "Certificates of Occupation", "Certificates of Possession", or "Notices of Entitlement")	Formal legal documents that show what lots have been granted to whom, and on what terms.
Surrender-for-lease document	The document (if any) by which the Band authorizes Indian Affairs to lease the reserve, and related papers, if any (such as a voter's list, an Order-in-Council confirming the surrender, affidavits, and maps).
Lease document	The agreement signed between the lessee and the Department, or the lessee and the Band.
Laws applying to the lot or lease	The lease or location provisions of the Indian Act in force at the time the lease or location was made.
Background information	Letters, reports or other documents (from Band, DIAND or other files) that describe the granting of the lots or lease, state their terms, and explain any other outstanding questions about the land.

3. Expropriations and Rights of Way

Almost every Indian reserve in Canada has had some land taken or "expropriated" by governments or corporations for "public purposes". This includes land taken for roads, railways, rights-of-way (for irrigation, canals, pipelines or electrical lines), school sites, hospitals, or other "public works".

Expropriations can be complex and controversial topics — for example, when a right-of-way threatens to interfere with the Band's use of the reserve; or when there is a possibility that it will threaten the lives or property of people on the reserve; or when the compensation paid to the Band for the land is unacceptable (either to the Band or the expropriator).

Expropriations of reserve land are done in one of two ways: (a) under the terms of the Indian Act, by the Department of Indian Affairs, or (b) under a special expropriation law, by some other group. Groups that can be given power to expropriate include private corporations (such as railways or irrigation companies), municipal governments, provincial governments, or federal departments other than Indian Affairs (such as National Defence or Health and Welfare).

The special expropriation laws that authorize these groups to take land include certain Indian Treaties; the federal Railway Acts, Irrigation Acts, and War Measures Act; and certain provincial acts. These require the expropriator to do certain things, such as surveying and mapping the land properly, paying fair compensation for it, obtaining certain kinds of formal approval, and setting up safeguards (for example, on dangerous railway rights of way). Over and above this, expropriators must also obey any restrictions laid down by the Indian Act or a Treaty.

The amount of money paid to the Band as compensation is usually negotiated between the Band (or the Department of Indian Affairs) and the expropriator. Study the records of these negotiations to see if they were carried out fairly. Try to find out if the Band received a fair price for the land. This is often a difficult question to answer, even if you research related records such as records of current land prices in the district. In a later section of this handbook ("Economic Development and Finances", pages 106 and 113), I describe historical sources on finances, valuation of lands, and trust funds.

The various expropriation laws have changed many times in the years since they first applied to Indian reserves. When you research a case, check that you have copies of the ones that were in force at the time the expropriation was done.

Checklist of documents for research on an expropriation

The legal document approving the expropriation (such as an Order in Council or Ministerial Order)	This states the exact location of the land and the terms of the expropriation.
Legal survey maps	Any special maps that identify the land taken.
The law authorizing the taking of the land	That is, (a) the expropriation clauses of the Indian Act, or other Indian legislation in force at the time; (b) the particular expropriation law applying to the land in question, such as a Federal or Provincial statute relating to railway, road or irrigation rights-of-way; and (c) a Treaty or other agreement (if any exists) that refers to the taking of reserve land for public works, and that applies to the case you are researching.
Compensation records	Any financial records (such as Trust Fund statements or receipts) showing that the Band did, or did not, get the compensation due to it for the land.
Background information	Letters, reports, petitions, and other documents that show (a) how and on what terms the expropriation took place, (b) how compensation was calculated and (c) whether the terms of compensation (including amounts of money, safety measures, etc.) were fair and just.

4. Lands with Special Status

Some lands that are commonly called "reserves", or that are held by the Crown "for the use and benefit of" a particular Band, are not in fact reserve lands under the Indian Act. Other lands are of uncertain status, and are now (or may be) the subject of claims. These include the following:

- Lands affected by constitutional agreements. Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Ontario, the Prairie provinces, and British Columbia have made various kinds of formal agreements with the federal government, clarifying control of public lands and resources under the constitution. These either deal expressly with Indian reserve lands, or affect reserve ownership indirectly. (For example, some give the provinces reversionary rights to abandoned reserves, or a share in on-reserve mineral revenues.) The exact meaning of these agreements is not always clear, and the status of some Indian lands may therefore be uncertain.

- Crown Lands held by Indian Affairs or a Band, "for Indian purposes". This is land, owned by the Department of Indian Affairs, which has not been given reserve status but which is set aside (a) for a particular Indian Band, or (b) for administration, such as an Indian agency site, Indian school, hospital, church, or other public building. DIAND's policy is now to avoid giving reserve status to new land grants or purchases except under certain special conditions. Thus the number of these non-reserve holdings is increasing.

- Land privately owned by a Band or Band corporation. Some Bands buy and own land in their own right, generally through a Band-owned corporation.

- "Indian lands". Before 1951, this was the name given to reserve land surrendered by the Band for sale, which had not yet sold. After the surrender, during the sale period, and before the issue of patent to the final buyer, it was "Indian land". It was not "reserve land", but was still land in which the Band had a legal interest. Land of this kind is now simply called "unsold surrendered land".

- "Special reserves". Since the 1850s at least, federal and colonial law has given a kind of reserve status to certain lands that are set aside for Indian use, but are owned by someone other than the Crown (such as churches, charities, or private persons). The meaning and application of this law is not clear. It is possible that some lands once had this status, and might still have it.

- Other special cases. Some other kinds of land were once thought to be reserves, but are now of uncertain status. These include: land set aside for Bands as "special-purpose" reserves, such as fishing stations, timber lands, and cemetery sites; land set aside for more than one Band; land set aside for a Band or Bands which cannot be identified; and land intended to be reserve land, but which is claimed by a provincial government or private person on special legal grounds (such as rights of reversion or adverse possession).

Researchers who deal with these types of land usually need special legal advice.

5. Resources on the Reserve

A Band's right to reserve lands usually, though not always, includes the right to use and profit from the resources on it. These may include water and water-power, timber, minerals, coal, oil and gas, hay, sand, gravel, and stone. In the past, these resources were dealt with in a variety of different ways. To explain how, take the case of the Black River Band:

> The Black River Band is very unusual, and in some ways fortunate, because it has a little of almost everything on two of its three reserves. It has productive oil wells (first found in 1953); a small coal deposit (almost mined out by 1930 but still producing a little today); some haylands which produce in the three years out of five that the water levels are right; and three or four gravel pits. The Council has just ordered a study of the prospects for water-power development on the reserve. Before World War I, the reserve also had stands of timber (now gone) and provided water for irrigation to the farms of non-Indian landowners nearby. Because of federal-provincial disagreements over the Fishing Island reserve when it was confirmed in 1932, the Band did not receive title to minerals on it. These rights now belong to the province.

- The coal, oil, natural gas and minerals* on the reserve can be used by Band members without a surrender, although the Band Council and/or the Minister have control over how this is done. If non-Indian interests, such as mining companies, want to lease rights to these resources, there must first be a "mineral surrender" in which the Band "releases" its rights. Like a surrender for lease, this does not alienate the Band's rights completely. It only gives the Department authority to lease the minerals and to bank the moneys paid by the company in the Band's trust fund. Most Bands who own reserves with any mineral potential have already given once-for-all mineral surrenders.

The mineral surrender is voted on exactly as in the land surrenders described in a later section of this handbook. The Department then puts the rights up for auction or tender, and leases them out to mining corporations, under special regulations made under the Indian Act. The Black River Band now manages at least part of this process itself. It also administers the leasing of the land ("surface rights") that the companies need for their minesites.

---

* Including such materials as tar sands, base metals and sometimes precious metals (gold and silver). The latter are, however, subject to special provincial laws and often do not belong to the Band owning the reserve.

Several different sets of Indian Act regulations have applied to these transactions at various times in the past. There have been separate regulations for (a) coal, (b) oil and gas, (c) base metals (the so-called "quartz mining" and "mineral" regulations), and in some areas (d) precious metals. The first regulations were passed in 1887, and have since then been repeatedly amended.

In most provinces, special federal-provincial agreements affect the ownership of mineral rights on reserves, or the use of revenue earned from them. Locate and obtain copies of these for reference.

- The haylands and timber on the reserve can be used by Band members with few or no formalities. However, timber rights can only be leased out to non-Indians by means of a surrender, in the same way as mineral rights. The Black River Band's timber was cut over in 1906 under such a timber lease. Special timber regulations, in force between 1887 and 1951, governed that transaction.

- The gravel, sand, and stone on the reserve can be used by Band members or sold to non-Indians without surrender. This is because these substances are not legally defined as minerals. Most Band Councils simply issue permits for specific amounts to people who apply to buy these resources.

- Water for irrigation has been subject to different laws in different parts of Canada ever since Confederation. For example, the Black River Band's dispute with the Department of Indian Affairs in the 1890s over the "expropriation" of its water for non-Indian use centred on the applicability of a Federal statute, the 1894 North-West Irrigation Act. In other cases, provincial laws may apply. Surrenders, leases, or Band consent may be needed to allow on-reserve water to be used by outsiders. You may have to study local water law, or get the advice of a lawyer, to determine the proper procedure in your area.

Checklist of documents for research on resources	
Surrender documents	The formal document (if any) in which the Band allows the Crown to lease out an on-reserve resource. Also any related papers, such as voters' lists, affidavits, maps, etc.
Permits or leases	Legal documents allowing outside companies or persons to exploit on-reserve resources.
The Indian Act and the regulations	The provisions of the Indian Act and the regulations that apply to the resource being researched, and that were in force at the appropriate time.
Other relevant laws	Any other applicable laws, including federal statutes, federal-provincial agreements, or constitutional documents, that affect on-reserve resources.
Financial records	Records, such as Trust Fund statements or special mineral or timber ledgers, that show how revenue from resources was banked or spent.
Technical reports	Any reports by professional evaluators as to the value and extent of the resources, or as to their proper administration.
Background	Records describing how surrenders, leases or permits were negotiated and made, how the resources were leased and managed, and where the resulting moneys went.

Writing Your Report

When you have finished your research, make an outline of the report you want to write. If you are writing a general history of the Band's reserve land, you could use some or all of these headings:

- Before the Reserve was Created
- The Treaty and Land Rights (if you live in a Treaty area)
- How the Reserve was Chosen and Surveyed
- Legal Documents Setting Up the Reserve
- Later Changes to the Reserve (Additions, Surrenders, Cut-offs, Expropriations)
- Leasing (or) Land Use on the Reserve
- Resources on the Reserve

Use copies of important maps, documents and pictures to illustrate your final report.

If your work is intended to document a claim or to be used in discussions about land ownership, make sure that you identify the land clearly. Specify a map number, or give a legal description of the land, so that the other side knows what you are talking about.

SOURCES OF INFORMATION

The short forms used for specific sources are:

DIAND	Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, Indian and Inuit Affairs Program, current Central Registry files (in Ottawa, unless otherwise noted).
PAC	Public Archives of Canada (Ottawa).
RG-10	Historic records of the Department of Indian Affairs (in PAC, Record Group 10).

Public Archives of Canada

RG-10: (a) General information on Indian reserve surveys and land transactions is scattered through RG-10 volumes 1 - 1854, in the Red and Black Series, the Agency Records and the new accessions. (INDEX: see PAC's general file lists and indexes to RG-10, and the computerized subject indexes to the Black and Red Series and the New Accessions, under the headings, "Surveys", "Land", "Reserves", "Rights of Way", "Expropriation", "Leases", "Locations", and "Individual Land Holdings", as well as under the names of particular Bands and reserves, and particular resources -- "Minerals", "Oil and Gas", "Timber", etc.). (b) Surveyors' instructions and final reports, if not found in the "field books", are usually in special survey files: look in the indexes under both the Band's and the surveyor's names. (c) General policy files -- see, e.g., the "Surveys and Reserves" policy files in RG-10 volumes 7748, 7764 and 7995 (INDEXES: same as above). (d) The "Blue Books" -- selections of policy and historical correspondence on land matters, c. 1700 to c. 1950, collected by G.M. Matheson and W.A. Orr (RG-10 volumes 10017-10031, organized by region and subject).

RG-2 series 1: (a) Orders-in-Council "confirming" reserves, and approving expropriations, leases and reserve surrenders, 1867-1977 (INDEX: by year and subject; consult the Register for the year desired, on shelves in the Federal Archives Division, under "Indian" or "Lands - Indians"). Earlier orders, mainly relating to Quebec and Ontario, are in RG-1 section "E", especially "E-8". (b) Orders-in-Council containing copies of regulations for resource administration on Indian reserves, including the "Indian Timber Regulations", and regulations relating to "Indian Minerals", "Indian Coal", "Indian Precious Metals", "Indian Quartz Mining" (including base metals), and "Indian Oil and Gas". Copies of some of these regulations may be found in (a) the Treaties and Historical Research Centre, DIAND, Ottawa, (b) RG-10 volumes 6813 and 8577 (Regulation drafting files), or (c) the Canada Gazette (Part II) for the month they were proclaimed. The first set of Indian land, timber and mineral regulations (1887-88) were published on pages 163-207 of The Consolidated Orders in Council of Canada (Ottawa: Queen's Printer, 1889). Later consolidations of 1955 and 1978 bring together some of the later versions and amendments. Regulations in force as of 1978 are also published in Contemporary Indian Legislation 1951-1978 (Ottawa: DIAND, Corporate Policy, 1981).

RG-15 (Department of the Interior): Files on the survey of specific reserves and settlements in western and northern Canada, 1870-1930. (INDEX: partial file list and various subject indexes, in particular the "Indian Reserve Applications" register in Aperture Card Set 200. See archivist for help).

RG-88 (Surveyor-General's Records): (a) Files on surveys or resurveys of specific Indian reserves and settlements, mainly in western and northern Canada, 1879-1950. (INDEX: detailed file list, by name of surveyor or reserve; also a subject list for 1881-1949 in volumes 406-421). (b) Policy files on reserve land, 1882-1945 (volume 299 file 0500 and volume 116 file 10131).

Other Record Groups: RG-1, RG-4, RG-5 and MG-11 all contain information on pre-Confederation Indian reserves, scattered throughout the records (INDEX: see PAC finding aids for each group; consult archivists for help).

National Map Collection: Maps of Indian reserves. This collection is a selection of originals from the larger collections held by DIAND's Legal Surveys Division and the Department of Energy, Mines and Resources. (INDEX: see Maps of Indian Reserves and Settlements in the National Map Collection, Ottawa: Public Archives of Canada, 1980, of which volumes I and II on British Columbia, the Prairie Provinces, the Yukon and the N.W.T. are now available. For other regions, consult archivists).

DIAND (Ottawa)

Indian Land Registry: The central register of all dealings with reserve lands in Canada. For each reserve, and for Crown lands held by Indian Affairs, it lists and holds copies of all primary legal documents (Orders-in-Council, surrenders, expropriation documents, easements, leases, location papers, etc.) (INDEX: by province and reserve. See fuller description on pages 252 and 310). A sample Abstract from the Registry is shown on page 60 of this handbook.

Legal Surveys Division: The Department's central collection of Legal Surveys maps of Indian reserves, settlements, and Crown Lands. It also includes special maps showing surrenders, locations, leases, and rights of way, and copies of surveyors' field books. (INDEX: by province and name of reserve/settlement. The maps are indexed in the so-called Canada Lands Survey Records (CLSR) on sheets listing all maps available for each reserve individually. Most of these maps are on microfiches taken from originals in the Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Legal Surveys Division).

Central Registry Files: (a) General policy files relating to reserve surveys, leases, locations, expropriations, and other land and resource policy. (b) Land files for specific Regions and Bands. These are usually continuations of earlier files in PAC's New Accessions or Red and Black series. (INDEX: by subject and Band, District and Region. Consult the Treaties and Historical Research Centre.) Land matters are mainly in the file series coded 30-1 through 36-14; for example, "Reserve Land Policy, General" is file 1/30-1.* See also the headings "Surveys and Reserves", "Rights of

---

* These codes are currently being replaced with a new numbering system, but can still be used to retrieve files. They are used here since they are more subject-specific, and thus more likely to produce the material needed, than the new codes.

Way", "Leases", "Individual Land Holdings", "Islands" and other special files. Resources are mainly in the series 20-1 to 20-16; e.g., 1/20-1, "Natural Resources Policy -- General". (c) DIAND Program Circulars, "H" series: these are formal policy guidelines on various aspects of current land administration, 1978 to present. Circulars H-1 through H-5 and later issues are available from DIAND's Indian-Inuit Affairs Program, Lands Branch, Ottawa.

DIAND (Regional and District Offices): (a) Map collections, (b) Land Registry documents, and (c) Central Registry files. In all cases these collections are organized and indexed in the same way as the parallel series held in Ottawa. Few date earlier than 1930. (INDEX: consult the local office for details).

Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Legal Surveys Division (Ottawa): (a) Originals of maps and field notes found in DIAND's Legal Surveys Division, described above. (b) Some files on surveys of Indian reserves across Canada, containing technical survey material dated mainly since 1930, occasionally with some older non-technical documents. (INDEX: consult the Division for further information).

Published Material

Legal Sources: Court cases on Indian lands up to 1978 are indexed in the *Canadian Native Law Reporter* (1978) volume 1(2) pages 30-46. Later cases are printed in current issues of the same magazine. Land provisions of the Indian Act and its predecessors since 1876 are reviewed in *The Historical Development of the Indian Act* (Ottawa: DIAND, Treaties and Historical Research Centre, 1978). Reserve land status under the British North America Act is discussed in W.B. Henderson, *Canada's Indian Reserves: The Usufruct In Our Constitution* (Ottawa: DIAND, Research Branch, 1980, also in

University of Ottawa Law Review (1980) vol. 12:167ff). Reserve establishment is discussed in R.H. Bartlett's "The establishment of Indian reserves on the Prairies" (Canadian Native Law Reporter (1980) no. 3 pages 3-56). Other legal reviews are listed below; see also the reference collection of the Native Law Centre of the University of Saskatchewan (Saskatoon).

Government Documents: (a) The Annual Reports of the Department of the Interior (1872-1880) and of the Department of Indian Affairs (1880 to present) reprint surveyors' reports and other descriptions of Indian lands. (Source: Canada, Parliament, Sessional Papers). (b) The most complete reference lists of Indian reserves across Canada are those known as the "Schedules of Indian Reserves". The first one printed was Schedule Describing Various Indian Reserves in Manitoba, Keewatin and the North-West Territories, 1877 (Ottawa: Department of the Interior, Dominion Lands Branch, 1877). More complete lists were printed, as the Schedules of Indian Reserves in the Dominion, in the Indian Affairs Annual Reports in the years 1897 to 1902, 1913, and 1928. Part II of the 1928 schedule was published as Schedule of Indian Reserves in British Columbia (Ottawa: Indian Affairs Branch, 1943). A new Schedule of Indian Reserves and Settlements (Parts I and II), 2 volumes, was published in Ottawa by the Indian Affairs Branch in 1964-66. These early lists include now-extinct reserves and give other useful information on surveys. The most recent is the Schedule of Indian Reserves and Settlements (Ottawa: DIAND/Information Canada, 1972), which gives purported ownership, location, and size of existing reserves only. The Atlas of Indian Reserves and Settlements Canada 1971 (Ottawa: DIAND, Reserves and Trusts Group, 1978) shows reserve locations and sizes. The booklet Number and Acreage of Indian Reserves By Band (Ottawa: DIAND, Indian and Inuit Affairs Program, Reserves and Trusts Division, 1981) abridges and updates the information in the 1972 Schedule.

The Schedules can be used for general reference, but with caution, since they contain errors of varying importance as to the ownership, size, and names of the lands listed.

Background Reading: Little reliable historical material on the establishment and survey of reserves in Canada is available. There are no adequate general references on the history of such matters as expropriation, leasing, locations, or resource use. The best list of historical publications is Robert J. Surtees, Canadian Indian Policy: A Critical Bibliography (Bloomington, Ind.: University of Indiana Press, 1982). See also the summaries of policy in Peter Cumming and N.H. Mickenberg, Native Rights in Canada (2d edition, Toronto: General Publishing Co., 1972); William Henderson, Canada's Indian Reserves: Pre-Confederation (Ottawa: DIAND, Research Branch, 1980); and R.J. Surtees, "The Development of an Indian Reserve Policy in Canada", Ontario History (1969) volume 61(2): 87-98. Douglas Sanders' Legal Aspects of Economic Development on Indian Reserve Lands (Ottawa: DIAND, IIAP, Economic Development Section, c. 1976) and William H. Henderson's Land Tenure in Indian Reserves (Ottawa: DIAND, Indian-Inuit Affairs Program Research Branch, 1978) are useful administrative handbooks that discuss current reserve land administration problems (including Band and Crown powers, leasing, locations, and surrendered lands) from a constitutional and legal point of view. A small selection of reports on recent land use on reserves is listed in Land Use on Indian Reserves in Canada (Indian Reserve Forest Survey Report No. 34, Ottawa: Forest Management Institute, 1973). For an introduction to land survey techniques and law, useful in certain kinds of claims research, see R.W. Cautley, Descriptions of Land: A Textbook for Survey Students (Ottawa: Information Canada, 1974) and Legal Principles and Practice of Land Surveying (Ottawa: Surveys and Mapping Branch, Department of Mines and Technical Surveys, 1961).

Reviews of the history of reserve land in specific regions are found in the following:

British Columbia: Dennis Madill, Select Annotated Bibliography on B.C. Indian Policy and Land Claims (Ottawa: DIAND, Treaties and Historical Research Centre, 1982); Robin Fisher, "Joseph Trutch and Indian land policy", in: J. Friesen and H.K. Ralston, eds. Historical Essays on British Columbia (Toronto: McClelland and Stewart 1976) pp. 256-280; Robin Fisher, "An exercise in futility: the Joint Commission on Indian Land in British Columbia, 1875-1880" (Canadian Historical Association, Historical Papers 1975: 79-94; T.M. Blake, "Indian reserve allocation in British Columbia", B.C. Perspectives (1973) 3:21-31; W.G. Foster, "British Columbia Indian lands", Pacific Northwest Quarterly (1937) vol. 28:151-162; Reuben Ware, The Lands We Lost: A History of Cut-Off Lands and Land Losses from Indian Reserves in British Columbia (Vancouver; Union of B.C. Indian Chiefs, 1974) and Robert E. Cail, Land, Man and the Law: the Disposal of Crown Lands in British Columbia, 1871-1913 (Vancouver: UBC Press, 1974).

Prairies: R.H. Bartlett, "The establishment of Indian reserves in the Prairie Provinces", Canadian Native Law Reporter (1980) no. 3 pp. 3-56; D.A. McQuillan, "Creation of Indian Reserves on the Canadian Prairies 1870-85", Geographical Review vol. 70(4): 379-396); John Snow, These Mountains Are Our Sacred Places: The Story of the Stoney Indians (Toronto: Samuel Stevens, 1977); J.L. Tobias, "Indian reserves in western Canada: Indian homelands or devices for assimilation", in: D.A. Muise, ed. Approaches to Native History in Canada (National Museum of Man Mercury Series, History Division Paper No. 25) Ottawa: National Museums of Canada, 1977, pp. 89-103.

Ontario: Charles H. Johnston, The Valley of the Six Nations (Toronto, Champlain Society, 1964); Peter S. Schmalz, The History of the Saugeen Indians (Ottawa: Ontario Historical Society, 1977); Robert J. Surtees, "Indian land cessions in Ontario, 1763-1862: the evolution of a system" (Ph.D. thesis, Carleton University, 1982).

Quebec: Louise Villeneuve, The historical background of Indian reserves and settlements in the Province of Quebec (Ottawa: Treaties and Historical Research Centre, DIAND, 1983); G.F.G. Stanley, "The First Indian 'Reserves' in Canada", Revue d'Histoire de l'Amérique Française (1950) vol. 4: 178-210; Valerie Marchant, Toby Ornstein et al., The First Peoples in Quebec (3 volumes, La Macaza, Quebec: Thunderbird Press, 1973).

Maritimes: L.F.S. Upton, Micmacs and Colonists: Indian-White Relations in the Maritimes, 1713-1867 (Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press, 1979); H.F. McGee, "White encroachment on Micmac reserve lands in Nova Scotia, 1830-1867", Man in the Northeast (1974) Volume 8, pages 57-64; D.M. Hurley, Report on Indian Land Rights in the Atlantic Provinces (Ottawa: National Museum of Man, 1962); Marie W. Laforest, "Indian land administration and policy in the Maritime Provinces (Nova Scotia and New Brunswick) to 1867", unpublished paper, Office of Native Claims, Contract ONC-78-6, September 1978; available from the DIAND Library, Ottawa.

Two outdated but historically useful outlines of reserve mineral rights and administration are: Petroleum From Indian Lands (Ottawa: DIAND, 1967) and William J. Worrall's Study and Recommendations For the Development of the Mineral Resources on Indian Reserves in British Columbia (Unpublished report, DIAND, Vancouver, June 1967). Recent material on the Indian Oil and Gas Act of 1974, and on native positions as to resources, is available in native research collections and in current DIAND minerals files (both in Ottawa and in the "West" and "East" minerals administration offices in Calgary and Toronto). Water rights material is also widely scattered in legal collections across Canada; one of the few published papers is R.H. Bartlett, "Indian water rights on the Prairies", Manitoba Law Journal (1980-81) vol. 11(1) pp. 59 ff.

For the history of United States Indian reserve lands, see Imre Sutton's Indian Land Tenure: Bibliographical Essays and a Guide to the Literature (New York: Clearwater Publishing Co., 1975) and Francis Paul Prucha's Bibliographical Guide to the History of Indian-White Relations in the United States (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1977).

RESERVE GENERAL REGISTER

PROVINCE ONTARIO

AGENCY [NAME OF AGENCY]

RESERVE [NAME AND NUMBER OF RESERVE]

BAND [NAME OF BAND]

DATE ESTABLISHED 185_③

AUTHORITY [TREATY OR OTHER AUTHORIZATION FOR ESTABLISHMENT OF RESERVE]①

TITLE DEED ROYAL PROCLAMATION - FEB. 1/185_②

ORIGINAL SURVEY PLAN 53192, 185_④

ORIGINAL AREA ⑤

GENERAL REMARKS ⑥ The area of this Reserve is not recorded on existing Survey Plans.

ITEM NO.	INSTRUMENT ⑦	NUMBER ⑧	DATE ⑨	GRANTOR-GRANTEE ⑩	LAND ⑪	ACREAGE ⑫	PRESENT RESERVE AREA	FILE NO. ⑬	REMARKS ⑭
1.	Order-in-Council	6495-207	Jan. 31 1853	Crown/Crown Land Dept.	Whole of Reserve. See Plan 53192			RG.1, E8, Vol. 46	Authorises Surveyor Dennis to deviate in some cases from the strict letter of the Treaty with reference to the extent and limits of the Reserves. Chief [---] and his band asked for [---] Island in exchange for "a tract of land, 4 mi. sq., on the main shore opposite [---] Island", allotted to them by the Treaty.
2	Royal Proclamation	4515-1330	Feb. 1 1854	Province of Canada to Crown	Whole of Reserve. See Plan T-256.⑮	19,000		—	The provisions of Sections 10, 11, and 12 of an "Act for the protection of the Indians in Upper Canada from imposition and the property occupied by them from trespass and injury. Reg.#9790 extended to land occupied.
3	Surrender ⑯ No. 164	X10949D	Sept. 24 1871	[----------] Band/Canada	Whole of Reserve. See Plan T256.⑮			—	Surrenders merchantable timber to be sold by the Department for the benefit of the Indians.
4	Band Council Resolution	X10949	Mar. 28 1877	[----------] Band/Canada	Church site and Graveyard at East end of [---] Island, about 3/4 mi. from ship Channel in the South	5.0		RG10, File 8034	Appropriates a location of a Methodist Mission, 4 acres allotted for the church and residence and 1 acre for a Graveyard. See letter attached for details.
5	Surrender ⑯ No. 2113	X10950	Oct. 9 1895	[----------] Band/Canada	Railroad right-of-way, plus land for ballast and terminus. See Plan R.R. 597⑮	314.75		159,975	Surrenders land for sale to "---------------" Railway. See items 6, 7, 26 and 27.

AN ABSTRACT FROM THE RESERVE GENERAL REGISTER

This register is located in the Indian Land Registry (Lands Branch, Indian and Inuit Affairs Program, DIAND). It lists all major land transactions (and some resource transactions) on every Indian reserve in Canada. The page shown here is an "old-format" abstract, now being replaced by a similar but less detailed computerized system. The earlier abstracts will, however, remain available for research. Note that information in the Register is inaccurate or incomplete in places; use it for general reference, but not as the sole source for legal documentation.

RESERVE GENERAL REGISTER: NOTES

General Information

1. Authority. The Treaty, agreement or other legal right under which the reserve was originally established.

2. Title Deed. The document or act establishing, confirming or otherwise defining title to the reserve.

3. Date Established. The date the reserve was established, usually the date of the document named in note 2.

4. Original Survey. The date, plan, and/or specifications of the original legal survey of the reserve.

5. Original Area. The size of the reserve when first surveyed. (This figure is often unknown or undetermined).

6. General Remarks. Any relevant historical background.

Special Documents

7. "Instrument" column. States type of document in each case.

8. "Number" column. Gives current registration number of each document. (This can be used to order copies from the Registry).

9. "Date" column. Gives date of each original document.

10. "Grantor/Grantee". States who is transferring rights to whom in each transaction.

11. "Land" column. Briefly describes land involved in each transaction. (Sometimes refers to a Legal Survey Plan number which can be used to locate related maps in DIAND's Legal Surveys collection).

12. "Acreage" columns. Acreage involved in the transaction, and new total size of reserve thereafter, if known.

13. "File" column. Locations of other records relating to the transaction. All three references in this abstract are to files in the Public Archives of Canada (the first to Record Group 1, and the others to Record Group 10, Red Series, although the necessary volume numbers have been left out). This column has been omitted from the new-format abstracts.

14. "Remarks" column. Other facts relating to the transaction, and references to associated matters.

15. Legal Surveys Plan numbers: See remarks in note 11.

16. Surrender number. Old registration numbers which can be used to locate either the original surrender documents in the Public Archives of Canada (RG-10 volumes 1840-1853) or the reprints in Indian Treaties and Surrenders (3 volumes; Toronto: Coles, 1971). The latter book covers treaties and surrenders for the period 1680-1902 (numbers 1-483) only.

THE SIGNING OF A TREATY

Since non-Indians first came to Canada, over fifty separate Treaties have been made between Canadian Indian peoples and the British Crown.* Some of these were signed by only one or two Bands, and others by up to twenty or more different groups at a time. Today, a little over half the Indian people in Canada belong to groups that have signed Treaties with the Crown.

The solemn agreements that we call "Treaties" are of two kinds. Some are agreements which refer mainly to peace, friendship or alliance between the Treaty-makers. Others have written terms that refer mainly to the giving up of land, and to the granting of other specific rights (such as reserves, hunting rights, specific goods, and money) in return. Some early "surrenders" (agreements by which Indian Bands give up existing reserve land to the Crown) are very similar to Treaties.

Treaties "of peace and friendship" have been signed in the Maritimes, southern Quebec, Ontario, and Vancouver Island. Treaties whose texts mention land and specific rights (which often also include "peace and friendship" promises) have been signed by Indian peoples of the Maritimes, Ontario, the Prairie provinces, northeastern British Columbia, and the Northwest Territories. People often disagree as to which kind of agreement a particular Treaty may be.

Many people in Canada, both Indians and others, wish to know how Treaties came about. Treaties are important parts of Canadian history, and are political events of great complexity. They interest all who wish to understand relations between Indians and non-Indians, and in particular to understand why special Treaty rights still exist in some form today. These rights include rights to reserve land, hunting and fishing rights, Treaty annuity moneys, federal government support for schools, and certain specific goods and supplies for farming, hunting and ceremony. Some people claim that other general rights are also protected by Treaty, such as forms of Indian government and Indian status, free medical care and other social services, and government-funded economic development. People disagree as to whether or not this is true, but everyone does agree that these subjects should be studied.

---

* The few Canadian Treaties not made with the British monarch include: a Treaty between the French Crown and the Five Nations in the Montreal area in 1680; the Treaties between the Micmacs of Nova Scotia and the colony of Massachusetts in 1776; the agreement between the Hurons of Lorette and the Jesuit Order in 1794; and the series of Treaties between the Hudson's Bay Company and the Vancouver Island Bands between 1850 and 1854.

This part of the handbook describes research on the actual negotiation and signing of a Treaty. The next section examines how the Treaty was carried out.

Each Treaty is unique in some way; thus it is hard to be specific or to give examples that will be useful to all researchers. I will describe the steps leading to the signing of a "typical" Treaty, and will state the kinds of questions that can be asked at each step. These cover the events leading up to the Treaty; the intentions of the Treaty-makers; the meetings and negotiations, and the signing of the Treaty; the text of the Treaty and related legal documents; and how each side understood the agreement.

Once you have answered these questions, you will have a good picture of how the Treaty came to be. You will understand more about what it meant to both Indian and white treaty-makers. You can then go on to research the carrying out of the Treaty's promises.

Finding Evidence

It is important to get as many reports of a Treaty negotiation as you can. Each witness will give you a different picture of the event. Study these accounts and use them to decide what was really said and done. Your account of the Treaty will then be more complete and true to life.

CANADA

Where do you look for reports on the Treaty? Most people start either by reading official government reports, or by interviewing people (Indian or white) who have stories about the event. The government officials who negotiated the Treaty almost always wrote reports to Ottawa describing what went on. The Indian treaty-makers often also wrote letters, commentaries or petitions concerning the Treaty. These will be scattered throughout government files, sometimes in unexpected places. Look also for reports by missionaries, traders, soldiers, settlers or police officers who witnessed the meeting. These may be in widely separated archival collections.

Some witnesses do not record their stories about a Treaty until many years after the event. Even then, they may give a detailed and accurate account. But it may also be changed by time, the passing of the story from one person to another down the years, or the hopes and wishes of the person who tells it. Be aware of this. Always compare the evidence of each witness with that of others. This will help you not only to find out what happened, but also to understand why there is more than one way of looking at a Treaty.

1. Events leading up to the treaty

> Indians and non-Indians have come into contact -- or into conflict -- with each other. Who are these people? What are their relations to each other and to the land resources?

You would first describe the Indian people as they were before the Treaty. State who they are, how they live, and what territory they live in and use. Describe their relations with Indian neighbours, and with non-Indians.

OPPOSITE PAGE: Map showing approximate areas covered by the numbered Treaties, the Ontario Treaties, and territory exempted from the Royal Proclamation of 1763. Since some of the boundaries shown are undefined or disputed, this map should be used for general reference only. For detailed maps of the southern Ontario pre-Confederation Treaty areas, see Robert J. Surtees, "Indian land cessions in Ontario, 1763-1862: the evolution of a system" (Ph.D. thesis, Carleton University, Ottawa, 1982).

Describe, too, the non-Indians in the area at the time of the Treaty. Are they explorers, fur traders, military men, missionaries, settlers, prospectors, or government employees? State what they are doing there, and what their relations are with Indian people.

Then tell the story of the events that bring on the meeting. These could include wars, trade problems, famines, and epidemics, or invasion by developers, prospectors, or settlers.

2. The intentions of the treaty-makers

A formal meeting is arranged between Indians and whites. Why is it called? What does each side think it will get out of the meeting?

You would discuss the views of each party (Indian and white). They have agreed to meet, but what do they hope to achieve? Find evidence showing what each side wants. They may simply want peace, law, and order. They may want specific practices stopped. They may want information, trade, a military alliance, economic aid, or all of these things.

Land and resources (mineral, timber, and water rights) are a very important part of many Treaty meetings. Find out if either side wanted to discuss them. Was either party interested in taking over or giving up ("ceding") land or resources? If so, in return for what?

Look for speeches, letters or documents of the time that show the concerns of the Indians or whites involved.

3. The negotiation and signing of the Treaty

The meeting takes place. There is some ceremony and much talk. Both sides come to an agreement. How does this happen?

List the groups present at the meeting, and name their spokesmen. Quote the speeches made by people on both sides. Try to find out exactly what subjects were discussed, and what "deals" were made, by whom, and on whose behalf.

Describe how the final deal was made. If either side did not express their full views at the meeting, point this out. Was force used, or the threat of force? Was the negotiation marked by ceremonies or formalities, such as military displays, presentations, dances, or pipe ceremonies?

Describe the actual signing of the Treaty document. Who signed, and how?

Finally, find out if there was any Indian group who should have been there, but was not. Why not? Did they sign later? There were often "late" signings of Treaty, or "adhesions", by individual Bands or families. Bands who "adhere" to a Treaty after it has been negotiated sometimes simply sign a document agreeing to abide by the Treaty's terms. Separate Treaty meetings may have been held to discuss these adhesions. Describe them.

4. The text of the Treaty

The written Treaty -- the actual document signed at the meeting -- lies in the archives today. What does it look like? What does it say? What other legal documents affect it?

Go to the original, written text of the Treaty -- the document that was actually signed -- and study it, or a good photocopy of it. List the things it mentions, one by one. Compare the original Treaty document, word for word, with later copies or printed versions. Note any differences between the two.

[illegible]

Upper Canada

To all to whom these presents may come Greeting Whereas we the Principal Chiefs Warriors and People of the Chippewa Nation of Indians being desirous for a certain consideration hereafter named of ceding and disposing of a certain Island known by the name of the Island of St. Joseph and also by the name of Carribou Island and in the Chippewa language by the name of Payentanassin situate lying and being in that strait which joins the Lakes Superior and Huron and is by estimation two hundred and twenty miles in circumference be the same more or less unto His Britannic Majesty our King George the third our Great Father Now know ye that we the said principal Chiefs Warriors and People of the Chippewa Nation for and in consideration of the sum of Twelve hundred Pounds Quebec Currency value in Goods estimated according to the Montreal prices delivered to us the receipt whereof we hereby acknowledge Have given granted aliened disposed of and confirmed and by these presents do give grant alien dispose of and confirm for ever unto Alexander McKee Esquire Deputy Superintendent General and Deputy Inspector General of Indians and of their affairs for and on behalf of His said Britannic Majesty King George the third His Heirs and Successors All and every part of that Island known and called as aforesaid by the name of the Island of St. Joseph and also by the name of Carribou Island and in the Chippewa Language by the name of Payentanassin To have and to Hold the said Island and every part and parcel thereof together with all the Woods and Waters thereon situate lying and being unto the said Alexander McKee Esquire for and on behalf of His said Britannic Majesty King George the third His Heirs and Successors for ever free and clear of and from all claims rights privileges and emoluments to which we the said Chiefs Warriors and People of the Chippewa Nation might have before the execution of these presents Also free and clear of any pretended claims which our Children or descendants may hereafter make to the same Hereby renouncing and for ever disclaiming ourselves our Children our descendants and posterity all title to the said Island and the said Woods and Waters thereof in favour of the said Alexander McKee Esquire for and on behalf of His said Britannic Majesty His Heirs and Successors for ever In Witness whereof we being assembled at His Britannic Majesty's Garrison in and upon the said Island have hereby given granted aliened disposed of and confirmed as aforesaid have for ourselves and the said Nation hereunto set our marks and seals this Thirtieth day of June in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and ninety eight having first heard this Instrument openly read and interpreted in our own Language and fully approved by ourselves and our Nation.

L S

Headowamike

Kieqoalakamoigadkan

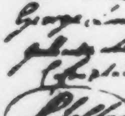
Bonnince

Ogoogue Wesinne

Witnesses present at the execution of the Instrument

Richd Pollard } Commissioners named by Mr. McKee
Daniel Cameron }
Peter Drummond Capt 2d Batt R C V Commanding
Wm [illegible] Lt 2d Batt R C V
Wm [illegible] Ens 2d Batt R C V
George [illegible] Lt Royal Engineer
[illegible]
Complader

Indian Interpreter



Chippewa Chief

Neekonce

Sooony

Mattawagemence } Chippewa Chief of the [illegible]

Shewenepeceshe

If the Treaty relates to land, look at the boundaries of the area which the Treaty says it covers. Look at any maps attached to the Treaty. Do they correspond with each other, and with the territory that the Indian signers of the Treaty actually used?

Study every signature or "mark" on the Treaty. (For more information on Treaty signatures and "X" marks, see Appendix 1 in Volume 2 of this book, under "Mark", "Seal", and "Treaty".) Find out the name of each person who signed - that is, Indian spokesmen, white officials, and any "witnesses". Whom did each person speak for?

Look for any important documents attached to the Treaty, such as:

- documents authorizing and ratifying the Treaty. (Sometimes formal papers — Royal instructions, Orders-in-Council or others — are issued to authorize an official to make a Treaty, or to set its terms. After the Treaty is made, another document may be issued to formally accept or "ratify" it);
- later "adhesions" to the Treaty by individual Bands;
- lists of goods given to the Indian side by the Crown (as presents or supplies) and lists of other government expenses;
- lists of reserve land chosen by the Bands;
- lists of other special terms; and
- documents changing the terms of the Treaty at a later date. (An example is the attachment to Treaties 1 and 2 in Manitoba, recording "outside promises").

OPPOSITE PAGE: Original text of Treaty No. 11, signed on 30 June 1798, by which the Chippewa (Ojibwa) of the Sault Ste. Marie area surrender St. Joseph's Island (Cariboux Island or Payentanassin) to the Crown. The Treaty text refers to a consideration of 1200 pounds, Quebec currency, in goods. The Indian spokesmen have signed at right with their totems (family or clan symbols). The government Treaty Commissioners, and various military and Indian witnesses, have signed at left. The remains of legal seals can be seen opposite the main signatures. (SOURCE: PAC, RG-10, volume 1841, item 11).

A typical set of "numbered" Treaty documents could be made up of the following: (a) an Order-in-Council authorizing the Commissioners to make the Treaty, and perhaps another Order appointing the Commissioners; (b) the written text of the Treaty; (c) lists of the Bands dealt with; (d) accounts of general expenses; (e) an official report by the Commissioners, describing the negotiation of the Treaty; (f) an Order-in-Council ratifying the Treaty agreement; and (g) the first annuity paylist, listing people who received annuity and gratuity moneys as tokens of their agreement to Treaty. Pre-Confederation Treaties may include only some of these documents.

5. The understanding of the Treaty

> An agreement has been made and formally recorded. What did it mean to each of the two sides? Was there a "meeting of minds" on any subject, or on the Treaty as a whole? If each side understood the Treaty in a different way, how exactly did they differ?

Compare the written Treaty with the discussions held before or during the Treaty meetings. Do they express the same intentions?

First, find out if anything happened to make the treaty-makers change their plans between the time that the meeting was first proposed, and the actual signing of the agreement. For example, there may have been events in between that influenced one or both sides, such as wars, famines, epidemics, invasions of white settlers, or the discovery of new resources.

Second, look for evidence that the treaty-makers did (or did not) understand each other at the meeting. Did they hold the same views about war or peace, about trade, or about land? If not, how did their views differ? Point out any evidence that misunderstanding was caused by language problems or bad translation by interpreters.

Be specific. Whenever possible, quote the exact words of the people involved, or use reports written at the time of the meeting. Try to determine what people on each side actually did and thought, as well as what the other side imagined they did and thought. List the facts that lead you to your answer.

Finally, whose understanding is expressed in the written version of the Treaty? Is it that of the white treaty-makers, or the Indian treaty-makers, or parts of both? List the facts, point by point, that lead you to your answer.

Do not overlook any "outside promises"; that is, solemn undertakings made by one side or the other which were not put into the written agreement. Look for these in the reports on the Treaty negotiations, or in later correspondence between Indian spokesmen and the government, or in the memories of elders. List these promises and, if you can, explain why they were not written into the Treaty.

SOURCES OF INFORMATION

The short forms used for specific sources are:

DIAND	Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, Indian and Inuit Affairs Program, current Central Registry Files (in Ottawa, unless otherwise noted).
PAC	Public Archives of Canada (Ottawa).
RG-10	Historic records of the Department of Indian Affairs (in PAC, Record Group 10).

Public Archives of Canada

RG-10: (a) Copies of original Treaty documents and adhesions, 1680-1956, organized by date and registration number. (RG-10 volumes 1840-1853. Some of the "Treaties" missing from the series are actually surrenders, copies of which are available in DIAND's Indian Land Registry). (b) Indexes and files, cataloguing Treaties and listing related material, mainly on pre-Confederation Treaties (RG-10 volumes 660-662, 766-768, and 8595 file 1/1-11-17). (c) General reports, correspondence and other documents relating to the pre-Confederation Treaties, scattered throughout volumes 1 to 1854 of RG-10. (INDEX: see the "green inventory" to RG-10 and other special finding aids in the Federal Archives Division, PAC). (d) General reports, background material and other documents relating to the Robinson Treaties of 1850, the "numbered Treaties" and other Treaties after Confederation, scattered throughout the Red and Black Series and the New Accessions. (INDEXES: see PAC's computerized subject indexes to these groups. Examples of files relating to various Treaties after 1867 can be found in RG-10 volumes 2328-2332, 3604, 3608, 3613, 3621, 3624, 3636, 3848-49, 4005, 4006, 4009, 4042, and 8594-95). (e) General DIA policy files on Treaties, 1916-1956 (RG-10 volume 8594 file 1/1-11).

RG-1 section "E" and RG-2 series 1: Orders-in-Council authorizing and ratifying negotiations of Treaties (INDEX: by year and subject; see archivists for further information.)

Other Record Groups: Reports, background material and other documents relating mainly to the pre-Confederation Treaties, scattered throughout the military records (RG-8 and RG-9), the Colonial Office Records (MG-11), and related groups. (INDEXES: see archivists for further information).

Public Archives of Canada (continued)

National Map Collection: Official maps attached to Treaties, and various reference maps showing Treaty boundaries. (INDEX: the N.M.C.'s card catalogues, by region and subject. See also the lists prefacing each volume in the series Maps of Indian Reserves and Settlements in the National Map Collection (Ottawa: Public Archives of Canada, 1980-. Volumes I and II on the Prairies, the Territories and British Columbia are available to date).

DIAND (Ottawa)

Indian Land Registry: Originals and copies of a few early Treaties and related documents. The main collection is in the PAC, RG-10. (INDEX: by province, Band and date).

Legal Surveys Section: Copies of some maps attached to (or otherwise related to) Treaty areas, and general reference maps. On microfiche. (INDEX: by province.)

Central Registry Files: (a) General background material on recent Treaty adhesions by groups and individuals (mainly those after 1930) in the general land and membership files on particular Bands. (b) Policy files on Treaties and Treaty rights, mainly in the series 1/1-11 and 1/1-11-1 to 1/1-11-22. (INDEX: by subject and region. Consult the Treaties and Historical Research Centre for further information).

Program Reference Centre: Treaty annuity paylists. The earliest paylists for each Band show at least a partial list of Band members at the time the Treaty was signed; they also often indicate the names of leaders and give other important information. (INDEX: by Band).

Treaties and Historical Research Centre: (a) Copies of some original Treaties. (b) A wide variety of archival material on Treaties and Treaty rights. (c) Maps. (INDEX: by subject, or by Treaty and Band).

DIAND (Regional and District Offices)

Miscellaneous records: Duplicates of some of the material held in Ottawa in the Indian Land Registry and the Legal Surveys Section. Some offices may also have unique material on Treaty adhesions after 1930. (INDEX: by subject and region or Band).

Church Records

Background material and reports on Treaty negotiations at which missionaries were present. (See guide to the use of these records on pages 227 to 229 and 357 of this handbook).

Records in Other Archives

Many archives across Canada (such as those listed in Appendix 4 of this book) hold records relating to Treaties. For a subject index, see the *Union List of Manuscripts in Canadian Repositories* (Ottawa: Public Archives of Canada, 1975, and three *Supplements* dated 1976, 1978, and 1982).

Published Material

Treaty Documents: Copies of most of the Treaties have been published by Indian Affairs. Those for 1680-1903 are in: Canada, *Indian Treaties and Surrenders* (3 volumes, Toronto: Coles, 1971, originally published in 1905-1912.) The Robinson-Huron and Robinson-Superior Treaties (1850), the eleven "numbered Treaties" of 1871-1921 (with adhesions to 1956), and the Chippewa-Mississauga Treaties of 1923 are available in a series of fourteen booklets (Ottawa: DIAND, 1957-69), distributed free by DIAND if supply permits (tel. 1-819-997-0380). Note that most of these texts differ slightly from the originals, especially as to punctuation and the spelling of Indian signators' names. Compare the original and published texts if possible.

Published Material (continued)

Background Material (Ethnology): For sources relating to conditions before the Treaties, see bibliographies and background materials listed on pages 18-21 and 197-210 of this handbook.

Department of Indian Affairs Annual Reports (Canada, Parliament, Sessional Papers.) These contain reports of most Treaty negotiations after 1870.

Background Material (Treaties): Much of the material published on this subject is listed in: Bennett McCardle, Canadian Indian Treaties in History, Politics and Law: An Annotated Reading List (Ottawa: Indian Association of Alberta, 1980; available from the Assembly of First Nations Library or the Treaties and Historical Research Centre, Ottawa) and DIAND, Treaties and Historical Research Centre, Select Bibliography on Canadian Indian Treaties and Related Subjects (Ottawa: DIAND, 1979). Material on American Treaties is listed in the McCardle bibliography and in F.P. Prucha's A Bibliographical Guide to the History of Indian-White Relations in the United States (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1977).

The following can be used as basic readings on the history of Canadian Treaties, although none are fully up-to-date or comprehensive: Peter Cumming and Neil H. Mickenberg, Native Rights in Canada (2d edition, Toronto: General Publishing Co., 1972) pages 53-62 and 95-131; George Brown and R.G. Maguire, Indian Treaties in Historical Perspective (Ottawa: DIAND, Treaties and Historical Research Centre, 1979) which includes a detailed list and chronology of Canadian Treaties; Emerson S. Coatsworth, Treaties and Promises: Saulteaux Indians (Toronto: Ginn & Co., 1971); Richard C. Daniel, A History of Native Claims Processes in Canada 1867-1979 (Ottawa: DIAND, Research Branch, 1980); Richard Price, The Spirit of the Alberta Indian Treaties (Montreal: Institute for Research on Public Policy, 1980); R.W. McInnes, "Indian Treaties and related disputes",

Published Material (continued)

University of Toronto Faculty of Law Review (1969) vol. 27: 52-72; and Robert J. Surtee's, "Indian land cessions in Ontario, 1763-1862: the evolution of a system" (Ph.D. thesis, Carleton University, 1982).

As well as the histories of specific Treaties listed in the McCardle bibliography, essays by various authors are now available, or are forthcoming, on the histories of the Pre-Confederation Treaties of the Maritimes, British Columbia and Ontario, the Robinson Treaties, and Treaty 3. For copies, contact the Treaties and Historical Research Centre, DIAND, Ottawa.

For information on ceremonials connected with Treaties (such as gift-giving, medals and wampum) see Wilbur Jacobs, Wilderness Politics and Indian Gifts... (Lincoln: University of Nebraska Press, 1950); N. Jaye Fredrickson, The Covenant Chain: Indian Ceremonial and Trade Silver (Ottawa: National Museums of Canada, 1980); Melvill Allan Jamieson, Medals Awarded to North American Indian Chiefs 1714-1922 (London: Spink & Son, 1936); Francis Paul Prucha, Indian Peace Medals in American History (Lincoln/London: U. of Nebraska Press, 1971); U.V. Wilcox, "The manufacture and use of wampum in the Northeast", The Bead Journal (1976) vol. 3(1): 10-15; L. Ceci, "The value of wampum among the New York Iroquois...", Journal of Anthropological Research (1982) vol. 38(1):97-107; M.K. Foster, "The recovery and translation of native speeches accompanying ancient Iroquois - white treaties", National Museum of Man, Canadian Ethnology Service, Canadian Studies Report No. 5e (Ottawa, August 1978); and Richard Price, ed. The Spirit of the Alberta Indian Treaties (Montreal: Institute for Research on Public Policy, 1979), especially articles by Foster and Taylor.

CARRYING OUT TREATY PROMISES

Once a Treaty is signed, its terms must be carried out. By researching the specific promises made in Indian Treaties, you can check whether they have been fulfilled.

For example, a Band's reserves can be studied to see if they fulfill the Treaty's provisions as to land. Researchers can check to see if government controls on Indian hunting, fishing and trapping correspond to those mentioned in the Treaty. Records relating to Treaty annuity moneys, farm tools, livestock, schools, and other items supplied to the Band can be studied and compared with Treaty promises.

Remember that research of this kind does not deal with the broader question of what a Treaty is in law, and how it affects the aboriginal rights of those who sign it. But Indian people are often also concerned with specific Treaty promises. Claims based on these promises are still being made today.

1. Reserve Land (Treaty Land Entitlement)

Reserve land was promised to many of the Indian groups who signed the Treaties. Some Treaties specify particular lands; others promise a certain number of acres per person. Some Treaties also limit the way in which the reserves can be disposed of, or state that reserve land can be expropriated for public purposes.

Some Treaties describe the specific reserve that the Band is to receive, by giving either an exact "legal description" of the reserve, or simply a general location and size. (In the latter case, the exact boundaries must be defined later by a surveyor.)

Other Treaties simply grant a certain number of acres of reserve land per person. The location of the reserve is chosen later, and is then laid out by a surveyor, in consultation with the Band.

In this case, the surveyor usually multiplied the number of people in the Band at the time of the survey by the number of acres per person specified in the Treaty. For example, Treaty Four mentions "one square mile for each family of five, or in that proportion for larger or smaller families" (that is, 128 acres per person). The surveyor would multiply the number of people in a Treaty Four band by 128, and lay out a reserve of that many acres. In some cases he made the reserve larger to make up for poor-quality land, or to deal with special problems such as irregular natural boundaries or adverse claims by non-Indians.

How do you calculate entitlement today?

Unfortunately, the Treaties do not state which Band population must be used to calculate the size of the reserve. There are many possible positions on this point. Different people and groups today use widely differing formulas, including formulas based on the population in the year the Treaty was signed, the population in the year before the survey, the population at the time the survey was made, or any one of several "combination" formulas. Each is based on different legal and historical arguments. There is also disagreement over how to calculate the entitlement of bands that have received some, but not all, of the land due to them.

Finally, there is uncertainty over the following details:

- The kinds of reserve land to be counted towards the Band's entitlement (for example, where land is used for special purposes, or where the legal status of the land is uncertain).

- The sources to be used for population figures (such as Treaty paylists, censuses or other records) and how to interpret them in particular cases.

- Whether (and how) to count people who did not join the Band or sign Treaty until after the Band received its land.

- Whether a claim can be based on the fact that land was not granted according to the wishes of the Band (for example, land that is poorer in quality than the land asked for, or in the wrong place, or granted long after it was first asked for).

- Various other minor "technical" problems that interfere with the calculating of the size of the grant, or of the size of Band population.

Even if everyone decides that a particular Band has not received all the land due to it, they may still disagree over how much land it should get today. Indian groups from many Treaty areas are now negotiating these issues with the federal government.

Researching entitlement

If you are starting a project of this kind, try to consult with other researchers, Bands, or Indian organizations in your area who are familiar with these problems. They can tell you how they research cases, and can suggest ways to handle the political side of your work.

The Treaty land entitlement of a Band is researched in the same way as the history of a reserve, and you use the same sources. You could follow these steps:

Steps	Questions to ask
1. Determine the terms of the Treaty.	• What was the exact wording of the written Treaty as to reserve land? • What was the exact wording of any other documents mentioning reserve land (especially promises made during actual treaty negotiations)? • Were any official instructions issued by the government or by Indian councils to the surveyors, describing the land wanted? Note: Look for statements as to the amount, quality, and location of land; how it is to be chosen, when and by whom; who is to own the resources on it; and how the land is to be surveyed or set aside.
2. Describe the survey or selection of the land.	• What was the date of the first selection of land by or for the Band? • What was the date of the first survey of land for the Band? • What happened before, during and after the selection and survey? • Who actually chose the land: was it a Band meeting, Indian leaders, the surveyor, or others? • How was the survey done? (Were lines marked on the ground by the surveyor? Was land selected using existing maps without a survey? • Were there any opposing claims to the land, by non-Indian settlers, other government offices, corporations, or others? • If the survey was not finished, or if only part of the land was surveyed in one session, why? Was the survey finished later, and how? If the first choice was abandoned, what was it replaced with and why? • Were any changes made to the survey or survey papers (maps, notes, reports) after the survey was completed?
3. Determine what entitlement formula was used.	• If the treaty grants entitlement land on an acres- per- person basis, what population figures were used to calculate the size of the reserve? (If records do not say, try to figure this out from other evidence.) • Where did the population figures used come from: were they from Treaty paylists, censuses, head counts, estimates, or other sources? • Was any extra land granted, and why? (For example, land for absent persons, to account for future population increases, to make up for poor land, or to replace land taken by non-Indian claimants.) • If not all the land was surveyed in one session, what formula was used at the second (or later) surveys? • Was the quality and location of the land (or the resources on it) taken into account when the land was chosen and surveyed?

Steps	Questions to ask
4. Determine the status of the land.	• Did the chosen land get reserve status? • Was it granted to the right Band? If not, why not? • Were any lands under water, roadways, rights of way, or any other special lands included in the calculation of entitlement? • Did the Band get rights to the resources on the land as well as to the land itself?
5. Compare the terms of the Treaty with the Band's choice of land, and with the land they finally received.	• Did the Band get the land to which they were legally entitled under the Treaty? If not, why not? • If it is not clear whether they did or did not get their full entitlement, what further facts do you need before you can answer the question?

The documents you need to do an entitlement research project are the same as those outlined on pages 29 - 61 of this handbook, under "Reserve Lands and Resources". When you have answered as many of the questions as possible, you may then be able to determine if the Band has a legal claim to extra land under the Treaty today.

2. Hunting, Fishing and Trapping

The "numbered Treaties", and a few others, provide that Indian people have special hunting and fishing rights in the area surrendered by the Treaty. In some cases these are said to be subject to government control. They may cease to exist where certain kinds of settlement and development take place. The Canadian courts have made rulings on these rights many times since the 1870s. Still, in most regions the exact extent of these rights is not yet clear.

To determine whether the Treaty you are studying has been carried out, compare the Treaty's words with the restrictions actually applied to Indian hunting, fishing and trapping; that is, the provisions of current provincial, federal or constitutional game and fish laws that apply to Indian people. You will need the advice of a lawyer experienced in native law to tell you how the courts have dealt with this particular kind of claim in the past. For further information, see also pages 121 - 129 of this handbook.

3. Treaty Annuities and Other Treaty Moneys

Treaty annuities are small yearly payments, usually in cash, made by the Crown to every man, woman and child under certain Treaties. Some Treaties grant a specific number of dollars per person, sometimes with larger amounts for Chiefs and Councillors. Some pay a yearly lump sum to the Band as a whole. Annuities are considered to be "token" payments meant to seal the Treaty agreement, although their original purchasing power was much higher than it is now. Some Treaties also made a small one-time payment -- the "gratuity" -- to each person in the year he or she first took Treaty. Large one-time lump-sum payments were also made in a few Ontario Treaties before Confederation. The size of the annuities, gratuities, and lump sums varies from Treaty to Treaty.

Annuity payments for the Treaties signed in 1850 and after are recorded in yearly Band paylists ("Treaty annuity paylists"). These usually name every person or head of family in the group. These lists are often used as legal membership records for the Band, as well as being useful for research on Treaty promises concerning annuities and gratuities. The earlier the Treaty, however, the less regular and less standardized are its annuity records.

There have been important court cases relating to annuities. The texts of the court decisions in these cases discuss the government's legal obligations to pay the money, and describe actual payment practices.

4. Goods, Supplies and Stock

The numbered Treaties, and a few earlier agreements, promise that certain goods, supplies and livestock will be given to Indian Bands or their members under certain conditions. These usually include some combination of farm implements, vehicles (buggies and wagons), horses, cattle, pigs, seed grain, cloth and clothing, and twine and ammunition for hunting. Amounts in some cases were limited to a particular cash value per year.

Indian Affairs records can sometimes be used to find out if these things were in fact supplied. Sometimes, however, no evidence can be found concerning a particular item. Thus, it is not always possible to prove whether or not Treaty promises have been fulfilled.

To make sure that you get all the evidence you need on this point, you may have to read a great variety of records relating to the overall finances of the Department and the day-to-day running of the Band, including Agency records, account books, and subject files on farming.

5. Ceremonial Goods

Some Treaties promise particular ceremonial items, such as flags, medals, and special suits of clothes for the Chiefs. (These suits are sometimes called "triennial clothing" because they were, and still are, given out once every three years.) Indian Affairs keeps records in which these grants can be checked for some, if not all, periods of time.

6. Schools

Some Treaties signed in western Canada state that the government will pay certain school costs, and/or teachers' salaries. The exact extent of the costs the Crown must pay is not yet clear. You can use the Department's many records on schools to find out approximately what it has paid for in the past, and what it is paying for now. You can also compare payments in Treaty areas with those in places not covered by Treaty promises.

7. Other Services

A few Treaties refer to special items such as medical care, aid in time of "famine and pestilence", and help in the establishment of farms. In other cases, matters of this kind were discussed in Treaty negotiations, but were not written into the Treaty text. What these promises mean is not yet clear, especially because they are often not confined to specific amounts of goods or types of service. Most researchers find that they need expert advice, both legal and historical, on these questions.

SOURCES OF INFORMATION

The short forms used for specific sources are:

DIAND	Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, Indian and Inuit Affairs Program, Central Registry files (in Ottawa, unless otherwise noted).
PAC	Public Archives of Canada (Ottawa).
RG-10	Historic records of the Department of Indian Affairs (in PAC, RG-10).

Many of the sources for this section are the same as those listed in the previous section, "The Signing of a Treaty". See also records described elsewhere in this handbook on specific topics, such as "Reserve Land", "Hunting, Fishing, and Trapping", "Economic Development", and "Other Subjects" (health, schools, band government, and so on).

Detailed information on current Treaty land entitlement claims is available from Indian organizations in your Treaty area, and from the Office of Native Claims, DIAND, Ottawa.

Public Archives of Canada

RG-10: (a) General reports, background material and other documents on the pre-Confederation Treaties, scattered throughout volumes 1 to 1854 of RG-10. (INDEX: see the green inventory for RG-10 and special subject indexes for these volumes). (b) General reports and correspondence, relating mainly to post-Confederation Treaty provisions, in subject files in the Red and Black Series and the New Accessions. (INDEXES: see the new computerized subject indexes to the three series. Look under such headings as "Annuities", e.g. RG-10 volume 6878 file 1/28-3 (annuities policy, 1892-1954); Robinson Annuity claims before the Board of Arbitration, 1897-1901 (RG-10 volumes 2545-2547); and specific subject files on "Farming", "Cattle", "Horses", etc.) (c) Detailed descriptions of Agency business, including references to Treaty supplies, in Agency letter books and accounts (INDEX: see PAC's special list of Agency Records, Federal Archives Division, RG-10 Finding Aid No. 40).

DIAND (OTTAWA)

Central Registry Files: (a) General background and reports on Treaty fulfilment, under specific subject areas, mainly after 1900 (INDEX: by subject and region or Band). (b) Treaty policy files in the 1/1-11 series, which contain useful tabulations and background correspondence for each of the post-Confederation Treaties. (c) Treaty Land Entitlement policy files for Canada and each Region. (INDEX: consult the Treaties and Historical Research Centre for file numbers).

Treaties and Historical Research Centre: Background and policy files, and tentative tabulations of amounts of Treaty goods granted under the various Treaties. (INDEX: by Treaty and Band, or by subject).

Program Reference Centre: Treaty annuity paylists, which give Band populations annuity and gratuity accounts, and sometimes other information relevant to fulfilment of the Treaty promises.

Legal Surveys Section: Maps and related material used to determine the true size of reserves for Treaty Land entitlement calculations. (INDEX: by province and reserve).

Other Sources

Annual Reports of the Department of Indian Affairs (in Canada, Parliament, Sessional Papers): These give detailed background reports on the administration of Treaty provisions such as entitlement land and farm aid, since 1871. See the statistics on farming given in the "Tabular Statements" for the years 1875-1945. (These should, however, be used with caution.)

Financial Records: Records showing amounts of Treaty supplies rendered to particular areas or Bands can sometimes be found in departmental financial records, especially the itemized statements of supplies found in the Public Accounts statements and the Auditor-General's reports for part of the period before 1940. See the guide to these records on pages 113 - 120, under "Economic Development".

Background Reading: Papers on the implementation of various Treaties are are listed in Bennett McCardle's Canadian Indian Treaties in History, Politics and Law (Ottawa: Indian Association of Alberta, 1980), pages 3-15. Reference and political pepers on specific aspects of Treaty implementation are available from most Indian organizations in the Treaty areas, and in the library of the Assembly of First Nations (formerly National Indian Brotherhood) in Ottawa.

Court Records: Court decisions from 1880 to 1979 on the interpretation of Treaty promises are listed on pages 24-28 of the McCardle bibliography (above). More recent cases are reported in the magazine Canadian Native Law Reporter for 1979 to the present. The state of the law on Treaties (as of ten years ago) is well summed up in P. Cumming and N.H. Mickenberg, Native Rights in Canada (Toronto; 2d ed., 1972) pages 53-62 and 95-131, and in R.W. McInnes, "Indian Treaties and Related Disputes", University of Toronto Faculty of Law Review (1969) volume 27, pages 52-72.

SURRENDERS AND SALES OF RESERVE LANDS AND RESOURCES

Indian groups often ask questions concerning loss of reserve land and resources. These questions are common because many Indian reserves across the country have in fact been changed or cut down in size over the years. Many of these changes have been made by "surrender" -- that is, by a formal agreement between a Band and the federal government, in which reserve land is given up to the Crown for sale, or is exchanged for other land.*

Likewise, outsiders cannot legally lease Indian reserve land or waters, or mine on-reserve minerals, oil and gas, or cut on-reserve timber, until the Band has "surrendered" these rights to the Crown. This process is almost always carried out in the same way as a surrender "for sale".

General rules for the carrying out of surrenders are said to have been first laid down in the Royal Proclamation of 1763, and in various official colonial policy statements, "instructions", proclamations, and statutes at later dates. Since 1876, formal rules for surrenders have been embodied in the Indian Act. This states how the meeting is to be held, how those negotiating the surrender must act, how the vote is taken, and what documents are needed to approve and record it. Other parts of the Act (and related special regulations) govern how the land or resources are sold or leased. Finally, the Act states how the money earned from the surrender is to be banked and used for the benefit of the Band.

---

* From time to time other means have been used to cut off or take back reserve land, including special federal legislation, resumption by Order-in-Council, patenting to enfranchised Band members, suspension of the Indian Act's surrender provisions, and relocation of whole reserves under a special Indian Act amendment of 1911. There have also been the ordinary expropriations of rights-of-way or other small areas of reserve land for "public purposes". Special cut-off cases other than conventional surrenders should be studied each according to their own terms.

Because of oral traditions concerning land losses, and because of known patterns of irregularity in past surrenders, Indian Bands sometimes question the ways in which past surrenders have been carried out. They may research their surrenders in detail to find out why and by whom the surrender was proposed and authorized; what happened during the surrender negotiations; what happened later to the land, resources and money; and whether or not the surrender procedure was regular and legal.

At the base of every such project is the issue of just and legal treatment; that is, were the surrender and sales honest, fair, and properly managed according to the laws and customs of the time?

Here is the story of one surrender:

In June of 1905, the Indian Agent for the Ningotchi Agency reported to the Department of Indian Affairs in Ottawa that the Black River Band needed extra fencing and equipment to improve their farms and make them more "self-sufficient". They had no Band Trust Fund moneys. The Department replied that it did not wish to spend federal funds to do this, and that the Band ought to sell some of its land to finance the improvements. Ottawa also said that local non-Indian settlers had sent petitions to Ottawa asking that the reserve be sold. The Agent was formally instructed to negotiate a surrender and sale of all or part of the reserve, on whatever terms he could arrange, as long as it did not involve spending public money.

The Band met in July of 1905 to discuss the surrender. A vote was taken, and the Agent reported that a majority of those voting approved the sale of one-quarter of the reserve. (It is still unclear, however, exactly what understanding the Band had as to the legal meaning of the surrender). Three special conditions were written into the agreement: (a) that the land be sold for at least $5.00 per acre; (b) that a specific sum out of the sales proceeds be spent on buying fencing, farm implements, and livestock for Band members; and (c) that "interest" from the sales be given out in cash to Band members.

These terms were hand-written into the surrender document, a standard printed form supplied to the Agent by Ottawa. The final document was signed by the Agent, some of the voters, and some witnesses. The Agent and two leading men then went to a magistrate and swore a formal affidavit stating that the surrender had been carried out in certain specified ways, as required by the Indian Act.

The Agent mailed the surrender agreement and affidavit to Ottawa, with a short report describing the meeting. Department of Indian Affairs officials submitted the surrender to the Privy Council, which formally accepted it by Order-in-Council. The original agreement was filed in Privy Council records, and a duplicate was placed in the Indian Land Registry.

The Department then sent out a surveyor to divide up and value the land for sale by auction. (A few years earlier, the land might have been put up for sale by tender or by private negotiation with the local Indian Agent instead.) The auction was held in the spring of 1906. The land was sold to the highest bidders, parcel by parcel, the terms being one-fifth of the price in cash down, and the rest in four equal yearly instalments, with interest. Some land remained unsold,

> and was later bought (at the "upset" or valuation prices) by people who contacted the Department privately. Some was never sold: when this was discovered in 1965, the land was returned to the Band by an Order-in-Council which re-established it as part of the reserve.
>
> The money from each parcel was recorded in the Indian Affairs "Land Sales Books" in Ottawa. (At an earlier date, local or Agency account books would have been used.) When each buyer paid his or her debt in full, the Department of Indian Affairs issued a Crown grant (or "letters patent") for the land, and the land passed out of Indian and Crown control. Some buyers failed to make their payments on time, or made none at all. Some of these sales were cancelled. Others were overlooked for many years. Still others had the purchase price formally reduced by one of several different legal procedures.
>
> The money paid by buyers was banked in the Band's Trust Fund, except for ten per cent put in a common "administration" account (the Indian Land Management Fund) and two sums given out in cash as "interest distributions" (as required by the surrender) in 1911 and 1913.

This surrender could have happened between 1876 and 1950. Surrenders at other times are somewhat different, because their historical context was not the same, and because surrender law and policy changed in important ways in 1876, 1914, and 1951. In particular, surrender law before 1876 was less detailed than that after 1876, and the administration of surrendered land sales tended to be confused when it was not irregular. In turn, the new Indian Act of 1951 was clearer and more detailed than previous Acts. Your research project will have to take account of these changes.

Researching a Surrender

You are researching the Black River surrender just described. Here are the steps you would follow:

1. Collect the basic facts. Find out the basic facts of your case, if you don't know them already. Interview any person who remembers the surrender, or who knows stories about it. Look for people who have old maps, documents or other papers relating to it. Find out where the surrendered land was, when the surrender took place, and what questions (if any) people have about it today. If possible, make a rough map of the reserve, showing the land you are interested in, and use it for reference.

2. Find the legal documents. Look for the legal surrender documents. You may find copies locally, at a Band Council office, at the research office of your local Indian organization, or in the provincial archives. In most cases, however, you will have to look in files of the Department of Indian Affairs at its Regional or Ottawa offices, or in the Public Archives of Canada in Ottawa. The number of legal documents varies, depending on the date of the surrender, but for most surrenders after Confederation you will find:

- the original surrender agreement;
- the original surrender affidavit;
- the Order-in-Council accepting the surrender (an example is shown on page 103 of this handbook);
- any legal documents attached to the surrender, such as maps, voters' lists, secondary surrenders, and leases; and
- any office or duplicate [illegible] of the surrender to compare with the original. (Make [illegible] that you know which is the original and which is a later copy.)

3. Look up the Indian Act's surrender provisions. Get a copy of the Indian Act that was in force at the time the surrender was taken. Make absolutely sure it is not a later or earlier version. Find the sections describing how a legal surrender must be taken, and how reserve lands must be sold. Copy them for reference.

Find copies of any special regulations made under the Indian Act that affect the surrender and sale. Examples are the Indian Land Regulations of 1887-1951, the Indian Timber Regulations of 1887-1951, or the various Indian Mineral/Quartz Mining/Coal Mining/Oil and Gas/Precious Metals Mining Regulations (1887 to present). Make sure that these, too, are the ones in force when the surrender was taken.

4. Research the negotiation of the surrender. Explain how and why the surrender took place. First, look in the archives for descriptions of the surrender meeting itself. How was it called? Who was there; who spoke for the Band, and who for the government? Describe what was said, and try to determine if everyone understood the discussion. If there were disagreements, find out what was done about them. Were those present influenced in any unusual way? If the surrender took place before 1876, ask what leaders agreed to the surrender, and what authority did they have to do so? If the surrender was after 1876, how many people voted for and against the surrender? Were they all qualified to do so? Were all the surrender documents made out in the proper way?

Second, study the facts surrounding the surrender meeting. Can you explain why the surrender was proposed in the first place, and by whom? If the Band approved it, what reasons did they have for doing so? Did the government have special reasons for wanting the surrender? Did any other "outsiders" (traders, missionaries, settlers, land speculators, politicians, or others) have an interest in preventing or encouraging the surrender? If the surrender was supposed to be in the Band's "best interests", what reasons are there to believe that it was or was not so?

You will need to do a lot of research to answer these questions fully. Sometimes you may not be able to find the facts you need. For example, the Agent who took the Black River surrender in 1905 did not record exactly how many people voted for and against the surrender, nor who they were. Thus we cannot tell whether a majority really did approve it. Likewise, you may not find any evidence to explain why people petitioned Ottawa asking for the surrender. But you should be able to find enough facts to deal with some of your questions.

You may also have to do special research to settle certain technical questions. For example, you may have to study Band membership lists, family trees, or Treaty paylists to find out whether those who voted on a surrender were old enough to do so. You may have to study maps, farming files, and other records to find out if the voters all lived close enough to the reserve to satisfy the "residence" requirements of the Indian Act.

5. Research the land sales. If the surrender led to a sale of the land, research and document the way in which the surrendered land was sold.

Land sales practices in the Department of Indian Affairs have varied widely over the 150-odd years since the government made its first sale. Before 1876, there were no specific guidelines governing how sales were made, and no standard system of land sales records. The documents and accounts describing the sales are often scattered and incomplete. Records after 1876 are more uniform and detailed. They consist of land sales files (mainly in the Public Archives of Canada) and indexed sales ledgers with related documents and accounts (mainly in the Department's Indian Land Registry in Ottawa). The few sales made since the 1960s are usually managed by and recorded in Regional or District offices.

Detailed land sales research often takes a long time. But it is worthwhile, because you may turn up new facts relating to the surrender itself, and because it helps you to account for all the money due to the

Band under the surrender. Detailed work also helps to detect the many mistakes and irregular practices that we know occurred in Indian Affairs land sales administration in the period between about 1820 and the Second World War.

A good way of keeping track of land sales is to set up a card file. Make up one note card for each separate piece of land sold. Write on it the land description, the number and date of the sale, the buyer, the price, the date and number of the patent, and any other special terms of sale. You may include the number of instalments that were called for, and the number actually paid; the way in which interest was calculated, both in theory and practice; any special settlement duties or timber restrictions imposed on the buyer; documents by which the original buyer passed or "assigned" his land to another person, and the numbers of any correspondence files relating to that particular sale.

After setting up the card file, mark each sale on your reference map of the surrendered area. List all land that remains unsold. Keep a record of any unusual happenings, such as squatters' claims, quarrels over title to surrendered lands, overall changes in sale terms, repossessions from defaulting buyers, ownership of mineral rights on sold lands, and payments for Indian improvements on sold lands.

6. Research land, mineral or timber leases. Research these in the same way as you would research a land sale. There should be special files on these subjects, or at least traces of files. (Many resource records were destroyed by the Department earlier in this century because it considered them to be "routine" material.) Look for the special regulations, in effect from 1887 onward, that govern how minerals and timber are to be leased and paid for.

7. Research the "implementation" of the surrender. Find out whether the terms of the surrender were properly carried out. For example, if you were researching the Black River surrender, you would do the following:

- Study Band trust fund statements to see that all land payments due to the Band were banked in their account.

- Compare these same statements with the special records of interest distributions, to see if the interest payments promised in the surrender were made.

- Check the land sales revenue totals, to see if the sales realized the $5.00 per acre specified in the surrender.

- Find general files on Band farming, livestock, fencing, and related matters, to see if the promised supplies were provided. Cross-check these with the trust fund records. (In some cases you may have to read a wide variety of Agency and other records to deal with this problem.)

- If some of the surrendered land remained unsold, find out what its status is today, what it is being used for, and by whom.

If the surrender involves the exchange of one piece of land for another, check that the Band received the land specified in the agreement. If the surrender was ever invalidated or revoked, find out why, and what happened to the land involved.

8. List unanswered questions. There will probably be questions that you cannot answer, because you cannot find the facts. Other questions can only be answered by professionals such as lawyers, surveyors, or accountants. List them for further thought.

9. Collect your findings. Put all your notes, documents, maps and other material together in an orderly way. Read it all over once again. Think about what you wish to say. Get any professional advice you may need.

10. Write your report. Make a short outline of what you want to say and write your report. You could use headings like these:

- The Band Before the Surrender (its livelihood, reserve lands, and relations with non-Indian neighbours and the government)
- The Surrender (proposals, meetings, and the surrender vote)
- The Surrender Documents (date, description, and written terms)
- Carrying Out the Land Sale, Land Lease, or Resource Lease
- Carrying Out the Terms of the Surrender
- Unanswered Questions and Other Problems
- Conclusions.

SOURCES OF INFORMATION

The short forms used for sources are:

DIAND	Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, Indian-Inuit Affairs Program: current Central Registry files (in Ottawa, unless otherwise noted).
PAC	Public Archives of Canada (Ottawa).
RG-10	Historic records of the Department of Indian Affairs (in PAC, Record Group 10).

Public Archives of Canada

RG-10: (a) General files containing information on pre-Confederation surrenders. (INDEX: the RG-10 "green inventory" and other finding aids; see archivists for help). (b) Subject files on all aspects of post-Confederation surrenders, including background, negotiations, land sales, and carrying out of terms. (INDEXES: computerized subject indexes to the Red (Eastern) and Black (Western) Series and to the New Accessions. File reference lists in the Indian Land Registry's "Land Sales Books". File reference lists in Matheson's index, RG-10 new accession 76-7/124, Box 2, File 9.)

Agency records: These often give special background information on surrenders and their implementation. (INDEXES: general lists of Agency records in RG-10 Finding Aid No. 40; see archivists for guidance).

Trust Fund Ledgers and related records: See page 113 of this handbook ("Economic Development and Finances") under "Trust Funds".

Original surrender documents: Originals of some of the earliest surrenders are in RG-10 volumes 1840-1853. Most of these are also indexed or copied in the Indian Land Registry (see below).

RG-2 series 1: (a) Copies of original Orders-in-Council accepting surrenders, dated 1867 to the present. Attached to these are the original surrender documents and related papers. Earlier Orders are available in Record Group 1, section E. (b) Copies of Orders and Regulations governing land sales, sales interest rates, and trust fund management. Some of these have also been published in the Canada Gazette Part II for the appropriate year. The first Indian Land Regulations were enacted by Order-in-Council P.C. 2084 of 26 October 1887, and were consolidated with the Indian Timber Regulations by P.C. 1787 of 18 September 1888. These were amended periodically thereafter until they (presumably) lapsed at the passing of the new Indian Act in 1951. Various timber and mining regulations have been passed from the early 1890s up to the present. There is no complete reference list of these regulations, but see references on pages 51-53 and 266 of this handbook.

Other Records: Various records on pre-Confederation surrenders and land sales are scattered throughout RG-1, RG-4, RG-5, RG-8, RG-9, MG-11, and the papers of politicians and private persons in many

Public Archives of Canada (continued)

other record and manuscript groups. A complete collection of patents issued on sold surrendered Indian lands is in PAC, RG-68 (Registrar-General's Records). (INDEXES: see archivists for guidance).

National Map Collection: The Department of Indian Affairs' original "land sales maps" -- reference maps annotated with names of buyers, sales file numbers and other information -- are in the Map Collection's Accession No. RG-10M, 76703/9. (INDEXES: see the Collection's map archivists).

DIAND (Ottawa)

Indian Land Registry: Originals or duplicates of most surrender agreements, affidavits, Orders-in-Council, and legal attachments to surrenders. The Registry's "Land Sales Books" give file references, sale terms, accounts and other information for all land sales after 1876 and some sales between 1840 and 1876; there are also associated records of assignments, patents, etc. (INDEXES: See reference on page 252 of this handbook). Note that the true original of a land surrender document should be found either here or in PAC, RG-2 series 1.

Legal Surveys Section: Legal maps of surrendered Indian lands. (INDEX: map lists, broken down by province and name of reserve. Surrender maps are interfiled in this collection).

Program Reference Centre: Band Membership lists, Treaty paylists, interest distribution paylists, and related census information. These are used to research surrender votes and finances. (INDEXES: see description of these records under "Indian Status, Membership and Family History", pages 130 to 149 of this handbook).

Central Registry: Indian Affairs' subject files on surrenders, containing all surrender and land sales correspondence less than 30 years old, as well as a substantial amount of older material attached to current files. (INDEX: by region, Agency and name of Band, mainly in the file series coded 30 to 36. See the Treaties and Historical Research Centre for further information.)

DIAND (Regional and District Offices)

Most Regional and District offices have files on recent (post-1930) surrenders or land sales, and copies of related maps. Extent of holdings varies from office to office. (INDEX: contact Lands Section of your local office for further information.)

Other Records

Department of Consumer and Corporate Affairs (Registrar-General's Office, Ottawa): Original letters patent on all sold surrendered Indian lands in Canada up to the present day. See also copies at the Public Archives (RG-68), and in the Indian Land Registry (patents dated before 1960 only). (INDEX: by name of buyer or legal land description.)

National Library of Canada, Canadian Indian Rights Commission Collection: Documents related to the surrender of the St. Peter's Reserve, Manitoba, 1907, including the Provincial Royal Commission Report of January 1912 and transcripts of evidence describing the surrender in detail. An important collection describing in detail the events of a significant post-Confederation surrender. (INDEX: Contact the curator of the collection at 1-613-992-6628.)

Provincial Archives: Some provincial archives hold important records on early colonial sales of Indian lands, as well as general background material. (See, for example, the Crown Lands Papers in the Ontario Archives in Toronto, and comparable records elsewhere).

Court Records: Files on court cases currently before the Federal Court of Canada are available for research. They contain useful historical and legal information on 20th century surrenders. See Federal Court of Canada (Trial Division) Registry, files T-2330-75 (*Cardinal et al. v. the Queen*, Enoch Band, 1908 surrender); T-494-78 (*Brulé et al. v. the Queen*, Enoch Band, 1902 surrender); T-2583-77 (*Small Legs et al. v. the Queen*, Peigan Band, 1908 surrender); T-4178-78 (*Apsassin et al. v. the Queen*, Fort St. John Band, 1948 surrender); and T-3267-79 (*Bigeagle et al. v. the Queen*, Whitebear/Ocean Man/Pheasant's Rump Bands, 1901 surrender).

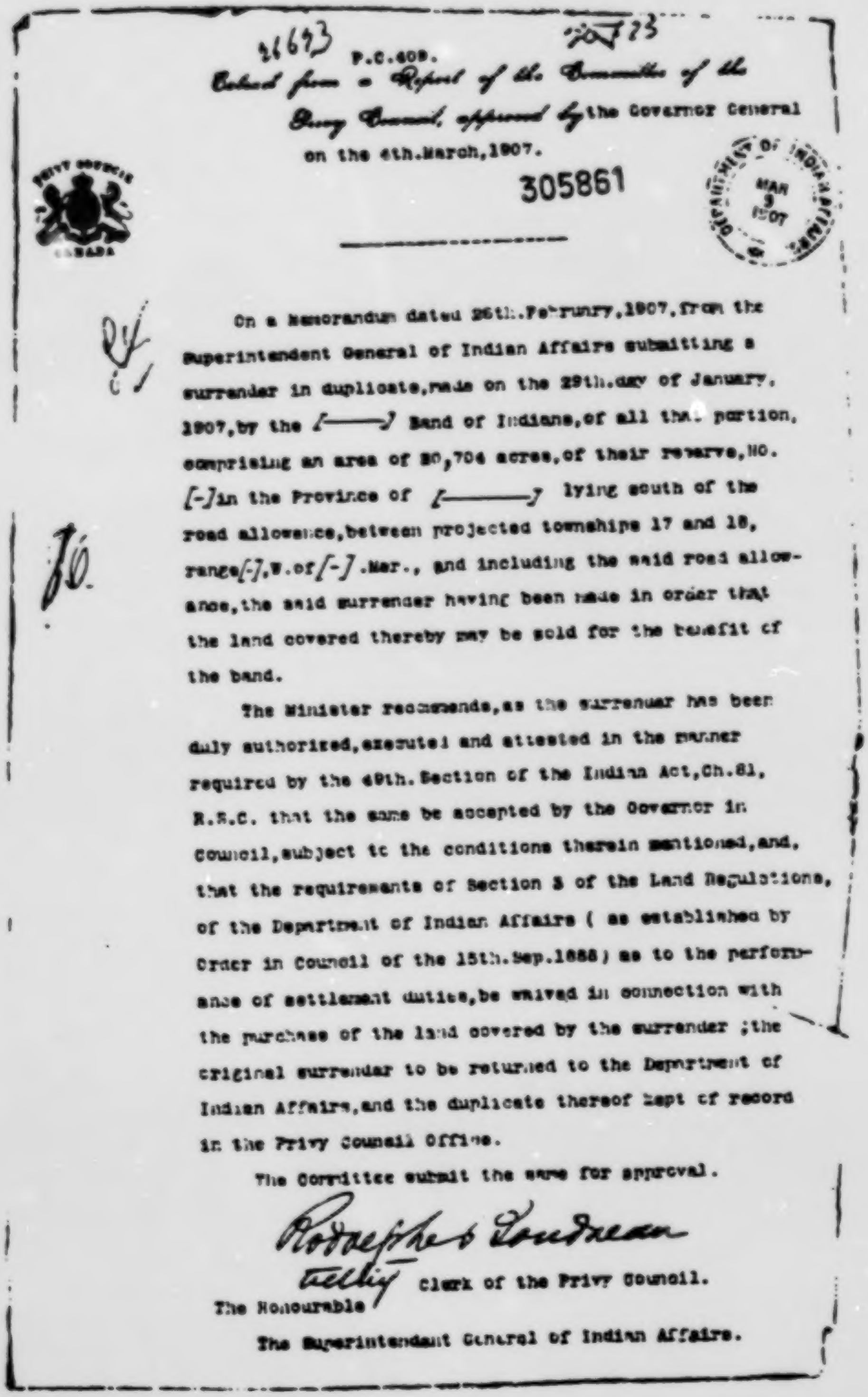
Published Material

Annual Reports of the Department of Indian Affairs: These contain valuable background information on local conditions, especially between 1867 and 1918. They include yearly tabulations and other information on land sales across Canada in the years 1898-1940.

Indian Treaties and Surrenders, 3 volumes (Toronto: Coles, 1971). This book contains reprints of most major surrenders up to 1903, of which the originals are either in PAC, RG-10 volumes 1840-53 or in DIAND's Indian Land Registry. Does not include maps and other attachments in all cases.

Other Background Reading: Few detailed published descriptions of surrenders are available as yet, although some of the material on pre-Confederation Treaties (described in earlier sections) applies to the early surrenders as well. See also Peter S. Schmalz's *The*

History of the Saugeen Indians (Ottawa: Ontario Historical Society, 1977), chapters III to VII; Charles M. Johnston's *The Valley of the Six Nations* (Toronto: Champlain Society, 1964); Kenneth J. Tyler's "A Tax-Eating Proposition: The History of the Passpasschase Indian Reserve" (unpublished M.A. Thesis, University of Alberta, 1979); Stewart Raby, "Indian Land Surrenders in Southern Saskatchewan", *Canadian Geographer* (1973) vol. 17(1) pages 36-51; Robert J. Surtees, "Indian land cessions in Ontario, 1763-1862: the evolution of a system" (Ph.D thesis, Carleton University, 1982); and L.C. Hansen, "Revocation of surrender and its implications for a Canadian Indian Band's development", *Anthropologica* (1981) n.s. vol. 23(2): 121-143.



26643 P.C.409. 30723

Extract from a Report of the Committee of the Privy Council, approved by the Governor General on the 4th. March, 1907.

305861

DEPARTMENT OF INDIAN AFFAIRS
MAR 5 1907

On a memorandum dated 26th. February, 1907, from the Superintendent General of Indian Affairs submitting a surrender in duplicate, made on the 29th. day of January, 1907, by the [——] Band of Indians, of all that portion, comprising an area of 20,704 acres, of their reserve, No. [-] in the Province of [———] lying south of the road allowance, between projected townships 17 and 18, range [-], W. of [-] Mer., and including the said road allowance, the said surrender having been made in order that the land covered thereby may be sold for the benefit of the band.

The Minister recommends, as the surrender has been duly authorized, executed and attested in the manner required by the 49th. Section of the Indian Act, Ch. 81, R.S.C. that the same be accepted by the Governor in Council, subject to the conditions therein mentioned, and, that the requirements of Section 3 of the Land Regulations, of the Department of Indian Affairs (as established by Order in Council of the 15th. Sep. 1888) as to the performance of settlement duties, be waived in connection with the purchase of the land covered by the surrender; the original surrender to be returned to the Department of Indian Affairs, and the duplicate thereof kept of record in the Privy Council Office.

The Committee submit the same for approval.

Rodolphe Boudreau
Actg Clerk of the Privy Council.

The Honourable
The Superintendent General of Indian Affairs.

AN ORDER-IN-COUNCIL

A typical Order-in-Council accepting and confirming a land surrender on behalf of the "Governor in Council", as required by the Indian Act of the time. Significant markings on the document are the "P.C. number" (P.C., or Privy Council, 409) and the date (4 March 1907) which are both needed to identify the Order. Note also the handwritten file numbers, which can be used to trace related documents; the date stamp, showing the date the Order was received in the Department of Indian Affairs; and the initials in the margins, probably those of DIA officials acknowledging receipt. The heading "Extract from a Report..." and the Clerk's signature show that this is not the original Order (which would be found in PAC, RG-2 series 1), but a legally valid certified copy produced by the Privy Council for general use. See also remarks in Appendix 1 of this handbook, under "Orders-

ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT AND FINANCES

The economy of an Indian community has a very important effect on its history. A Band's livelihood influences where its people choose to live, how they govern themselves, and what relations they have with others. You, as a researcher, may investigate this subject on its own, or as part of a larger project.

For example, you may need to research the past livelihood of your community generally. How did people make a living 20, 50, or 150 years ago? How have their ways of life changed over time? You may be asked to write about current disputes over the use of land or of hunting, fishing and trapping territory. To do so, you also need to understand how these conflicts arose in the first place.

Claims research sometimes also involves work on the history of a Band's economy. People making claims for damages caused by losses of reserve land need information on how the land was used, what it was worth, and what effect its loss had on the group's means of earning a living.

For example, a Band Council may ask you to report on the government's past management of Band or community moneys. You would answer such questions as: When was the Band's Trust Fund first set up? Where did the money in it come from? What Treaties, surrenders and laws affect how it is used? How has the money been administered by the government in the past? You might also be asked to explain the tax status and rights of the Band, or of a business venture operated by it.

Finally, individual people may need research on their private financial affairs - for example, a government "savings account" held for them or their relatives by the Department of Indian Affairs; or their personal tax status and rights.

Below are brief outlines of five types of project that require special research on Indian economic history.

1. The Economic History of a Community

If you wish to research the past economy or way of life of a community, you usually have to do a general history of the community first. This will give you some of the most important economic facts, such as how large the community is and was; what were its traditional ways of making a living; what territory, reserve land and resources it has used during its history; and what important historical events affected the community's livelihood, such as the arrival of fur traders or white settlers, the making of Treaties, and the passing of laws controlling Indian economic activities.

When you have a reasonable knowledge of the community's history, you can go on to do a more detailed economic study of special issues, such as the following:

- Hunting, fishing and trapping: You could research how game, fish and the fur trade have provided a living for people of the community, both in the past and today. This subject is so specialized that it is discussed in its own section, next in the handbook.

- Farming: You could describe how people in the community have farmed, both in the past and today. You would describe both traditional and modern methods of farming or gardening. Subjects to study could include the crops raised, how they are used, stored and traded, and how farming related to other ways of making a living, such as hunting and trapping, or wage labour. Related subjects include choice of reserve lands for farming, the effects of government controls over Indian farming (such as restrictions on marketing of produce, or controls on land use), and the effects of special financial aid programs for Indian farmers.

- Labour, Employment and Business: You could do a project on the history of Indian labour and business in your community. If the Band's traditional livelihood was by hunting, fishing, trading and/or farming, when did other "non-traditional" sources of income first become available? How large a part of the people's livelihood did it become? What kinds of work for wages were done in the community, when and by whom? What private enterprises did Indian people of the area first set up, and when?

2. Evaluation of Past Reserve Lands and Resources

If you are working on a legal claim relating to losses of land, or revenue from mismanaged resources, you may be asked to determine the past value of the land in question. You will need information on the way the land was being used, or could have been used, at the time it was taken, and what its value would have been later on. You will need to know what effect the loss of the land or resources actually had on the Band's economy.

To do this you will have to do a historic survey of the Band's land and resource use. This means comparing the lost land with other holdings, finding out what it was used for, and what happened after it was gone. Try to discover what land was worth elsewhere in the same region, at the time of the loss. Look for features that made the lost land especially valuable, such as improvements (buildings, fences, clearing, breaking), resources, or a good location. If you think that the government managed the land badly, you should try to find out what were the usual good management practices of the time, and what benefits the Band would normally have earned from proper administration of the land or resources.

Much of this work would have to be done by persons with special technical knowledge, such as lawyers, economists, or resource specialists. However, it is your responsibility to find the historical evidence they need to work with. You will look at DIAND's files on Band lands and economic activities (farming, fencing, stockraising, minerals, timber and so on); general reports on conditions on the reserve, written by agents, missionaries, traders, and others; Band and government financial records; and local records, such as newspapers and county or municipal financial documents.

3. Band Trust Funds

A "Band Trust Fund" is money belonging to a Band as a group, and is held or used for their benefit by the federal government. Most of this money is earned by the sale or lease of Band reserve lands or on-reserve resources. Under the present Indian Act, these funds may be spent only in specified ways. Until this decade, Band Council powers of control over them were in practice very limited. The money is banked in the federal treasury, where it earns a rate of interest similar to that paid on "public moneys".

Since the first trust funds were set up in the mid-19th century, most of the available information on Band funds has been set out in a series of "Trust Fund Ledgers", with associated cheque and receipt (or "journal") registers. These give detailed lists of all spending from and income to each Band's account. A sample statement from the ledgers is given on page 114. Separate ledger systems are kept for moneys feeding into the Trust Funds, including land sale, lease, mineral and timber accounts. Correspondence concerning the trust funds is scattered widely throughout the Indian historical records.

Thus, a good basic research project on a Band trust fund concentrates on:

- Band Trust Fund statements: accounts, receipts and other specific financial records laid out in the Trust Fund Ledgers and related documents.

- the provisions of any legal documents governing the use of trust fund moneys, including Indian Act provisions on Band moneys; the terms of land or resource sales or leases that make up the Funds' income; and the terms of any Treaty that may govern federal financial obligations (for example, obligations to pay for specific goods or social services).

- Background: documents and reports describing in general terms how the Band's moneys have been handled over the years, and why they were used in that particular way.

You may then wish to research more general questions, such as Indian Affairs' investment policy; rates of interest paid on the funds; the handling of cash distributions out of the funds; and the definition of "capital" and "revenue" expenditures under the Indian Act.

4. Taxation

There is as yet no study of the history of Canadian Indian tax status. There is, however, a great deal of published legal material that should be used in any historical project. Records scattered throughout the archival sources cover 120 years of specific cases and claims.

The field of Indian taxation breaks down into four interrelated issues:

- Indian claims to exemption from taxes generally (including claims based on aboriginal rights, Treaties or other formal agreements).

- Personal tax status of individual Indian people, both on and off reserves (including income tax, poll tax and customs duties on personal goods).

- Taxation of Indian lands and resources, including property taxes, various municipal levies, resource taxes and tariffs, and royalties from on-reserve minerals, oil, and gas.

- Taxation of businesses, corporations and organizations owned, run, and/or staffed by Indians, located on or off reserves.

5. Government Finances

Information on how federal government budgeting and finance policy affects Indian people can be found in the financial records of the Department of Indian Affairs. Researchers working on this subject should also examine the general "social services" policies of the federal government.

For example, you might study the growth of the Indian Affairs budget over time, and how it was divided up among the various parts of the Department. Where did the early Indian Affairs administrations get their money, and how was it used? In 1876, for example, how much was spent on non-optional costs such as maintenance of Indian schools or Treaty obligations, as compared to spending on social services and Indian economic development generally, or to spending on DIA staff and administration? How did these proportions change after important historic turning points -- in, say, the years 1884-86, 1897, 1918-20, 1945, or 1968-71?

You may also want to compare Indian Affairs budgets with those of other government departments, or to the "aboriginal affairs" spending of foreign nations. You could compare government spending on services to

Indians with those provided to non-Indians. Finally, you could study the use of public moneys versus Band Trust Funds on similar projects, such as reserve land improvements and economic development.

SOURCES OF INFORMATION

The short forms used for sources are:

DIAND	Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, Indian-Inuit Affairs Program: current Central Registry files (in Ottawa, unless otherwise noted).
PAC	Public Archives of Canada (Ottawa).
RG-10	Historic records of the Department of Indian Affairs (in PAC, Record Group 10).

General Economic History: Sources

Researchers should look at the same sources as those for a general community history, including records on reserve lands and reserve land leasing and allotment; the fur trade and hunting, fishing and trapping; and implementation of Treaty promises.

As for most topics, pre-Confederation research requires that researchers use a wide range of archival material (generally unindexed) as well as descriptions and statistics from ethnological writings on traditional life. See especially Murdock's *Ethnographic Bibliography*; the records of the fur trade (as described on pages 270 - 273 of this handbook); records of the missions; and the published *Journals* and related public records of the colonial legislatures (for example, the *Journals of the Legislative Assemblies* of Canada, Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, etc.).

General economic history (continued)

For post-Confederation work, the Annual Reports of the Department of Indian Affairs from 1868 onward, and of the Royal Canadian Mounted Police in areas where these were on active duty (1874-1918) are especially recommended for background information. The DIA Annual Reports for 1875 to the present also include tabulations of a variety of economic statistics (such as reserve land use and earnings from farm produce and wildlife) but these should be used with caution. In the numbered Treaty areas of central and northern Canada, detail on local economic conditions is often found in the reports of the Treaty paymasters, located in the "payment of annuity" files, dated c. 1897 to the present (that is, PAC, RG-10 volumes 3969-3980 file 156710-1 to -36, restricted reels C-10198-10201; later files are in the "28-3" series in RG-10 volumes 6878-6923 and in files of the same series, dated 1950 to the present, held by DIAND).

There was apparently no full general review of Canadian Indian economic conditions before World War II. The Hawthorn Report (A Survey of the Contemporary Indians of Canada, 2 vols., Ottawa: Indian Affairs Branch, 1966-67) reviewed Indian economic conditions across Canada in the late 1960s. Since then, only a few major surveys on current conditions have been released to the public. See Christine D. Oliver, A Strategy for the Socio-Economic Development of Indian People. National Report... (Ottawa: National Indian Brotherhood, August 1977); the so-called "Beaver Report", To Have What is One's Own. Report From the President (Ottawa: National Indian Socio-Economic Development Committee, 1979); and the statistical roundup, Indian Conditions: A Survey (Ottawa: DIAND, 1980). Users should note that all these documents are still controversial; the statistical methods used in Indian Conditons, in particular, have been subject to criticism. Sources for many of the economic statistics used may be found in DIAND's Program Reference Centre, Ottawa. In this connection see also the general summaries of Band economic status in the early 1970s in Economic Classification, Indian Bands of Canada (Ottawa: DIAND, Indian-Eskimo Economic Development Branch, 1973).

General economic history (continued)

A book that touches incidentally on most of the economic issues distinctive to Indian reserve communities is Paul Williams' manual for Band Councils, *Indian Economic Development Handbook* (Toronto: Union of Ontario Indians, 1976).

Indian Affairs files on *Indian farming* (including those on general policy, farm loans, equipment, livestock, seed, fencing, water, etc.) are available for many areas, dating from the 1900s or 1910s, and earlier in some cases. Where none exist, or where "routine" files have been destroyed, the Agency Records (agent's letterbooks, diaries, correspondence, and Agency Ration Books) often fill the gap. (INDEX: see PAC's finding aids to RG-10 generally, especially the Red and Black Series and the new accessions, and the Agency Records lists). A partial list of background readings (which, however, concentrates on aboriginal farming) is in E.E. Edwards and W.D. Rasmussen's *A Bibliography on the Agriculture of the American Indians* (U.S. Department of Agriculture Miscellaneous Publications No. 447, Washington: DOA, 1942).

There are similar special file series on *Indian labour, business and welfare payments*, dating in most cases from the 1930s onward, and supplemented by the Agency records. These are found in DIAND (Ottawa, Regional and District offices) and in the "new accessions" of RG-10, especially accessions 72/605, 72/606 and 72/607. Some recent material is also filed in PAC, RG-50 (accession P74-5/73, UIC support of trappers) and PAC, RG-118 (Manpower and Immigration special native employment projects, 1958-1974). For background reading, see the discussion of labour history in Rolf Knight's *Indians At Work: An Informal History of Native Indian Labour in British Columbia 1858-1930* (Vancouver: New Star Books, 1978). This uses the Indian Affairs Annual Reports (although unfortunately not the related archival documents) as one of its main sources of information.

General economic history (continued)

The three most useful lists of secondary material (books and reports) on economic development are: Thomas S. Abler and S.M. Weaver's *A Canadian Indian Bibliography 1960-1970* (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1974); Marjorie P. Snodgrass' *Economic Development of American Indians and Eskimos, 1930 through 1967: A Bibliography* (Washington, DC: U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Indian Affairs, 1967) on American topics; and the card catalogue of the Department of Indian Affairs' Program Reference Centre (Ottawa), which indexes the Department's reference collection of unpublished recent economic works, mainly the reports of private consultants and government officials on Band economic development, c.1950 to present. A partial catalogue (*Bibliography. Economic Development. Consultant Reports*, Ottawa: DIAND, c.1976) now outdated, is also available. Items in this collections are sometimes restricted unless the Band authorizes access. Further regional and Band economic surveys are listed in the general bibliographies on pages 197 to 210 of this handbook.

Valuation of Reserve Lands: Sources

Aside from technical information on evaluation methods (which is outside the scope of this book) the sources available are the same as those listed above. Historical evidence on past land and resource values in the neighbourhood of reserves, as used in claims, is notoriously hard to collect. Researchers must often resort to lengthy study of local newspapers, land titles records, Crown Lands administration records, and any other sources they can find that yield information on land prices and land use at the time the claim arose.

Trust Fund Records: Sources

The Trust Fund Statements (that is, the ledgers that record in detail all credits and expenditures for all Band Funds during a given year) are available for the years 1849 to 1949 on microfiche in the PAC, Federal

[Name of Band] [Account No.] 601

DATE ①	NO. OF CHEQUE ②	INTEREST	Journal Folio ③	Dr. ④ [Debit]	Cr. ⑤ [Credit]	Dr. or Cr. ⑥	BALANCE ⑦
1910 Apr. 1		By Balance from Ledger 36 ⑧			275.40	[These columns usually left blank]	
30		By Receiver General-D. Sevigny. Int. on land pay't. ⑨	41		29.05		
Aug. 31		By Receiver General-G. Seaborn. Int. on land pay't.	83		23.05		
Oct. 29		Government a/c - Interest 1910-11 ⑩			255.41		
Nov. 17	3949	To A. Allenford - Drugs ⑪		62.47			
30		By Receiver-General-J. DePencier. Int. on land pay't.	124		174.		
		By Receiver-General-H. Pearson. Int. on land pay't.	128		1653.11		
Dec. 6	4325	To Shenstone Milling Co. Flour ⑪		21.44			
31		By Receiver-General - J. Moore. Int. on land pay't.	139		8.35		
		By Receiver-General - R. Berg. Int. on land pay't.	148		16.65		
1911 Jany. 31		By Receiver-General-Agent A. Douglas-Refund on a/c seed grain ⑫	149		71.39		
	4886	To Agt. A. Douglas (In trust) - Freighting bacon ⑬		.60			
	4891	Arsove & Co. Implements ⑪		106.			
	4902	To A. Douglas (in trust) - Freighting wire ⑬		15.			
Feb. 4	5595	To M. Gibson - Refund overpay't on land ⑭		10.79			
13	5774	Joseph Whitesky Horse & Wagon ⑪		190.			
17	5831	A. Charles Set of harness		45.			
	2	Lash's Sale Stables Work horse		150.			
	3	The Massey Harris Co. 2 sleighs		65.			
23	5900	To A. Douglas (in trust)-Clearing & marking reserve boundary ⑬		323.81			
		To Government a/c-transfer to Vote a/c - Bacon ⑮	150	48.			
24	5918	J.H. Howe M.D. - Medical Attendance		15.			
28		By Receiver-General - I. Anderson. Int. on land pay't.	157		629.31		
	5920	To Indian Land Management Fund-Z on land pay'ts. ⑯		252.36			
		[Total Debits] ⑰		[1305.47]			
		To Balance to Ledger 38 ⑱		1830.25			
				3135.72	3135.72		

AN INDIAN TRUST FUND STATEMENT

A fictitious Band Trust Fund statement, similar to statements found in the Indian Affairs "Trust Fund Ledgers" for the fiscal year 1910-1911 (Public Archives of Canada, RG-10 volume 5942). Only the "Interest" page for this year is shown. A separate "Capital" page would show moneys handled under special provisions of the Indian Act (in this case, sections 89 and 90 of the Indian Act of 1906). Note that most of the income of this Fund was from the sale of surrendered Indian reserve land, and that some of the expenditures may have been provided for in the surrender agreement.

TRUST FUND STATEMENT: NOTES

Columns

1. Date of entry: that is, date of cheque, journal voucher or other transfer.

2. Registration number of cheque. May be used to trace cancelled cheques in cases where copies still exist.

3. Number of "journal folio", which records receipt of money paid into the account. May be used to trace the original receipt, if copies still exist.

4. "Debits" column, showing payments out of the account.

5. "Credits" column, showing payments into the account.

6. Net Debit/Credit column, showing net effect of each entry separately (seldom actually used by DIA accountants).

7. Balance column, occasionally used to calculate current balances part-way through the fiscal year.

Types of Entry

8. Balance Forward. Amount in account at end of previous year (1909-1910). "Ledger 36" has been renumbered, and can be found as volume 5941 of RG-10 in the Public Archives of Canada. The book illustrated here is Ledger 37.

9. Land sales payments. Amounts paid in by a buyer of reserve land surrendered by the Band. This would be the interest portion of a deferred instalment of the total price. It passed through the hands of the Receiver-General of Canada into the account. If the buyer had paid any part of his capital debt, it would appear in the "Capital" part of the statement, not shown here.

10. Interest. Yearly "bank interest" earned on the account, paid by the Federal government at fixed rates.

11. Miscellaneous payments, made on goods or services delivered to Band members. Some may have been made under the terms of a land surrender; others would have been at the discretion of the Indian Agent. At this early date, the Band Council may or may not have been asked to approve the expenditure.

12. Repayment of Band money, used by Band farmers to buy seed grain. The repayment passed from the farmer, to the Indian Agent, to the Receiver-General, to the Band account.

13. Payments out of the account for services performed for the Band, by either Band members or outsiders. The money passed through the hands of the Indian Agent.

14. Repayment of excess land land sales money returned to the payor, a buyer of surrendered reserve land, after an overpayment.

15. Repayment out of Band moneys to the Federal purse (that is, to Parliamentary appropriations via a Government holding account) for goods rendered to the Band. These goods were apparently not considered to be Federal obligations under a Treaty or surrender, and so were charged to the Trust Fund.

16. Indian Land Management Fund levy (ten per cent on all land sales payments). Part or all of this sum may have been returned to the account in 1913-1914.

17. (This figure was normally not included in Trust Fund statements, but has been inserted here for reference).

18. Balance Forward. Amount in the account at end of the fiscal year 1910-11 (as of 28 February 1911). It is shown as a debit and transferred to the next year's ledger (1911-12). "Ledger 38" is now volume 5943 in RG-10 at the Public Archives of Canada.

Archives Division. (INDEX: organized by Band and year; see archivists for information on special authorization needed for access). Annual summaries of these statements (or complete statements in some years) were published in the Annual Reports of the Department of Indian Affairs in the years 1860-1938. Statements after 1949 are available, with permission of the Band only, from the Statutory Requirements Division of the Indian-Inuit Affairs Program, DIAND. Pre-Confederation records relating to Indian moneys - mainly Treaty annuity records and accounts of land sales - are found scattered throughout the published records of the colonial governments (such as the Journals of the Legislative Assemblies for Upper Canada, Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, etc.).

Related early financial statements and accounts, including some pre-Confederation trust fund records, are scattered throughout early volumes of RG-10 in the PAC (see especially RG-10 volumes 9190 and 9214-9220 and Accession 76-7/124 Box 2, file 16) and in Record Group 19 (Department of Finance, volumes 2479-2484 and volume 4448 file 13). Individual savings account records relate to personal bank accounts kept by Indian Affairs on an Indian person's behalf. These may be found interfiled with Band Trust Fund Statements; other essential information is in RG-10, uncatalogued Accession 74-5/54; RG-10 volumes 8129-8156 and 6814; and DIAND file 1/28-5.

The Trust Fund Journals, receipt registers, cheque records, and other materials closely tied into the Trust Fund Ledgers are in PAC, RG-10 volumes 9190-9123, and in RG-10, uncatalogued accession 74-5/54. A partial collection of interest distribution paylists, organized by Band, is available on microfiche in the Program Reference Centre of the Indian-Inuit Affairs Program, DIAND (Ottawa). Related policy and Band-by-Band files on interest distributions, dated 1865-1958, are in PAC, RG-10 volumes 7944-7957, 8097-8099 and 8114-8129. Land sales records and account books, and land and resource lease books (all of which feed into the Trust Funds) are described in earlier sections of this book on "Reserve Lands" and "Surrenders".

Trust Funds (continued)

General background material on trust funds is scattered throughout RG-10 and related pre-Confederation records, mainly those on Indian land surrenders and sales. (See sources listed in the section of this handbook relating to surrenders.) Two useful sets of policy records are: (a) the Indian Affairs Trust Fund policy files, especially those in the series 1/28-1 through 1/28-3 (in PAC, RG-10 volumes 8107 to 8114; later file volumes are in DIAND); and (b) reference files in DIAND's Treaties and Historical Research Centre (Ottawa) on the Indian Land Management Fund, including early documents on the creation of the first trust funds. Researchers must be prepared to do long and detailed research in a wide variety of records to reconstruct the handling of any given fund or group of funds.

Taxation: Sources

Files on Indian tax status are scattered throughout the Red and Black Series of RG-10 in the PAC. (INDEXES: see computerized subject indexes to RG-10, and indexes in RG-10, accession 76-7/124 folders 6-8.) The main post-1900 policy files are in RG-10 volumes 6821-22, 7978 and 8870, and in DIAND's current files 1/18-21 and 1/18-21-1. The Department of National Revenue also maintains files on Indians and taxation, but it is not known whether these are open to outside researchers. A brief review of policy material in the Public Archives is found in Wayne Daugherty's "Discussion report on Indian taxation" (unpublished paper, Treaties and Historical Research Centre, DIAND, Ottawa, 30 June 1978).

The published material on Indians and taxation relates mainly to cases currently before the Federal and Supreme Courts of Canada, including: National Indian Brotherhood v. Minister of National Revenue (1978), R. v. National Indian Brotherhood (1978), Minister of National Revenue v. Iroquois of Caughnawaga (1977), Snow v. R. (1978), R. v. Greyeyes, and Nowegijick v. R. (1979-82). Reports of decisions to date are found in the Canadian Native Law Reporter for 1977 to the present. See also background material in the Library of the Assembly of First Nations (National Indian Brotherhood) in Ottawa. For discussions of the legal situation see Richard H. Bartlett, Indians and Taxation in Canada (Saskatoon: University of Saskatchewan Native Law Centre, 1980), Jay Vincent White, Taxing Those They Found There: An Examination of the Tax Exempt Status of the American Indian (Albuquerque: University of New Mexico, 1972), and D.B. Fields and W.T. Stanbury, The Economic Impact of the Public Sector upon the Indians of British Columbia: An Examination of the Incidence of Taxation and Expenditure of Three Levels of Government... (Vancouver: University of B.C. Press, 1970).

5. Government Finances: Sources

Department of Indian Affairs financial policy files of historical interest include those in the series coded as 16 (DIAND, current files 1/16-1 to 1/16-16) and PAC, RG-10 volumes 8835-8846; 7991-7994; 6943-6949; 6813 file 481-1-27; and 3232 file 600071). These cover the period from 1924 to the present. A large quantity of records on loans, grants, subsidies, Indian economic development generally, and financing of social services, are scattered throughout the subject files listed in the general research section, above. A description of DIA's routine financial procedures at the turn of the century (1903) may be found in PAC, RG-33/82, volume 1, exhibit 15.

For newcomers to research on the federal financial system, the following is an outline of the most important records on federal spending; that is, the estimates, accounts, annual departmental reports, and Auditor-General's reports. Most are available as printed government documents. (a) Public Accounts: these describe the federal government's actual spending on each Department each year, and appear between October and February of the year after the fiscal year to which they relate. They may be extremely detailed (for example, they may list individual livestock or Treaty supplies bought for each Band) or may be very brief, depending on the period. Available for 1867 to the present. (SOURCE: published in the yearly government report known as: Canada, Parliament, Sessional Papers, under the subheadings "Public Accounts" or "Finance".) Between 1885-6 and 1940, the Public Accounts become less detailed while the Auditor General's reports become more so; after 1961 the trend was reversed. (b) Auditor-General's Report: the Auditor-General reviews spending in all departments each year, and may comment on or criticize particular expenses in detail. It is often an excellent source of extra information on Indian Affairs financial practices, especially in the years 1885-6 to 1940. Available for the years 1878/9 to 1942/3 and 1961 to the present. (SOURCE: Canada, Parliament, Sessional Papers, indexed under "Auditor-General" or "Finance" in 1878/9 to 1942/3; combined with "Public Accounts" in 1943-1961; independent again from 1961 to present). (c) The Estimates: detailed advance statements of planned expenditures, released at the beginning of a fiscal year. Can be compared with actual expenses, listed in the "Public Accounts" at the year's end. (SOURCE: published as a separate Government document, called the "Estimates" or the "Blue Books", and indexed under "Parliament". See the set of unpublished "working" estimates for the Indian Affairs Branch, 1957-61, with valuable annotations, in the Government Documents Section of the DIAND library). (d) Department of Indian Affairs Annual Reports: for most years since 1867, and especially between 1867 and 1938, these give important information on departmental spending. (e) Department of Finance Annual Reports: these give general information on government spending that helps to explain the figures quoted in the Public Accounts and Auditor General's reports. (SOURCES: both DIA and Finance reports are in: Canada, Parliament, Sessional Papers, under the appropriate departmental name).

These documents may be hard to follow without special background information. Three useful reference works on the Canadian government's financial system, two on historic and one on current practices, are: the "Introduction" to RG-19 (Department of Finance) -- Inventory (unpublished manuscript, Public Archives of Canada, Federal Archives Division, Ottawa, no date), on pre- and post-Confederation systems; A.E. Brick's Financing Canadian Government (Chicago: Public Administration Service, 1949), on the period 1867-1945; and J.C. Strick, Canadian Public Finance (Toronto: Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1973) on current practices.

HUNTING, FISHING AND TRAPPING

Indian hunting, fishing and trapping rights -- that is, legal rights -- have been heavily researched by some groups in recent years. Others have documented current or recent use of territory for hunting, fishing and trapping, by doing what are called "land use and occupancy studies". Still others have researched changes in Indian use of wildlife over time, both across Canada, and for individual communities.

All three types of project can use archival records, but many workers in this field are unfamiliar with the skills needed to find and interpret them. I will suggest ways to use these records by outlining a short project on the archival history of hunting, fishing and trapping in a particular Indian group. I will also show what other types of research and special technical advice may be needed. Bear in mind that most work of this kind is specialized and complex, so that you are likely to need to consult people experienced in the study of wildlife and land use.

Mapping the area your study will cover

Your community uses a certain area for hunting, fishing or trapping, or did so in the past. Make or buy a large map of the area for reference. It should show landmarks such as roads, railways, rivers, lakes, swamps, heights of land, and parks. Draw on it anything you already know about the area you are researching. This map can be redrawn as you learn more about your subject.

Mark on the map any Indian reserve lands or settlements, registered traplines, permanent trapping blocks, or fisheries. If more than one group of people (Indians or others) is using the area, find out who they are, where they are located, and what settlements they have in the area. (This includes trading posts, villages, farms, and so on.) You can later use this map as a reference from which to work backward through the archives or the memories of living persons.

Finally, get copies from the provincial or territorial government of any official maps showing current or past trapping areas, traplines, or fishing license areas.

Organizing Your Work

Decide whether you want to consult archival documents first, or whether you or your co-workers will begin with work "in the field" -- that is, the study of past and present trapping, hunting and fishing activities by observing and interviewing hunters and trappers in person.

There are advantages to doing it either way. People who do fieldwork and then visit the archives grasp the meaning of the records more easily. They know what to look for, and see what the archives do not tell them. On the other hand, looking at archives first may give them ideas for questions to use out in the field.

Doing Field Work and Getting Professional Help

Field researchers may visit hunters, fishermen and trappers to document how they are using wildlife today. They may also interview older people about hunting and trapping in the past, and how it differs from practices today. They may study wildlife populations and the environment they live in.

Most studies of this kind are planned or managed by people with special expertise. They will be able to tell you (the archival researcher) what sort of historical information helps them in their work.

At this point, you will probably need expert advice even if you are not doing field work. For example, you may need to know more about the workings of local game laws, or the registered trapline system, or the fisheries licensing system. For this, you could consult local trappers' or fishermen's associations, or provincial wildlife officers. You may need to know more about wildlife populations and how they are used for food and fur. Talk to the hunters and trappers themselves, to wildlife biologists, or to the local game wardens.

If you decide that a "land use and occupancy study" is needed, you could consult the land use specialists at native organizations that have experience with this sort of work, such as COPE (Committee for Original Peoples' Entitlement) in Inuvik and Ottawa, the Inuit Tapirisat of Canada in Ottawa, or the Dene Nation in Yellowknife. You may need help with library research in such matters as the history of the fur trade. For this, talk to some of the many scholars who are now working on this subject. Finally, for advice on Indian legal rights to hunt, fish and trap, you could consult with the Native Law Centre in Saskatoon, or a lawyer who is familiar with the subject.

Doing Archival Research

You could use records such as the following (in order roughly from the oldest to the most recent):

Fur trade records. These give information that can be used to reconstruct Indian hunting practises and use of wildlife in much of Canada from the 17th century to the present.

Ethnological records. These are records of traditional Indian ways of life, collected by anthropologists, ethnologists, and historians. They often describe traditional hunting, fishing, and trapping practises.

Mission records. Some of these describe hunting practises, wildlife, and famines.

Indian Affairs and other government files and reports. Files held by the various departments and programs (including Indian Affairs, Northern Affairs, Parks Canada, the R.C.M.P., the Canadian Wildlife Service, and the Department of Fisheries) often contain general descriptions of wildlife use and legal rights issues. Some date back to the mid-19th century.

Indian Affairs wildlife files. These describe Indian use of wildlife since the mid-19th century, especially (but not exclusively) in relation to legal rights. Records since about 1940 have been quite detailed, and include statistics for some areas. Indian Affairs Regional and District Office files contain a wide variety of local wildlife information.

Provincial wildlife records. Provincial governments usually keep detailed records on all aspects of wildlife, including Indian activities, especially for the period after 1900.

Doing Legal Research

You may need to do special research on Indian legal rights to wildlife, past and present. Look for the following: copies of any Treaty that affects your community, if it mentions hunting rights; copies of provincial or territorial game laws and regulations now in force; and earlier game laws in force for the period your study deals with. If you are studying the time before 1951, you will also need the Indian Act's provisions on hunting, application of provincial laws to Indians, and Band bylaws. Finally, look at summaries of the law on Indian hunting, fishing and trapping. Check to see if there have been recent court cases affecting your area.

SOURCES OF INFORMATION

The short forms used for sources are:

DIAND	Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, Indian and Inuit Affairs Program: current Central Registry files (in Ottawa, unless otherwise noted).
PAC	Public Archives of Canada (Ottawa).
RG-10	Historic records of the Department of Indian Affairs (in PAC, Record Group 10).

Public Archives of Canada

Manuscript Group 19: Various records relating to Indians and the fur trade generally, mainly for the period before Confederation. These include the private papers of fur traders and the business papers of various companies. (INDEX: see inventory to MG-19 and ask archivists for advice).

Manuscript Group 20: Fur trade records of the Hudson's Bay Company from the 17th century to 1870. The largest single Canadian collection on the fur trade and native people. Detailed information on trade, trade relations, hunting practices, and hunting territories across Canada. The amount of detail varies from post to post. MG-20 includes some records of related bodies, such as the North West Company. (INDEX: by region and name of post; see inventory to MG-20 and pages 270 - 273 of this handbook).

RG-10 (Department of Indian Affairs records): (a) General descriptive material on Indian hunting practices and use of wildlife, scattered throughout RG-10. See especially the regular yearly or quarterly descriptive reports of Indian Agents, Superintendents and Inspectors, and the Agency records. (INDEX: the "green inventory" and related finding aids for RG-10 volumes 1-1854, not subject-indexed; the Computerized Subject Indexes for the Red Series, Black Series and New Accessions; and special finding aid #40 for Agency records. See especially under the headings "Reports", "Annuity Payments", "Relief" and the names of specific Bands or Agencies.) (b) Specific policy and regional files on wildlife use and game laws. (INDEXES: same as above. See the headings "Game Laws" (the main series) and "Hunting", "Trapping", "Fur", "Registered Traplines", "Wildlife", "Fishing", "Migratory Birds", and "Relief". A partial list of these files is given in the McCardle bibliography, below.)

RG-18 Royal Canadian Mounted Police records, for those places and periods at which the RCMP acted as local game wardens, contain much detail on wildlife use and enforcement of game laws against Indians. They should be read in conjunction with the published regional "division" or "patrol" reports in the RNWMP/RCMP Annual Reports for 1874 to 1918 (Canada, Parliament, Sessional Papers). (INDEX: see the PAC "green inventory" for RG-18, and related file lists, in the PAC's Federal Archives Division. Indexed by region, division and detachment.)

Other Record Groups: For recent files (mainly 1890s to present) on wildlife generally, Indian use of it, and Indian rights in parks and sanctuaries, see the historic records of DIAND (RG-22) on wildlife and native rights since 1930; of Parks Canada (RG-84) on particular Parks and Indian access to them; of the Northern Affairs Program (RG-85) on wildlife and native people in the North; of Fisheries (RG-23) on Indian fishing; and of the Mackenzie Valley Pipeline Enquiry (RG-126) on land use and occupancy in the NWT. (INDEX: various inventories and file lists; see archivists for further advice).

National Map Collection: Various recent maps relating to native wildlife use, including those submitted to the Mackenzie Valley Pipeline Commission (RG-126M) and the Lysyk or Yukon Pipeline Commission (RG-22M).

DIAND (Ottawa)

Policy files on all aspects of Indian hunting, fishing, and trapping in the series 1/20-1 to 1/20-16, mainly for the period 1930 to the present. Also corresponding file series for each province and district separately. (INDEX: by subject. See Treaties and Historical Research Centre.)

Local Archives

DIAND (Regional and District Offices: Policy and administration files on all aspects of local Indian hunting, etc. in the file series 20-1 to 20-16. (INDEX: see the local office.)

Park archives: Most Federal and Provincial parks have their own current archives, some of them dating back to the establishment of the park. These usually include information on native use of local wildlife. (INDEX: consult the park warden for information).

Hudson's Bay Company Archives: See remarks on page 343 of this handbook.

Church records: For descriptive material, see note on religious records on pages 227-229 and 357 of this handbook.

Published Sources

Reading Lists: General ethnological material on Amerindian hunters and trappers is listed in George Peter Murdock's Ethnographic Bibliography of North America (4th edition, New Haven: Human Relations Area Files Press, 1975). Especially abundant research on the subject has been done in the Canadian North, the James Bay area of Quebec, and Northern Ontario: for a fuller list of references see June Helm's Handbook of North American Indians. Volume 6: Subarctic, Bruce Trigger's Handbook of North American Indians. Volume 15: Northeast (Washington: Smithsonian Institution, 1981 and 1978), M.A. Tremblay's "Les études amérindiennes au Quebec, 1960-1981 ..." Culture (1982) vol. 2(1): 83-106; and John Murdoch's Bibliography of Algonquian Land Tenure (Bibliography No. 3, Rupert House, Que.: Cree Way Project, 1977). For a rough list of published material, court decisions and DIAND files on Indian hunting, fishing and trapping claims, see Bennett McCardle's Indian Hunting, Fishing and Trapping Claims Research: Bibliographies (Ottawa: Indian Association of Alberta, 1978), available from the Native Law Centre (Saskatoon) and the Treaties and Historical Research Centre (Ottawa).

Government Documents: (a) The Annual Reports of the Department of Indian Affairs and of the Royal Canadian Mounted Police (in Canada, Parliament, Sessional Papers) give details about Indian wildlife use, mainly for the period 1870-1920. (b) The Annual Reports of the provincial Fish and Wildlife Departments (or of the provincial "Game Guardians") are available for most provinces from at least 1900 on. Some contain detailed descriptions and statistics on wildlife and the fur trade. (Source: the Sessional Papers of the provincial legislature in question).

Legal Records: Court decisions on native hunting, fishing, and trapping are listed by subject in the McCardle bibliography (above) and in the Canadian Native Law Reporter (1978) volume 1(2) pages 30-46. The Reporter also regularly publishes reports of recent decisions. For summaries of the law on the subject, see: D.E. Sanders, "Indian Hunting and Fishing Rights", Saskatchewan Law Review (1973-74) 38: 45-62, David Knoll, "Treaty and aboriginal hunting and fishing rights", Canadian Native Law Reporter (1979) volume 1: 1-29; R.M. Alison, "Native rights and wildlife: an historical perspective", Chitty's Law Journal (1977) vol. 25:235; P. Cumming and K. Aalto, "Inuit Hunting Rights in the Northwest Territories", Saskatchewan Law Review (1974) vol. 38(2): 252-323, including the Prairie Provinces and what is now the NWT/Yukon; and Kent McNeil, Indian Hunting, Trapping and Fishing Rights in the Prairie Provinces (Saskatoon: Native Law Centre, forthcoming 1983). A good legal reference collection on the subject is in the Native Law Centre at the University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon.

Similar materials relating to U.S. Indian rights are listed in D.R. McDonald's "Native American fishing/hunting rights: an annotated bibliography", Indian Historian (1978) volume 11 (4) pages 57-62.

Background Reading: Consult the items listed in the McCardle bibliography (above). For more recent works see the works listed under "Fur Trade Research" on pages 270 - 272 of this handbook, as well as the following: Morris Zaslow's The Opening of the Canadian North 1870-1914 (Toronto: McClelland and Stewart, 1971) on the fur trade and native people after 1870; Hugh Brody, Maps and Dreams: Indians and the British Columbia Frontier (Vancouver: Douglas & McIntyre, 1981) on land use, hunting and trapping in northeastern British Columbia; the Inuit Land Use and Occupancy Project: A Report (3 volumes; Ottawa; Milton Freeman Research Ltd./Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, 1976); and Our Footprints Are Everywhere: Inuit Land Use and Occupancy in Labrador, by Carol Brice Bennett (Nain, Nfld: Labrador Inuit Association, 1977).

INDIAN STATUS, MEMBERSHIP AND FAMILY HISTORY

This section describes research on the family history and legal rights of individual Indian people. Research on "Indian status" has to do with the rights of particular people or groups to legal status as Indians under the Indian Act.* "Membership" research is the same, although it often concentrates on a person's membership in a particular Band and the rights that go with it, such as land and Band moneys.

Your research on status or membership might aim to do one of the following things: to make up a "family tree"; to document a person's claim to Indian status (if the person is not now "registered" as an Indian, but may have a right to be registered); to find out the exact size of a Band at a given date; or to write the history of a "membership" issue.

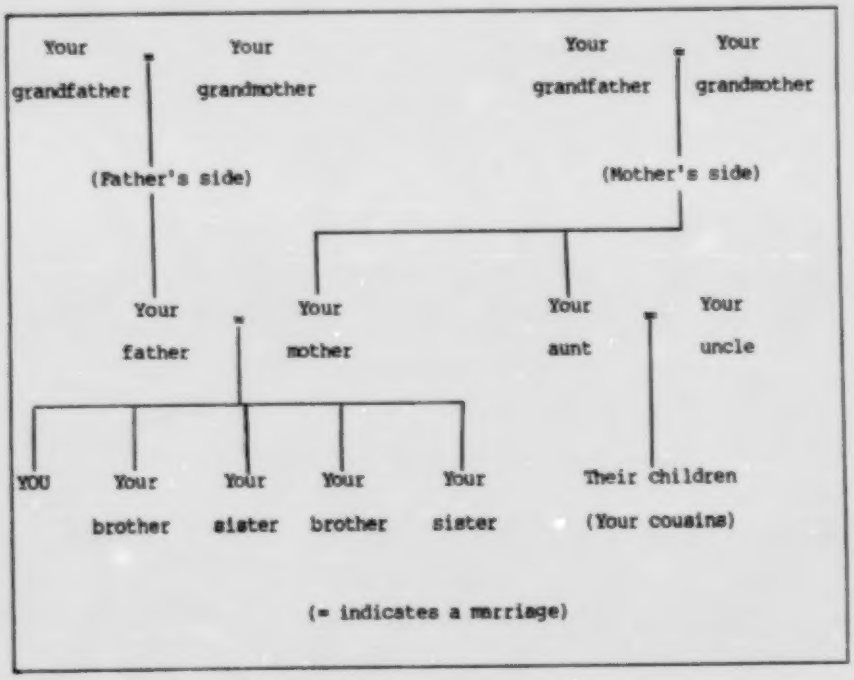
Family Trees (Genealogy)

A "family tree" is a list of all the people in a family, arranged to show how they are related to each other. Family trees are useful when you are writing a local history. They may also help to prove individual peoples' claim to Indian status.

---

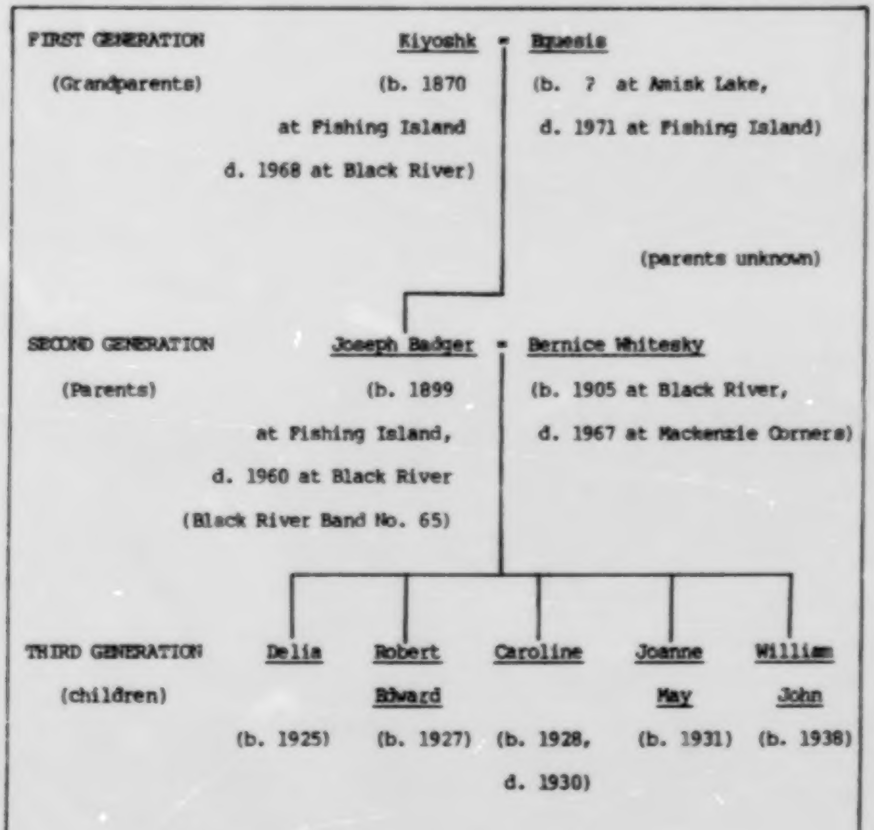
* Some researchers are also concerned with "Indian status" as a general issue, especially Indian status under the Constitution. This involves research on the history and definition of terms such as "status Indian", "Treaty Indian", "registered Indian", "Métis", and "non-Treaty Indian". These terms are discussed in more detail in the Glossary (Volume 2, Appendix 1 of this book).

To practice making family trees, do one for your own family. (You will find that this is not as easy as it sounds.) Write down the names of all your brothers and sisters. Arrange them in order of age, and put the names of your parents above them. Above that, write the names of their parents (your grandparents). Also list your aunts, uncles and cousins. Use lines to connect the persons related to each other. The finished tree may look like this:


Your grandfather
=
Your grandmother
Your grandfather
=
Your grandmother
(Father's side)
(Mother's side)
Your father
=
Your mother
Your aunt
=
Your uncle
YOU
Your brother
Your sister
Your brother
Your sister
Their children (Your cousins)
(= indicates a marriage)

In some Indian languages, there are special names for relatives that do not correspond exactly to the English terms. For example, some people have different names for their "older brothers" and "younger brothers", or for different kinds of cousins. Others use the same word to indicate their mothers and their aunts. You may thus be able to include special terms in your own language in your family tree.

Some claims research involves family trees or "genealogies". For example, a researcher for the Black River Band could have drawn this family tree to identify the people who had used the Band's Fishing Island camp since the year 1870:


FIRST GENERATION
(Grandparents)
Kiyoshk
(b. 1870
at Fishing Island
d. 1968 at Black River)
=
Equesis
(b. ? at Amisk Lake,
d. 1971 at Fishing Island)
(parents unknown)
SECOND GENERATION
(Parents)
Joseph Badger
(b. 1899
at Fishing Island,
d. 1960 at Black River
(Black River Band No. 65)
=
Bernice Whitesky
(b. 1905 at Black River,
d. 1967 at Mackenzie Corners)
THIRD GENERATION
(children)
Delia
(b. 1925)
Robert
Edward
(b. 1927)
Caroline
(b. 1928,
d. 1930)
Joanne
May
(b. 1931)
William
John
(b. 1938)

(b. stands for "born"; d. stands for "died")

This tree is a very simple one. It shows three generations of people, from the grandfather born at Fishing Island, to the children who are alive today. Their children in turn can be added to the tree, as can great-grandparents and cousins. Some people have been able to build up family trees showing five, eight, or a dozen generations. Others have managed to make trees that take in all the members of a Band. For long or complicated family trees, anthropologists have devised special symbols and abbreviations to help keep family information in order.

Researching Status Cases

You, as a researcher, may be asked to research a person's or a family's claim to be registered as an Indian. At the moment, such cases have to be presented to the Registrar of Indian Membership, or to a court, for a final decision. To document the case, you will need as many as possible of the following records:

- A family tree, showing all the person's known relatives, and their dates of birth and death. It should state whether anyone else in the family already has Indian status, since this could help in the investigation.

- Birth, marriage and other documents. Collect all available formal documents. "Birth registration" documents, if they exist, are kept in the province's Office of Vital Statistics. (Contact the provincial Registrar-General's office for its location.) Registrations are more valuable than "birth certificates", since they show the names of parents and other useful information. If there are no birth documents, a baptismal record can be used instead. If there is one, it will be at the church where the person was baptized -- or, if very old, at a central church archive or provincial archive. If marriages affect the case, find the person's own "marriage certificate", if there is one, and that of his or her parents. Because of the present requirements of the Indian Act, Indian Affairs may ask you to tell them whether the marriages are in legal form, or are marriages by custom or common-law.

Some people may not have any of these documents. You then have to prove the claim by reconstructing the facts. To do so, you will take the evidence of the person involved, and of friends and relatives, as to their claim to Indian status. This evidence may have to be put into sworn legal statements. If you plan to do this, consult the Registrar of Indian Membership to find out what kind of statement he or she needs.

- Indian Affairs Files. If the case is complicated, you may want to look in Indian Affairs records for any papers discussing the status of the person and his/her parents and relatives. Try Treaty paylists, Band lists, and government "membership" files. Some persons' claims to status go back many years, and there may be very old evidence concerning them on the files that you (and they) are not aware of. The Registrar's office in Ottawa will do at least some of this research themselves, whether you attempt it or not.

- Previous Status Applications. If the person has ever tried to get status before, find any letters or decisions that were written at the time. Compare these with what you find in your own research.

- The Indian Act. Look up the parts of the Indian Act that might affect the person's claim. In the present Act (R.S.C. 1970, chapter 1-6) these are mainly sections 5 to 17. You may also have to look at older and different versions of the Act.

You may decide not to give all the information you collect to the Registrar of Indian Membership, but it is wise to have it on hand. As the Indian Act stands now, the Registrar must ask for a great deal of family information before he or she can legally make a decision on a claim to status. You can deal with any demands for facts more easily if you are fully prepared. Furthermore, any changes to the Indian Act membership provisions in future may not cut down the amount of evidence needed to decide individual cases.

Band Populations

Researchers often need to find the size of a Band at a particular time. You may need population figures to calculate the amount of land due to a Band under a Treaty, to count the number of people qualified to vote on a land surrender, or to study the health history of the Band.

An example of a record used to count members of a Band is the Treaty paylist. These list all the members of each Band in the "numbered" Treaty and Robinson Treaty areas of Canada, and record the payment of Treaty annuity moneys to each person, every year. An example of a Treaty paylist, with notes explaining it, is on page 141. Other sources of population figures are described and evaluated at the end of this section.

Other "Membership" Projects

You might decide to write the history of a particular "membership" issue. For example, you might research the history of the status and rights of Indian women, the status and rights of the Métis, the government's "enfranchisement" policy, other examples of Indian loss of status, or policy and law relating to traditional marriage, family, and adoption customs.

Membership policy files in the Department of Indian Affairs records, as well as many files on specific cases, will be useful in these projects. Remember that some of these files may be closed because of access restrictions on personal information.

Membership Records

Restrictions

It is important to know that some documents on Indian status -- especially recent ones -- may not be open to you. Many contain personal information, about family relations and other matters, that the people concerned may not wish to be made public. Thus there may be limits on your rights of access to particular files or documents. These limits are described on pages 331-343 in volume 2 of this handbook.

This does not mean that all personal information is closed absolutely. Band researchers working on Indian claims may be able to use some closed records with the written permission of the Band Council. In other cases, records can be opened if the family or person involved gives its consent. If you are planning a project involving personal records, it is wise to get any letters of authorization you need before you begin your work.

It is not yet clear what records will be defined as "personal" records under the new Federal Privacy Act of 1982. It is safe to assume that the following will be closed unless you have special authorization:

- The Indian Register as a whole.

- All Department of Indian Affairs files in the "Membership" series, including those entitled "Membership", "Enfranchisement", "Commutation", and "Adoption".

- Some Department of Indian Affairs files in the series entitled "Payment of (Treaty) Annuities", "Band Management" and "Elections", which have personal information on them.

- Some Department of Indian Affairs files in the Public Archives of Canada (Record Group 10) on "Transfers of Membership", "Admission to and Discharge from Treaty", and "Membership" generally. (See archivists for details, since some of this material may eventually be re-classified.)

- Band Lists (the computerized "Alpha lists" issued each year, and other membership rosters derived from the Indian Register).

As noted in Appendix 2, a wide variety of other records may also be closed under the Privacy Act, or may be opened only to persons accredited as claims researchers.

Are Membership Records Always Right?

Experienced researchers sometimes find important mistakes and omissions in membership and population records, especially in the older ones. Whole groups of people may be left out of a census or paylist. Persons entitled to membership in a Band may not be properly enrolled, or may be enrolled late, or may be improperly dropped from lists. Names of individuals may be misspelled or badly translated. Even the adding up of population figures on a paylist or register may be wrong.

Guard against these problems by studying all your sources carefully. Check them against any related archival records. Never rely unquestioningly on any fact or figure that you cannot compare with at least one other reliable source.

What Membership and Population Records are Available?

The records can be divided up into three overlapping groups: general sources before Confederation; sources from the Treaty period (about 1810 to 1951); and recent sources (1951 to the present).

Sources Before Confederation (up to about 1867)

There is no single source before 1867 for lists of members of Indian bands, or populations of larger ethnic groups. Any records that you do find should be carefully evaluated and used with caution. Try the following:

- Fur trade records. Fur companies often made counts and censuses of Indian groups for trade purposes. These can be found scattered throughout the records of the Hudson's Bay Company and those of other fur traders. In the HBC records (found in Winnipeg and Ottawa) Indian censuses are most often found in the category of post records known as "account books", and sometimes in the "post journals", "correspondence", and other record categories.

- Anthropological and medical studies. In-depth studies of Indian peoples sometimes include estimates of population sizes and other "vital statistics". Look for these in general ethnohistories of particular peoples, in archaeological studies, and in works on the history of native health in North America.

- Military records. The French and British military made censuses of Indian groups for military purposes at various times and places between the mid-1700s and the 1840s.

- Indian Affairs records contain various censuses and lists relating to Treaty annuities, distribution of presents and land sales moneys, rationing, and allocation of land on reserves.

- Mission records. Most Christian missions in Indian communities have kept some form of baptism, marriage, and death registers. These vary in the amount of detail they give. If they can be found, they can be used to reconstruct a local population or a family tree.

- Formal censuses. A number of formal general censuses were done by the colonial and federal governments between 1825 and 1881. These include information on the population of some Indian and Métis settlements, mainly in eastern Canada and a few early western communities.

The Treaty Period (from about 1810 to about 1951)

As government control over Indian communities developed, the records on Indian population and band membership became more detailed. Laws were made to define who was and was not "Indian" in the eyes of the government. These laws are the source of most of today's "membership" problems. In the first half of the 20th century, the provincial laws relating to public registration of births, marriages and deaths began to be applied to Indians for the first time, adding an extra, though not always reliable, source of information.

- Band population figures and Band census lists. The federal government in the mid-19th century began to keep formal "Band lists" in order to control land use on reserves, to account for moneys paid out under Treaties and land sales agreements, and to record rations or relief. General Band censuses -- including those for Bands who did not have Treaty paylists, were made more often and in greater detail after Confederation.

- The Treaty paylists. These record the token yearly cash annuities paid to some Bands in the pre-Confederation Ontario Treaties, and in all Bands in the two Robinson Treaties and the eleven "numbered" Treaties (covering northern Ontario, the Prairie provinces, northeastern British Columbia and the western NWT). These lists vary in detail; most name the head of each family in the group, and show family size, recent births, and deaths. Some, especially those after 1900, give information on ages of family members, places of residence, and the family's travels. Researchers can follow changes in each family by comparing a series of yearly paylists with each other. Treaty Paylists are, for many Bands, the only detailed source of population figures before 1951. For some purposes they even serve as official membership records. A sample list is given on page 148.

- Censuses of Indian Bands were also taken by the Department of Indian Affairs from time to time, in some periods at a given date (for instance, 31 June of a particular year). These can simply be head-counts of total populations or more detailed statements broken down by age, sex, and religion. Most were done in an irregular or casual way, and tend to be unreliable. However, they may be the only sources of population figures for certain non-Treaty Bands between the 1850s and 1951.

- Other lists or counts can be found in (or reconstructed from) records such as Indian Affairs paylists recording the distribution of cash from Indian land sales (the "land payment" or "interest distribution" paylists); lists of claimants to "locations" in particular reserves; ration and welfare accounts; school attendance records; lists of voters on land surrenders; and the church and Federal census records already mentioned.

- Laws. The Indian Act and certain earlier laws lay down legal rules as to who is and is not an Indian. These have changed in important ways over the years, and tend to be quite complex, or even unclear. Always study them carefully when doing research, to make sure that you know what "the rules" are (or are supposed to be) for the case and time you are working on.

- Membership policy and case files. The Department of Indian Affairs keeps many records on the interpretation of status law and on particular people with status problems. These include letters, reports, legal opinions, and details of family history.

- Records on Métis rights and scrip. The Department of the Interior, between 1870 and 1930, kept records on the Métis people of the Prairie provinces. Most of these are in the Interior Department's "scrip" records, which document grants of scrip certificates worth certain amounts of land. These include a great deal of detailed family history about the Métis, and about Indian families related to them (including people who chose to move from Indian to Métis, or from Métis to Indian status).

Modern records (1951 to the present)

Besides those already described, the following are also helpful:

- The Indian Register. In 1951, the Department of Indian Affairs set up a central "Indian Register", as it was required to do by the new Indian Act of that year. The Register lists every person in Canada who is legally an Indian under the Indian Act. It gives all formally reported information about every person's birthdate, date of death, marriage, children's names and birthdates, transfers to other registration numbers or Bands, and any other status changes that have been formally registered with the Department.

- Band lists. Indian Affairs has issued full lists of Band members yearly since the middle 1960s, and intermittently back to 1951. These are in alphabetical order by surname, for each Band and each province, and show the birthdates and religion of each person. Some Band Councils now administer these lists themselves.

- Treaty paylists. Since the Register was set up in 1951, these have been used mainly to account for money. They are now much less detailed than the Indian Register.

- Policy and case files. The present files are much the same as those described for the period before 1951.

SOURCES OF INFORMATION

The short forms used for sources are:

DIAND:	Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, Indian and Inuit Affairs Program: current Central Registry files (in Ottawa, unless otherwise noted).
PAC:	Public Archives of Canada (Ottawa).
RG-10:	Historic records of the Department of Indian Affairs (in PAC, Record Group 10).

Some of the following records are restricted, according to the rules explained in Appendix 2 of this handbook.

DIAND (Ottawa)

Program Reference Centre: (a) Treaty Annuity Paylists, 1850-1955, and up to the 1970s for some Districts. (b) Interest distribution paylists, c. 1900-1955. (c) Miscellaneous collections of Indian population statistics, all Bands, mainly late 1950s to present. (d) "Alpha lists" of Indian status persons by Band or Province, 1951 to present. (e) "Proof of Age" records (ledgers of birthdates for various persons, various dates, mainly 1900 to present. (f) Microfiche copies of lists and ledgers relating to scrip, from PAC, RG-10 vols. 10035-10040. (g) Special census and baptismal records relating to British Columbia Bands, c.1900 to the present.

Central Registry Files: policy and case files on membership, including some open subject files in the 1/3-3 series, and other restricted series on special topics, such as the "Estates" series (wills and descent of property). Most membership files are restricted: researchers who need access should consult the Treaties and Historical Research Centre of DIAND in Ottawa, and/or the Registrar of Indian Membership.

Membership Division (Reserves and Trusts Branch): (a) The Indian Register, 1951 to present. (b) Various special lists, indexes and files relating to Indian status and membership (mainly restricted).

DIAND (Regional and District Offices)

Miscellaneous Band lists, Treaty paylists, membership policy files and "case" records. (INDEX: see the local office for access and information).

Public Archives of Canada

Miscellaneous Population Records: (a) Fur Trade Records: Hudson's Bay Company records in Manuscript Group 20 (MG-20; originals available in the Hudson's Bay Company Archives in Winnipeg). Also other fur trade records, including some census material, in MG-19. (b) Military census records: Record Groups 8 and 9 and various Manuscript Groups, including MG-11, MG-21-G-2 (the Haldimand Papers) and MG-19-F (the Claus Papers). (c) Governmental census records: Canada Census Records, 1825-1881, in Record Group 31. Also available for borrowing on microfilm, and at some regional libraries. Organized by province and settlement or region. Catalogued in: Thomas A. Hillman, Catalogue of Census Returns on Microfilm, 1666-1881 (Ottawa: Public Archives of Canada, 1981). Censuses after 1881 are not yet open to the public. (d) Scrip Records: mainly in Record Group 15 (Records of the Interior Department) but see also RG-10 volumes 10035-10040. Consult archivists for advice as to use.

RG-10: (a) Policy and "case" files on status and membership, scattered throughout RG-10: see especially subject indexes to the Black and Red Series and the New Accessions, under "Membership", "Admission to and Discharge from Treaty", "Transfers", "Individual Status", "Payment of Annuities", "Adoption", "Enfranchisement", "Commutation", "Marriage", "Divorce", and peripheral records under "Care of Children", "Wills", "Estates", "Rationing", and "Schools". See especially the groups of files in RG-10 volumes 7102-7115 (membership, general); volumes 3723-3725, 3996-3999, 6857-6877 and 7957-7976 (admission to and discharge from Band); 3969-3980 (payment of annuities); 7978-7979 (Indian marriages and divorces); 7195-7324 (enfranchisement); 8156-8173 (commutation); 7944-7957 and 8097-8099 (interest distribution); etc. There is a great deal of policy correspondence on membership and family law in the "Indian Act Amendment" files, especially in RG-10 volumes 6808-6812, files 470-1-3 and 470-2-3. (b) Robinson-Huron Treaty, paylists and Interest

Distribution lists (field office copies), c.1898-1969 (RG-10, accession 79-80/6). (c) Band Membership lists, as first posted in 1951 (RG-10 accession 79-80/57). (d) Miscellaneous Agency "membership" rosters, including lists of persons entitled to local benefits such as provisions (the "ration books") and farm supplies. (Scattered throughout Agency records; see general indexes to RG-10, especially finding aid No. 40 on post-Confederation Agency records.)

RG-26: (Citizenship and Immigration Department): files on the extensive membership investigations of 1950-1960, including records on Caughnawaga, Sarnia, and various western Canadian Bands, scattered throughout volumes 70 to 74. (INDEX: none.)

Church Records

For birth, baptism, marriage and death records, see remarks on pages 227 to 229 and 357 of this handbook.

Published Sources

Censuses: Canada, Parliament, Sessional Papers, Annual Reports of the Department of Indian Affairs, prints tables of census figures for all Bands in Canada in the years 1867 to 1918. Band Censuses for 1924, 1929, 1934, 1939, 1944, 1949, 1954, and 1959 are each available as separate booklets (Census of Indians in Canada, Ottawa: Department of Indian Affairs/Indian Affairs Branch, 1925-60). DIAND has published Band-by-Band census figures for 1965-1980 in Registered Indian Population by Band... (Ottawa: DIAND, Statistics Division, 1973) and Registered Indian Population By Sex and Residence... (Ottawa: DIAND, Statistics Division, seven issues dated 1973-80).

Family History: Aside from Treaty paylists, Band lists and other membership records, researchers should investigate two general guides to genealogical or family history research: a good short (and free) guide by Patricia Kennedy and others, Tracing Your Ancestors in Canada (Ottawa: Public Archives of Canada/Minister of Supply and Services, revised edition, 1981); and Eric Jonasson, The Canadian Genealogical Handbook (second edition, Winnipeg: Wheatfield Press, 1978). American family history sources are briefly described in V. Rogers, "The Indians and the Métis ..." Minnesota History (1979) volume 48(7), pages 286-296.

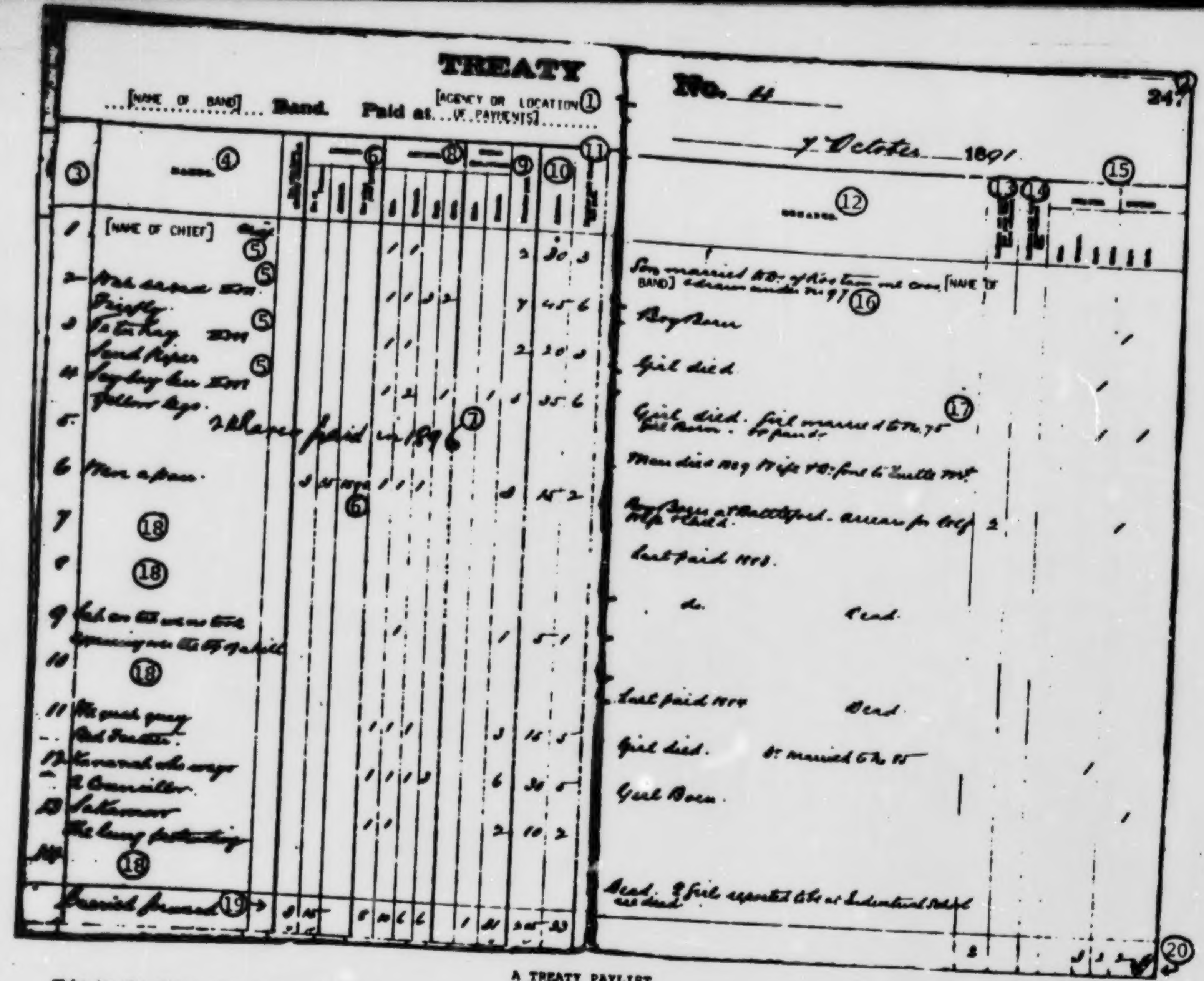
Anthropological and Medical Studies: For remarks on sources of population figures and information on historic population changes among Canadian Indians, see items listed under "Population and Vital Statistics" in: Bennett McCardle, Bibliography of the History of Canadian Indian and Inuit Health (Edmonton: Indian Association of Alberta, 1981), pages 9-13 and 66. For works on particular peoples, see George P. Murdock, Ethnographic Bibliography of North America, 4th edition (New Haven: HRAF Press, 1975). Useful advice on interpreting government, mission and fur trade family records is found in Mary Black and E.S. Rogers, "Adoption of a patrilineal surname system by bilateral northern Ojibwa: mapping the learning of an alien system" in William Cowan, ed. Papers of the 11th Algonquian Conference (Ottawa: Carleton Unviersity, 1980) pp. 198-230; E.S. Rogers and Mary Black, "Method for reconstructing patterns of change: surname adoption by the Weagamow Ojibwa, 1870-1950", Ethnohistory (1978) volume 25(4) pages 319-345; and Gordon M. Day, The Identity of the Saint Francis Indians (National Museum of Man Mercury Series, Canadian Ethnology Service Paper 71) Ottawa: National Museums of Canada 1981, pages 66-117.

Legal Studies: There are no complete reviews of the history of Indian status law. Some useful references are: "Indian status: what is the present law?" (Background paper, Ottawa: DIAND, n.d., c. 1973); Carleton University, Department of Law, Native Law Centre, A Study of the Federal Indian Legislation Respecting Membership and Status (Unpublished report, Carleton University, April 1974; covers mainly the workings of the Indian Act since 1951); D.E. Sanders, "The Bill of Rights and Canadian Indian status", University of British Columbia Law Review (1972) vol. 7(1), pages 81-105; D. Sanders, Family Law and Native People: A Background Paper (Ottawa: Law Reform Commission of Canada/Supply and Services Canada, 1975); S. Imai and K. Laird, "The Indian status question: A problem of definition", Canadian Legal Aid Bulletin (1982) volume 5 (1), pages 113-123; University of Saskatchewan Native Law Centre, Indian Status and Membership Rights (N.L.C. Legal Information Service, Saskatoon, No. 1 of 1980); C. Chartier, "Indian: an analysis of the term as used in section 91(24) of the British North America Act, 1867", Saskatchewan Law Review (1978-79) volume 43: 37 ff., and N. Dyck, "Indian, métis, native: some implications of special status", Canadian Ethnic Studies (1980) vol. 12(1): 34-46. For a discussion of alternative membership systems, see A. Barry Edwards Consultants Ltd., Enrolment of Native Peoples in Canada: A Handbook for Participants in Comprehensive Land Claims Agreements (Ottawa: DIAND, Office of Native Claims, 1982). Court decisions on Indian membership are indexed in the Canadian Native Law Reporter (1978) vol. 1 (2) pages 30-46; cases since 1978 are reprinted in more recent issues.

Women's Status: Kathleen Jamieson's Indian Women and the Law in Canada: Citizens Minus (Ottawa: Advisory Council on the Status of Women, 1978) reviews the general history of Canadian Indian women's status and family law since the early 1800s, although it does not pay adequate attention to archival material and case records before the 1960s. Related information on the period before 1900 is found in Sylvia Van Kirk's Many Tender Ties; Women in Fur-Trade Society in Western Canada, 1670-1870 (Winnipeg: Watson & Dwyer, 1980), Jennifer Brown's Strangers in Blood; Fur Trade Company Families in Indian Country (Vancouver: UBC Press, 1980), and items listed in Rayna Green, Native American Women: A Bibliography (Washington, D.C.: U.S.

Department of Education/Wichita Falls, Texas: Ohoyo Resource Center, 1981). See also D.E. Sanders' "Indian women: a brief history of their roles and rights", McGill Law Journal (1975) vol. 21(4): 656-672; S.M. Weaver, "Indian women, marriage and legal status" in K. Ishwaran, ed. Marriage and Divorce in Canada (Toronto: McGraw-Hill Ryerson, in press); Speaking Together. Canada's Native Women (Ottawa: Secretary of State, 1977); and a special issue of the Bulletin of the Canadian Association In Suuport of the Native People, (1978) volume 18(4).

For information on current political developments as to Indian womens' rights and section 12 (1)(b) of the Indian Act, contact the reference collections or libraries of the Assembly of First Nations (Ottawa), the Advisory Council for the Status of Women (Ottawa), and the Native Law Centre (Saskatoon). A partial summary is contained in the "First Report of the Subcommittee on Indian Women and the Indian Act", in: Canada, Parliament, Standing Committee on Indian Affairs and Northern Development, Minutes of Evidence and Proceedings (October 1982, forthcoming).



TREATY

...[NAME OF BAND]... Band. Paid at [AGENCY OR LOCATION OF PAYMENTS]

No. 4

7 October 1891

247

A TREATY PAYLIST

This is the first page of a typical "numbered Treaty" annuity paylist of the 1890s. Earlier and later lists vary in format, detail and accuracy. Copies of all paylists, dated 1850 to the 1970s, are kept in the Program Reference Centre (Indian and Inuit Affairs Program, DIAND) in Ottawa. Duplicate copies of some lists are available in PAC, RG-10, and in some local DIAND offices and archives. The poor quality of this reproduction represents fairly the average state of the earlier paylists.

TREATY PAYLIST: NOTES

1. Place and date of the Treaty payments.

2. Page number of sheet in original ledger book.

3. Treaty numbers (or "ticket numbers") of each person or family in the Band. Children were paid under their family number until they married or reached the age of 21. At that time they were usually (though not always) given their own ticket number. This numbering system was set up in 1880 and has been continued in most Treaty bands up to the present day, in more or less unbroken numerical sequence.

4. "Names" column. Only the names of heads of family are given, sometimes with translations. Spellings may vary widely from year to year. Occasionally (such as in the census years of 1939 and 1949) names of other family members are given.

5. Chiefs and Councillors or Headmen ("H.M."). These are usually identified on the lists.

6. "Arrears" column. This shows late payments of Treaty money owing to people who have been absent from previous payments. For example, Wan-e-pau (ticket number 6) was paid $15.00 in arrears of annuity money for 3 people — himself, wife and child — which he had failed to collect in 1890.

7. Long-Term Arrears. Arrears ("shares"), owed to two people on ticket number 5 (apparently a woman and her daughter) were paid in 1896 to cover the year 1891. Arrears for the other years they were away, if paid, would be recorded on the sheets for the appropriate years. In this case the family's name had been erased from the list because of their long absence.

8. Breakdown of people paid. This column shows the numbers of men, women, boys, girls, and "other relatives" respectively that were actually paid in the current year (1891) under each ticket.

9. Total number paid. This column shows the gross total number of people paid under each ticket.

10. Total moneys paid. This column shows the total amounts or money paid to each family.

11. "Number paid when last paid". This shows the number of people paid in each family in the last previous year they were present to take payments.

12. "Remarks" column. This often contains valuable historical information.

13. "Indians not paid last year who have returned". This column was sometimes used to count returned absentees, and sometimes (in error) to count people transferred or married in from other Bands.

14. "Indians paid last year — absent this". This column was sometimes used to count absentees, and sometimes (in error) to count people who had died or permanently left the band.

15. "Births" and "Deaths" columns. Births and deaths in each family during the previous year.

16. This "Remark" means that one son, paid up to 1890 with his father the chief and his mother on ticket number 1, has married the daughter ("Dr.") of a person in another Band. The new couple has been given a new Treaty number (no. 97, shown on another page) and are now paid on their own.

17. This "Remark" means that one daughter, previously paid under this number, has married the man who has Treaty ticket number 75, and is now paid under his name. Also, the money owed to the "other relative" ("O.R.") has been paid to the daughter ("Dr.").

18. These families have been absent for many years. Their names have finally been taken off the list. Their treaty numbers will ordinarily not be re-used unless some member of the family returns.

19. "Totals" column. Numbers in each of these columns are carried forward and added up on the last page of the Band's paylist. Separate "recapitulation sheets" total the payments to all Bands in a region or Agency. Since the Agents often made adding mistakes, these figures should always be re-checked before use in research.

20. Initials or signatures of the officer making the payments are usually found at the end of each Band list, or at the end of the batch of lists for the Agency, or (as here) on each page of each list. In the 19th century, some paymasters also made out separate affidavits or certifications confirming the payments.

OTHER SUBJECTS

This section lists, very briefly, some archival sources for twelve other topics of interest to many researchers. These are:

(a) The Canadian constitution;
(b) Indian self-government and Band organization;
(c) Indian education;
(d) Indian health, medical care, and other social services;
(e) justice and law enforcement;
(f) urban Indian issues;
(g) military issues (conscription and veterans' rights);
(h) international issues (border-crossing and Canadian/American claims);
(i) Indian religion;
(j) Indian languages, literature, music and art;
(k) Indian biographies and autobiographies; and
(l) other native peoples (the Inuit, the Métis and aboriginal peoples outside Canada).

The short forms used here for sources are:

DIAND	Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, Indian and Inuit Affairs Program: current Central Registry files (in Ottawa, unless otherwise noted).
PAC	Public Archives of Canada (Ottawa).
RG-10	Historic records of the Department of Indian Affairs (in PAC, Record Group 10).

(a) THE CANADIAN CONSTITUTION

The new Canadian constitution is the single most important fact of life for researchers working on projects relating to aboriginal and Treaty rights today. The Constitution Act of 1982 will affect the rights of native peoples in important ways, but its exact legal meaning is not yet clear. It will probably not become clearer until Canadian courts make decisions on specific native rights cases brought before them, or unless changes are made to the Act. In the meantime, there will be much political and legal discussion of the Constitution Act's native rights clauses. These are as follows:

Part I ("Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms") clause 25:

> "25. The guarantee in this Charter of certain rights and freedoms shall not be construed so as to abrogate or derogate from any aboriginal, treaty or other rights or freedoms that pertain to the aboriginal peoples of Canada including
>
> (a) any rights or freedoms that have been recognized by the Royal Proclamation of October 7, 1763; and
>
> (b) any rights or freedoms that may be acquired by the aboriginal peoples of Canada by way of land claims settlement."

Part II ("Rights of the Aboriginal Peoples of Canada") clause 35:

> "35. (1) The existing aboriginal and treaty rights of the aboriginal peoples of Canada are hereby recognized and affirmed.
>
> (2) In this Act, 'aboriginal peoples of Canada' includes the Indian, Inuit and Métis peoples of Canada."

Part IV ("Constitutional Conference") clause 37:

> "37. (1) A constitutional conference composed of the Prime Minister of Canada and the first ministers of the provinces shall be convened by the Prime Minister of Canada within one year after this Part comes into force.
>
> (2) The conference convened under subsection (1) shall have included in its agenda an item respecting constitutional matters that directly affect the aboriginal peoples of Canada, including the identification and definition of the rights of those peoples to be included in the Constitution of Canada, and the Prime Minister of Canada shall invite representatives of those peoples to participate in the discussions on that item."

Other provisions of the Constitution may affect native rights indirectly; thus, concerned researchers should consult the full text of the Act. Note also the attachment or "schedule" to the Act ("Schedule... Modernization of the Constitution") that gives new official names to certain basic documents, such as the Manitoba Act, the admissions of British Columbia, Rupert's Land and the Northwest Territories to Confederation, and the Natural Resources Transfer Agreements.

By contrast, the Canadian constitution between 1867 and 1982 -- the British North America Act, a British statute -- referred to native rights in the following terms, taken from the United Kingdom Statutes, 1867, chapter 3, clause 91(24):

> "91. It shall be lawful for the Queen, by and with the Advice and Consent of the Senate and House of Commons, to make Laws for the Peace, Order and good Government of Canada, in relation to all Matters not coming within the Classes of Subjects by this Act assigned exclusively to the Legislatures of the Provinces; and for greater certainty, but not so as to restrict the Generality of the foregoing Terms of this Section, it is hereby declared that

(notwithstanding anything in this Act) the exclusive Legislative Authority of the Parliament of Canada extends to all Matters coming within the Classes of Subjects next hereinafter enumerated; that is to say —

...(24) Indians, and Lands reserved for the Indians."

Researchers needing information about the legal meaning of the Constitution should, of course, get expert legal advice.

SOURCES

Text: For the full text of the new Constitution, see: Canada, The Constitution Act, 1982 (Ottawa: Queen's Printer, 1982) or Canada, Statutes, 1981-82-83, "The Constitution Act" (chapter number to be announced). For the British North America Act, see: Canada, Revised Statutes, 1970, "Appendices" volume; Elmer A. Driedger, A Consolidation of the British North America Acts 1867 to 1965, Consolidated as of January 1, 1967 (Ottawa: Information Canada, 1967); or Maurice Ollivier, British North America Acts and Selected Statutes 1867-1962 (Ottawa: Queen's Printer, 1963). Related constitutional documents affecting Indian rights, such as the Admission of Rupert's Land and the Natural Resources Transfer Agreements, are printed in Gail Hinge's Consolidation of Indian Legislation, volume 1 (Ottawa: Office of Native Claims, Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, 1976) or (extracts only) in Derek G. Smith's Canadian Indians and the Law (Toronto: McClelland and Stewart 1975).

Background reading: As yet there are few accounts of the drafting and interpretation of the new Constitution. Useful outlines of the events leading up to the inclusion of the native rights clause in the Act are in Robert Sheppard and M. Valpy, The National Deal: Remaking the Canadian Constitution (Toronto: Fleet Books, 1982) and Edward McWhinney, Canada and the Constitution 1979-1982 (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1982). More detailed information can be found in various daily newspapers (especially the Toronto Globe and Mail) and the House of Commons and Senate Debates (Hansard), for the period January 1980 to September 1982. Native political positions during this period are abundantly documented in the Minutes of Proceedings and Evidence of the Special Joint Committee of the House of Commons and Senate on the Constitution of Canada (1980-81) and are partially summarized in John Moss, "Native proposals for constitutional reform", Journal of Canadian Studies (1980-81) volume 15(4): 85-92. Some of the major native position papers are available from DIAND's Program Reference Centre, Ottawa (reference: Acquisition List, May 1982). Native law issues are discussed in D. Sanders, "Aboriginal people and the constitution", Alberta Law Journal (1981) vol. 19:410-435 and K.M. Lysyk, "The rights and freedoms of the aboriginal peoples of Canada", in W.S. Tarnopolsky and G.A. Beaudoin, eds., The Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms: Commentary (Toronto: Carswell, 1982) pages 467 - 488. Reviews of general issues are found in Richard Simeon's A Citizen's Guide to the Constitutional Question (Toronto: Business Council on National Issues/ Gage Publishing, 1980) and Peter Hogg's The Canada Act Annotated (Toronto: Carswell, 1982). The text of the Supreme Court's decision on the validity of the "patriation" of the Act is in The Supreme Court Decisions on the Canadian Constitution (Toronto: James Lorimer, 1981). For other political position papers and legal material, consult the research offices and libraries of the Assembly of First Nations, the native organizations, the Federal Departments of Justice and Indian Affairs, the Native Law Centre (University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon), and the Human Rights Research and Education Centre (University of Ottawa Faculty of Law, 57 Copernicus Street, Ottawa, Ont. K1N 6N5, 1-613-231-3492).

A list of legal and historical material on native rights aspects of the British North America Act up to 1977 is in: Canada, Indian Claims Commission, Indian Claims in Canada: An Essay and Bibliography (Ottawa: Information Canada, 1975) and Indian Claims in Canada: Supplementary Bibliography (Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1979).

(b) INDIAN SELF-GOVERNMENT AND BAND ORGANIZATION

To research the history of Indian Band organization and Indian government, you will have to use a variety of published and unpublished sources. There has been surprisingly little written about this subject to date, apart from political position papers and brief histories of modern Indian political organizations. These tend to concentrate on forms of government recognized by the Department of Indian Affairs. There is also a scattering of anthropological research reports and unpublished field research. Current political developments relating to native proposals for new forms of government, and to the federal government's "Indian Government Bill", will probably soon result in further publications.

Historical projects on this subject would normally require a researcher to write a general "ethnohistory" of the peoples or communities concerned.

SOURCES

Department of Indian Affairs records: (a) General records relating to the political organization of Indian people before Confederation, scattered throughout RG-10 and the military and colonial records in RG-8, RG-9, MG-11 and related private papers in the Manuscript Division. (b) Policy and Band case files in RG-10 (the Red and Black Series, New Accessions, and Agency Records) relating to Band Council elections and operations, Band bylaws, and band organization generally. (INDEXES: computerized subject indexes and/or shelf lists to the records named, under the headings "Chiefs and Councillors", "Delegations and Deputations", "Complaints and Disputes", "Band Management", "Minutes of Council" (e.g., Band minutes, 1906-1965, in RG-10 vols. 7128-7141), "Rules and Regulations", "Bylaws", and "Indian Organizations").

DIAND (Ottawa and Regional Offices)

Central Registry files: Current files, dated mainly since 1956, on Band elections, bylaws, Band organization, Minutes of Council and Indian organizations. Researchers who want to collect a complete set of the "Minutes of Council" for a particular Band (if such minutes were kept, which is not always the case) must reconstruct it themselves from different sources, including Band records, Band "Election" files in Ottawa (at DIAND or at the PAC in the RG-10 "Agency Records") and DIAND Regional or District Offices. Some Bands in eastern Canada have minutes extending back to the early 19th century, but few Bands west and north of southern Ontario kept any regular Council or Band records until after 1945. (INDEX: files are organized by subject and region. Consult Treaties and Historical Research Centre for further information). Note also that DIAND's recent policy positions on Indian band government and band financing have been brought together in DIAND's controversial "local government guidelines" (DIAND, Indian-Inuit Affairs Program, Program Circulars D-1 to D-5, 1975; available in I.D.I.G. Library, Prince Albert, Sask.).

Program Reference Centre: Compiled lists of past Chiefs and Councillors for various Bands; also the Treaty Paylists or other records used to compile these lists. (INDEX: see the Centre for information.)

Statutory Requirements Division, Elections and By-laws Unit: Lists of all Chiefs and Councillors for each Band in Canada since 1956-58, with dates of election. (INDEX: by Band.)

Background Information: Information on traditional Indian leadership, and the influence on Indian politics of the fur trade, missions and governments, is scattered throughout the usual sources. Consult works on particular groups listed in George P. Murdock's Ethnographic Bibliography of North America (4th edition, New

Haven: HRAF Press, 1975). See also recent research listed in the various general bibliographies on pages 197 - 210 of this handbook, especially the journal Canadian Ethnic Studies (1970) vol. 2(1): 95-115 and (1973) vol. 5(1-2): 153-182.

Band Councils: Information on the workings of Indian Band Councils (as recognized by the Canadian government) is also scattered throughout the literature, especially in recent studies of "reserve communities" and their social structure: see Thomas Abler et al., A Canadian Indian Bibliography 1960-1970 (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1974) and the current bibliographies listed on pages 199-210. There is also relevant material in the historic review of legislation relating to Band government by Wayne Daugherty and D. Madill, Indian Government Under Indian Act Legislation, 1868-1951 (Ottawa: Research Branch, DIAND, 1980); Don Whiteside, Contemporary Indian Protests: Reference Aids -- Bibliographies (3 vols., Ottawa: National Indian Brotherhood, 1973); Harold Cardinal, The Unjust Society and The Rebirth of Canada's Indians (Edmonton: Hurtig, 1969 and 1977); M.S. Marule, "The Canadian government's termination policy ..." in I.A.L. Getty and D.B. Smith, eds., One Century Later ... (Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press, 1978) pp. 103-116; and essays by McNickle, Elias and Dunning in Marc-Adélard Tremblay, ed., The Patterns of 'Amerindian' Identity (Québec: Presses de l'Université Laval, 1976).

Indian associations and political groups above the Band level: these are discussed in: Wayne Daugherty, "A guide to native political associations in Canada" (unpublished paper, Ottawa: DIAND, Treaties and Historical Research Centre, 1982), a brief history; Richard Lueger, "A History of Indian associations in Canada (1870-1970)", M.A. thesis, Carleton University, 1977; Don Whiteside, Historical Development of Aboriginal Political Associations in Canada... (Ottawa: National Indian Brotherhood, 1973), a chronology with some references; Don Whiteside, "Efforts to develop aboriginal political associations in Canada, 1850-1965" (unpublished paper, Aboriginal Institute of Canada, Ottawa, 1974); N. Dyck, "The politics of special status: Indian associations and the administration of Indian Affairs", in: Jorgen Dahlie and T. Fernando, eds., Ethnicity, Power and Politics in Canada (Vol. VIII, Canadian Ethnic Studies Association, Toronto: Methuen, 1981) pp. 279-291; John A. Price, Native Studies: Canadian and American Indians (Toronto: McGraw-Hill, 1978) pp. 155-179 and 226-239; J. Rick Ponting and R. Gibbins, Out of Irrelevance: A Socio-Political Introduction to Indian Affairs in Canada (Scarborough, Ont.: Butterworth, 1980); S.M. Weaver, Making Canadian Indian Policy: The Hidden Agenda (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1981); J.S. Frideres, Canada's Indians: Contemporary Conflicts (Scarborough, Ont.: Prentice-Hall, 1974) pp. 111-155; E.P. Patterson III, "Andrew Paull and the early history of British Columbia Indian organizations" in: I.A.L. Getty and D.B. Smith, One Century Later... (Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press, 1978) pp. 43-54; F.E. LaViolette, The Struggle For Survival: Indian Cultures and the Protestant Ethic in B.C. (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1973) pp. 145-176; Murray Dobbin, The One-and-a-Half Men (Vancouver: New Star, 1981), on the Prairie organizations; James Burke, Paper Tomahawks (Winnipeg: Queenston House, 1976), on the Manitoba Indian Brotherhood; M. Boldt, "Canadian native Indian leadership: context and composition", Canadian Ethnic Studies (1980) vol. 12(1): 15-33; M. Boldt, "Philosophy, politics, and extralegal action: native leaders in Canada", Ethnic and Racial Studies (1981) vol. 4(2): 205-221; Ronald P. Bakker, "Minority group politics: the case of the Canadian Indians" (M.A. thesis, University of Waterloo, 1971); and Ernest L. Schusky, Political Organization of Native North Americans (Washington, D.C.: University Press of America, 1980).

Indian participation in Canadian government has, of course, been limited by the historic curtailment of the Indian right to vote. Material on this policy is scattered throughout DIAND and PAC, RG-10 (see the general subject indexes). See also R.H. Bartlett "Citizens minus: Indians and the right to vote", Saskatchewan Law Review (1980-81) vol. 44:163 ff., and R. Santi, "Indian participation in federal elections" (unpublished paper, Research Branch, Corporate Policy, DIAND, May 1981), including a chronology of Indian voting rights issues.

Current legal and political developments, especially the debate over new forms of Band government and the "Indian Government Bill", are documented in the reference collections of most native organizations. See especially the Assembly of First Nations in Ottawa; the Department of Indian Affairs in Ottawa; and the Native Law Centre in Saskatoon. A good basic list of recent works is Materials on Indian Government in I.D.I.G. Library (Prince Albert, Sask.: Institute For the Development of Indian Government, Library, March 1981; also available in the DIAND Library, Ottawa). Writing on this subject often overlaps with writing on aboriginal rights issues and the Constitution.

Band Bylaws: With a few exceptions, there is no central source for the bylaws of particular Bands, or indeed for Band bylaws generally. Collections must be reconstructed using the following records: (a) Bylaws before 1971: From internal records of the Council concerned, or from DIAND Central Registry files, entitled "Band Management", "Rules and Regulations", "Band Bylaws" or "Council Bylaws". Some of these files have been transferred to the P.A.C. and will be found there in record group RG-10. (b) Bylaws since 1971: From the office of the Registrar of Statutory Instruments, Privy Council, Room 300, 85 Sparks St., Ottawa, Ont. K1A 0A3, tel. 1-613-996-1561. A fee is charged for copying. Bylaws are indexed here by Band and date only. They are also indexed upon registration (though not printed in full) in the government publication The Canada Gazette, Part II.

(c) INDIAN EDUCATION AND SCHOOLS

A great deal has been written about Indian education in Canada, and the available material can be divided up into three groups. The first includes works on traditional Indian teaching methods. The second is made up of histories of particular schools, and histories of Indian Affairs school policies. The third includes works on special teaching techniques and learning problems in Indian education today, written by teachers, sociologists and psychologists.

The Department of Indian Affairs has kept detailed records on Indian schools in Canada since the middle of the 19th century. The churches, who until recently ran most special Indian schools, also kept records which reach much further back in time. You can use these to research most types of project without too much difficulty, although the detail available varies from archive to archive and from school to school. Some researchers combine this archival research with oral history — that is, interviews with living ex-pupils and ex-teachers.

SOURCES

Public Archives of Canada

Indian Affairs Records (RG-10): (a) the "Schools Files" series: detailed files on all aspects of school administration, including policy, attendance, curriculum, financing, etc., 1879-1973 (RG-10 vols. 6001-6491 and 7083-7092, with subject index); other general policy files, 1896-1966 (RG-10 vols. 7180-7194 and 8753-8810). (INDEX: see computerized subject index to the "Schools Files", on microfiche). (b) DIA Schools Branch letterbooks, 1893-1897 (RG-10 volumes 1070, 1287-1302 and 1726-1727, each self-indexed). (c) Miscellaneous school reports and inspection reports, various regions, 1884-1900 (RG-10 volumes 5991-92), 1909-1968 (RG-10 volumes 8437-8474) and 1951-1968 (RG-10 volumes 8993-9001). (d) Economic assistance to ex-pupils, 1932-35 (RG-10 vol. 7942) and pupil's savings accounts, 1897-1965 (RG-10 vols. 8129-8156). (e) School maintenance and buildings, 1901-1966 (RG-10 vols. 6492-6603 and 8233-8279). (f) School conferences, 1953-1964 (RG-10 vol. 8576). (g) School staffing, 1909-1968 (RG-10 vols. 8596-8615). (h) Various other schools policy and administration records for all periods, scattered throughout RG-10. (INDEX: see the "green inventory" for pre-Confederation records; the computerized indexes to Black and Red Series and New Accessions, under "Schools", "Education", "Churches" and the names of particular schools; and Mathesons's "Schools File" Indexes in RG-10 Accession 76-7/124, box 1, files 2-5). (i) Various reports on schools, scattered throughout the Agency Records. (INDEX: see "green inventory" for RG-10 and the special RG-10 finding aid #40, "Agency records".)

PAC, RG-1 section "E" and RG-2 series 1: Orders-in-Council granting funds and appointing staff for various Indian schools, 1841 to present. (INDEX: by year and subject.)

Other Archival Sources

DIAND (Ottawa and Regional and District Offices): (a) Central Registry files on schools policy and particular schools, dated mainly (but not only) since 1930. (INDEX: by subject or province and name of school.) (b) Treaties and Historical Research Centre, Ottawa: document collections on a selection of Indian schools. (c) *Annual Reports* of the Department of Indian Affairs, found in the Canada *Sessional Papers* for 1867 to 1916; these contain detailed reports on Indian schools and on DIA education policy. Information published after 1916 tends to be general and brief.

Church Records: These may be essential for research on particular schools. See the description of mission records on pages 227 - 229 and 357 of this handbook.

School Records: Some existing Indian schools still retain their own records on Indian pupils, funding, policy, curriculum and administration. Approach them for details.

Background Information

There is no adequate general history of Indian education in Canada. Useful information can be found in: Elmer Jamieson, "Indian education in Canada", M.A. thesis, McMaster University, 1922; H.J. Vallery, "A history of Indian education in Canada", M.A. thesis, Queens University, 1942; G.D. Gibson, "Jesuit education of the Indians in New France, 1611-1658", Ph.D. thesis, University of California at Los Angeles, 1940; H. Ralston, "Religion, public policy and the education of Micmac Indians of Nova Scotia, 1605-1872", Canadian Review of Sociology and Anthropology (1981) vol. 18(4): 470-498; J.D. Wilson, "'No blanket to be worn in school': the education of Indians in early 19th century Ontario", Histoire Sociale/Social History (1974) vol. 7:293-305; Robert J. Carney, "Relations in education between the federal and territorial governments and the Roman Catholic Church in the Mackenzie District, N.W.T., 1867-1961", Ph.D. thesis, University of Alberta, 1971; J. Gresko, "White 'rites' and Indian 'rites': Indian education and native responses in the West, 1870-1910", in A.W. Rasporich, ed., Western Canada Past and Present (Calgary: McClelland & Stewart, 1974) pp. 163-182; E.L. Bullen, "An historical study of the education of the Indians of Teslin, Yukon Territory", M.A. thesis, University of Alberta 1968; Lionel G. Marshall, "The development of education in northern Saskatchewan", The Musk-Ox (1967) vol. 1:19-25; M.-A. Tremblay, "L'éducation des Indiens: un modèle d'analyse de l'échec des agences blanches", Mémoires de la Société Royale du Canada (1978) vol. 16: 171-193; E.R. Daniels, "The legal context of Indian education in Canada", Ph.D. thesis, University of Alberta, 1973; Thomas Thompson, ed., The Schooling of Native America (Washington, D.C.: American Association of Colleges for Teacher

Education, 1978); various articles printed in the quarterly Canadian Journal of Native Education (Edmonton, 1973 to present); and articles in "Learning for self-determination", special issue of the Canadian Journal of Native Studies (1982) volume 2(1).

Further materials, including works on the traditional, historical, technical, philosophical and political aspects of native education, are listed in a later section of this handbook on Christian missions (page 176) and in: I.R. Brooks, Native Education in Canada and the United States: A Bibliography (Calgary: University of Calgary, Office of Educational Development, 1975), and the Abler, Murdock and Whiteside bibliographies listed on pages 199 - 210 of this handbook.

(d) INDIAN HEALTH, MEDICAL CARE AND OTHER SOCIAL SERVICES

Health: No one has yet written the history of Indian health in Canada. To write about health in a specific community -- and to see how health conditions have changed over time -- you will have to read a wide variety of archival records and technical studies. Look at population and family records to find "vital statistics" (rates of birth and death), and patterns of illness. Find out more about health, nutrition, sanitation, and diseases, both before and after the arrival of white men (that is, in aboriginal times, during the fur trade, and after people were gathered on reserves). When did the first outside health services -- vaccinations, X-ray facilities, nurses, doctors, hospitals, and clinics -- come to your community? How have they changed since that time? What effect have they had on your community's health? What relations did Indian people have with non-Indian medical people?

You may find that a project of this kind is difficult to research, because there are few easily available sources. If so, get help from people who have worked on the subject before: nurses, doctors, or teachers with expert knowledge of health matters. They may be able to help you understand archival information on population changes, or may give you technical information on particular diseases. They could find other professional people to give you special help.

Social Services: There is also no general history of social services to Canadian Indian people. Little has been written about the background of welfare, relief, rationing, child care, and disabled persons' assistance for Indian people. Much of this will have to be researched "from scratch", using sources on the local history of your community and other special records listed below.

SOURCES

Public Archives of Canada

Indian Affairs records (RG-10): Information on Indian health and social services is scattered everywhere throughout the records, especially in general descriptions of conditions on particular reserves. (INDEXES: see the PAC's various lists and finding aids to pre-Confederation materials in RG-10 volumes 1 to 1854, Agency records, the Red and Black Series, and (to a lesser extent) the New Accessions. See headings indicating general Agency reports, "Health", "Medicine", "Hospitals", "Doctors" and the names of particular diseases; for social services, see for instance, "Welfare", "Relief", "Rations", "Disabled", "Blind", "Needy mothers", and "Child Care".) The bulk of health policy material after 1920 is in the Health and Welfare Canada files (below). Isolated 20th century files on health and social services are found in the RG-10 New Accessions, especially 72/604, 72/605 and 72/607.

Other Record Groups: There is some scattered material on 20th century Indian health and social services in record groups RG-22 (Northern Affairs), RG-26 (Citizenship and Immigration), RG-29 (National Health and Welfare), RG-54 (Comptroller of the Treasury), and RG-58 (Auditor-General).

Government Departments

DIAND (Ottawa and Regional Offices): Policy files on Indian health, dating mainly from 1945 to the present (in the file series 1/17-1 to 1/17-20) and Social Services files (in the series 1/10-1 to 1/10-14, Relief and Welfare). (INDEX: see Treaties and Historical Research Centre.)

The Medical Services Branch of Health and Welfare Canada (Ottawa and Regional Offices). This office keeps a wide variety of files, including the federal government's central policy files on Indian health generally since about 1920; files on particular hospitals, clinics and disease treatments; and individual case files. Ottawa's collection is particularly complete. (INDEX: contact the Native Health Services office of the Medical Services Branch, Health and Welfare Canada, Ottawa, for access and further information.)

Other Sources

General: Look for information on Indian health and social services in local history sources such as ethnological records; mission records; provincial government files on health, welfare and social insurance; and the archives of particular Indian organizations, especially the Health Program of the Assembly of First Nations (National Indian Brotherhood). For general descriptions of conditions, see also the Annual Reports of the Department of Indian Affairs for 1867-1945; the Annual Reports of the Department of National Health and Welfare and its branches for 1945 to the present; and the separate annual reports of Health and Welfare's Indian and Northern Health Services Directorate (1955-62) and the Medical Services Branch (1962 to present). Note that at some periods the government censored its published reports, removing descriptions of serious epidemics or poor Indian health conditions. Full texts can sometimes be found on the files.

Population and Vital Statistics: Special sources are described on pages 144 - 148 of this handbook, under "Indian Status and Membership". Note especially that membership records such as Treaty Annuity paylists can often be used to trace causes and rates of mortality.

Published Secondary Sources: No satisfactory general works on Indian health are yet available, although much has been published on specific issues. C.R. Maundrell's "Indian Health, 1867-1940" (M.A. Thesis, Queen's University, 1941) is a useful review of reserve-period health and government medical services, based on archival sources. It has been partly summarized and updated in G. Graham-Cumming's "Health of the Original Canadians, 1867-1967" (Medical Services Journal of Canada (1967) vol. 23(2): 115-166), but the original thesis should be used for in-depth projects. One of the few papers to attempt a complete history of Indian health for a particular region is T.K.H. Young's "Indian health care in northwestern Ontario: health status, medical care, and social policy" (M.Sc. Thesis, University of Toronto, 1979). Detailed studies of population, nutrition and epidemic disease among particular Canadian Indian groups (especially the boreal-forest peoples during the aboriginal and fur trade periods) are available. Other subjects dealt with by recent writers include traditional Indian medical practices and attitudes, nutrition, sanitation, particular diseases (especially smallpox and tuberculosis), mental health, and modern health care delivery problems. See list in Bennett McCardle, A Bibliography of the History of Canadian Indian and Inuit Health (Edmonton: Indian Association of Alberta, 1981) and Mark V. Barrow et al., Health and Disease of American Indians North of Mexico: A Bibliography, 1800-1969 (Gainesville: University of Florida Press 1972).

Historical writing on social services is limited. For partial lists, see Thomas Abler and S.M. Weaver, A Canadian Indian Bibliography 1960-1970 (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1974) and Don Whiteside's various bibliographies, including Aboriginal People (Ottawa: National Indian Brotherhood, 1973). More recent items can be found in the libraries of the Assembly of First Nations (Ottawa), the Department of Indian Affairs (Ottawa) and regional Indian organizations.

(e) JUSTICE AND LAW ENFORCEMENT

Files relating to native people and the administration of justice can be found in archives and various government departments. These records break down into three groups: (a) general records on law enforcement history and policy; (b) subject files on specific offences, such as juvenile delinquency, theft, and murder; and (c) "case files" on the trials and conviction of particular people, some of which date back to the early 19th century.

Some of these records (especially those dated since 1950, and some "case files") may be closed to researchers unless the permission of the defendant is given.

SOURCES

Public Archives of Canada

RG-10 (Department of Indian Affairs): various subject files and other records dating from 1867 onward, in the Red and Black Series, the New Accessions and the Agency Records. (INDEXES: see the general computerized subject indexes and file lists for these groups, under the headings "Law Enforcement" (e.g. RG-10 volumes 8848-49 and 7979-81), "case files" (e.g. RG-10 volumes 7464-76 and 7995-8096), "juvenile delinquency", "theft", "murder and manslaughter", "immorality", "jails", etc.) (b) RG-13 (Department of Justice): case files on native offenders, dated mainly 1858-1950, involving murder (section C-1), parole (C-2), penitentiaries, c. 1830-1880 (C-3), and files on trials connected with the Riel Rebellions (A-4 and B-2). (c) RG-18 (RCMP Records): case files on native offenders, miscellaneous crimes, 1880-1938 (section B-5). (d) RG-22 (DIAND): cases files on offences committed in the North. (e) RG-73 (Solicitor-General): statistics and policy files on penitentiaries and prisons, and files on native offenders, 1947-1964 (volumes 52-54 and 82); files on imprisonment of native rebels, 1885-1889 (volume 172).

Records of Government Departments

(a) DIAND, Central Registry Files: subject files on native offenders and law enforcement, mainly since 1950 (in the file series 1/18-1 to 1/18-37). (b) Secretary of State: Current research files on native people and the justice system. (Contact the Secretary of State, Native Citizens' Directorate, for further information.) (c) Other Departments: statistical material from various sources, as reviewed in M.A. Rahim's Guide to Statistics on Native Offenders (Ottawa: Office of the Solicitor General, Information Systems and Statistics Division, 1977).

Background Information

A substantial collection of information on native people and the justice system is available at the Canadian Claims Research Centre of the School of Human Justice, University of Regina. See also items listed in Curt T. Griffiths et al., Native North Americans: Crime, Conflict and Criminal Justice: A Research Bibliography (Burnaby, B.C.: Simon Fraser University, Criminology Research Centre, 1982); and Thomas Abler and S.M. Weaver, A Canadian Indian Bibliography, 1960-1970 (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1974). Recent reviews include "The prison experience and Canada's native people", Tawow, special issue (1982) volume 8(1); "Native People and Justice in Canada" (special issues, Canadian Legal Aid Bulletin (1982) Vol. 5, no. 1 and vol. 5 no. 2); and William T. Badcock and G. Michalis, Native People and Canada's Justice System: Programmes and Issues (2 volumes), Ottawa: DIAND, Research Branch, 1979. C. Schuh's "Justice on the Frontier: early murder trials of native accused", Criminal Law Quarterly (1979) volume 22 (1): 74-111, discusses the political and judicial context of early western and northern law enforcement. For material on the RCMP and native people, see: Alan F.J. Artibise's Western Canada Since 1870 (Vancouver: University of B.C. Press, 1978); V.P. Arora, Royal Canadian Mounted Police: A Bibliography of Resource Material (Calgary: Glenbow-Alberta Institute Archives, Archives Series #5, 1973); and R.G. Macleod's The North West Mounted Police and Law Enforcement 1873-1905 (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1976).

(f) URBAN INDIAN ISSUES

The extent of archival records on Indian people in Canadian cities is not yet known. Sources such as the records of government offices in charge of social services, or records of native organizations, could be explored by enterprising researchers. Some useful secondary works are available.

SOURCES

Archival Material

Public Archives of Canada: (a) Indian Affairs Records (RG-10): policy file on Indians living off reserves, 1933-34 (RG-10 vol. 6817 file 481-1-1); (b) Citizenship and Immigration files (RG-26 volume 69) on Indian and Métis friendship centres, 1958-1966.

DIAND (Ottawa and Regional Offices): Central Registry policy and case files on Indians living off reserves (e.g. Ottawa file 1/3-3-11, 1936 to present) and on social and health services to Indians off reserves, as described earlier in this handbook under "Health". (INDEX: consult Treaties and Historical Research Centre.)

Department of National Health and Welfare, Medical Services Branch (Ottawa): policy files on medical and other social services for Indians off reserves, 1920s to present. Material is interfiled with policy correspondence on Indian health generally. (INDEX: consult Medical Services Branch for information.)

Published Material

For general summaries, see W.T. Stanbury and J.H. Siegel, Success and Failure: Indians in Urban Society (Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press, 1975); John A. Price, "Urban Indians" in Native Studies: American and Canadian Indians (Toronto: McGraw-Hill Ryerson, 1978, pages 130-169); Jack Waddell and O.M. Watson, editors, The American Indian in Urban Society (Boston: Little, Brown and Co., 1971); D.N. McCaskill, "The urbanization of Indians in Winnipeg, Toronto, Edmonton and Vancouver: a comparative study", Culture (1981) vol. 1 (1): 82-89; Edgar J. Dosman, Indians: The Urban Dilemma (Toronto: McClelland & Stewart, 1972); Larry Krotz, Urban Indians: The Strangers in Canada's Cities (Edmonton: Hurtig, 1980); and Stewart J. Clatworthy, The Demographic Composition and Economic Circumstances of Winnipeg's Native Population (Winnipeg: Institute of Urban Studies, University of Winnipeg, 1980). For further reading, see Russell Thornton et al., The Urbanization of American Indians: A Critical Bibliography (Bloomington, Ind.: Indiana University Press, 1982); Wayne G. Bramstedt, North American Indians in Towns and Cities: A Bibliography (Public Administration Series Bibliography P-234, Monticello, Ill.: Vance Bibliographies, 1979) or James N. Kerri's American Indians (U.S. and Canada): A Bibliography of Contemporary Studies and Urban Research (Monticello, Ill.: Council of Planning Librarians, 1973) with its Supplement To the General Bibliography Section (Exchange Bibliography No. 594, 1974).

(g) MILITARY ISSUES

The federal government has records on two military issues of interest to researchers: first, special Indian rights as to conscription and military service, and second, special treatment of Indian veterans.

Material on Indians, conscription and military enlistment is scattered throughout the archival records listed below. Material on veterans' rights, including rights to pensions and land (under special laws relating to Indian "soldier settlers") can be found in subject files of various Indian veterans' organizations, the Department of Indian Affairs, and the federal Department of Veterans' Affairs.

It is interesting to note that some Indian groups were treated as veterans of the British army as early as the 1820s, as a result of the War of 1812. The issue of whether Indians were liable to conscription was raised during both World Wars and during the negotiation of several Treaties. Canadian military records from World Wars I and II also contain information on special native units and native rights issues.

SOURCES

Archival Material

Public Archives of Canada: (a) RG-10 (Indian Affairs): files on Indians, conscription, and enlistment, 1916-1957 (RG-10 volumes 6762-6806 and 7150-51); and on Indian soldier settlement, c. 1918-1950 (e.g. volumes 7484-85). (INDEX: consult subject indexes to Red and Black Series and New Accessions.) (b) Colonial Military Records (RG-8, RG-9 and early volumes of RG-10): information on Indian military participation in colonial wars generally. (INDEX: see background reading below for guidance; use the general inventories and consult archivists for further help.) (c) National Defence files (RG-24): subject files on conscription and other native issues, and on particular native units. (INDEX: see RG-24 "Army Series" subject index in PAC.) (d) Department of Labour (RG-27): files on wartime use of native labour, 1943-54 (volumes 605 and 624). (e) Veterans' Affairs (RG-38): case files on Indian war veterans and Veterans' Land administration, 1917-1972.

DIAND (Ottawa): Policy files on military service and Indian war veterans. (INDEX: consult Treaties and Historical Research Centre.)

Background Information

See the legal review by the University of Saskatchewan Native Law Centre, *Indian Veterans' Rights* (Legal Information Service Report #3, 1979); historical works listed in Robert J. Surtees, *Canadian Indian Policy: A Critical Bibliography* (Bloomington, Ind.: University of Indiana Press, 1982), especially the section on "Military Policy"; and D.C. Scott, "The Canadian Indians and the Great World War", in: *Canada In The Great World War: An Authentic Account...* (Toronto: United Publishers of Canada, 1919) vol. 3, pp. 285-328. Historical documents on recent issues (Indian veterans' lands and pensions) have been collected by the three Prairie Indian organizations and the local and national Indian Veterans' Associations. Consult these for further information.

(h) INTERNATIONAL ISSUES

International issues that concern Indian historical researchers include (a) the meaning of the Jay Treaty of 1794 and "border-crossing" issues relating to it, such as the application of customs and immigration laws to Indians; (b) Canadian Indian residence abroad as affected by the Indian Act before 1951; (c) Indians' citizenship rights generally; (d) the status of American Indian people in Canada; and (e) Canadian Indians' land and money claims in the USA. Historical records on each of these subjects can be found in Ottawa archives.

SOURCES

Archival Material

Public Archives of Canada: (a) *Indian Affairs Records (RG-10)*: files on the Jay Treaty; the deportation of American Indians and Canadian Indians resident in the USA, 1916-1966 (RG-10 volumes 6819-21, 7103, 7980 and 8855); rights of "Rebel" Indians residing abroad without permission (RG-10, Black Series, various files). (INDEX: see general subject indexes to RG-10, and files on particular border-area bands (e.g. St. Regis, Caughnawaga) listed in the subject indexes to Black and Red Series and the New Accessions.) (b) *Governor General's Records (RG-7-G-21)* and *External Affairs Records (RG-25-G-1)*: files on Canadian Indian claims in the USA, and border-crossing issues after 1900. (INDEX: see subject indexes for the records named, under "Indian" or the name of the group (Sioux, Potawatomi, Cayuga, etc.) (c) *Department of Justice Records (RG-13)* on Potawatomi and Cayuga claims in the USA (section B-7 vol. 68 file 6223 and C-1 volume 2085). (d) *Citizenship and Immigration (RG-26 Volume 74 file 1648)* legal file on border-crossing and citizenship issues, 1940s to 1950s; (e) *Department of Labour (RG-27 volume 665)* file on border crossing, 1943-1954. (f) *Immigration file (RG-76 volume 854 file 554-16)* on the Jay Treaty and related issues, 1925-66.

DIAND (Ottawa and Regional Offices): Policy and regional (Band-by-Band) files on border-crossing, citizenship and related issues. (INDEX: see local offices for access and further information.)

Background Information

The Treaty of Amity, Commerce and Navigation, 1794-1796 (Ottawa: DIAND, Treaties and Historical Research Centre, 1979) includes a bibliography on Jay's Treaty. Claims against the USA by the Oneida, Cayuga, Potawatomi, and St. Regis Bands are summarized on pages

84-103 of Richard Daniel's A History of Native Claims Processes in Canada 1867-1979 (Ottawa: DIAND, Research Branch, 1980). Material on American claims brought before the U.S. Indian Claims Commission (some of which may affect Canadian Indians) is reprinted in: Native American Rights Fund, Inc. Indian Claims Commission Decisions, 35 vols., with Index (Boulder, Colo: NARF, 1973-75).

(i) RELIGION

There are no general histories of Canadian native religion. Aside from the knowledge of living persons, much information on traditional Indian worship and belief is scattered throughout the published material and archival records. There are also, of course, abundant Christian mission records relating to the conversion of Indian peoples. Most of the information needed by researchers working on traditional and other Indian religions is in ethnological archives or publications.

SOURCES

Archival Material

Public Archives of Canada: (a) RG-10: various records, concentrating mainly on Christianity and schools, scattered throughout RG-10 (INDEXES: see the general finding aids to RG-10 volumes 1-1854 and the subject indexes to the Red and Black Series and the New Accessions, under such headings as "Religion", "Churches", "Pagans", and the names of particular Bands or ceremonies — e.g. "Sundance". See also policy files in RG-10 accession 74-5/31 box 5A on the North American Native Church and on Indian healing. Note that Indian Affairs records on schools contain useful information on traditional religion as well as on conversion to Christianity.) (b) MG-17: records relating to the history of various churches in Canada, including much material on missions to Indians from the 17th century onward. (INDEX: see General Inventory to MG-17 and consult archivists for assistance.)

Other Archives: (a) *Church and provincial archives* across Canada hold records relating to Christian missions to the Indians. See remarks on these records and locations and collections on pages 227 - 229 and 357 of this handbook. (b) *Anthropological research records* often contain descriptions of traditional religious practices. For guides to collections, see pages 256, 197 - 210 and 353 - 357 of this handbook.

Background Reading

Traditional Religion: Much of the information on traditional Canadian Indian religion is in ethnological works describing particular peoples. The best bibliography for this subject is still George P. Murdock's *Ethnographic Bibliography of North America* (4th edition, New Haven: HRAF Press, 1975). See also the following reviews and bibliographies: John A. Price, *Native Studies: American and Canadian Indians* (New York: McGraw-Hill Ryerson, 1978, pages 94-112, "The evolution of religion"); Elisabeth Tooker, ed., *Native North American Spirituality of the Eastern Woodlands* (New York: Paulist Press, 1979); Earle H. Waugh and K.D. Prithipaul, eds., *Native Religious Traditions* (Waterloo, Ont.: Canadian Corporation for Studies in Religion, 1979); Ruth Underhill, *Red Man's Religion: Beliefs and Practices of the Indians North of Mexico* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1965); G. Tissot, "Identité et symbole: nous et les Amérindiens", *Studies in Religion* (1972) vol. 2(1): 11-35; C. Vecsey, "American Indian environmental religions" in Christopher Vecsey and R.W. Venables, ed. *American Indian Environments* (Syracuse, N.Y.: Syracuse University Press, 1980, pp. 1-37); Ake Hultkrantz, *The Religions of the American Indians* (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1979), with a good bibliography; Ake Hultkrantz, "North American Indian religion in the history of research: a general survey" (Parts 1-4), *History of Religions* (1966-67) vol. 6(2):91-107, vol. 6(3): 183-207; vol. 7(1):13-34; and vol. 7(2):112-148; Ake Hultkrantz, "The study of North American Indian religion: retrospect, present trends and future tasks", *Temenos* (1965) vol. 1:87-121;

Bennett McCardle, *Bibliography of the History of Canadian Indian and Inuit Health* (Edmonton: Indian Association of Alberta, T.A.R.R., 1981), sections on traditional healing and mental health; and C.R. Wilson, "Shamans and charlatans: the popularization of native American religion in magazines, 1865-1900", *The Indian Historian*, (1978) vol. 12(3):6-13.

Collections of religious texts, myths and folk-tales are listed in G.P. Murdock's *Ethnographic Bibliography of North America* (4th ed., 1975); Edward Buller's *Indigenous Performing and Ceremonial Arts in Canada: A Bibliography* (Toronto: Association for Native Development in the Performing and Visual Arts, 1981); *Indian-Inuit Authors: An Annotated Bibliography* (Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1974); Judith C. Ullom, *Folklore of the North American Indians: An Annotated Bibliography* (Washington, D.C.: Library of Congress, 1970) and Cleveland Public Library, John G. White Department, *Catalog of Folklore, Folk Life and Folk Songs* (2d edition, Boston: G.K. Hall, 1961, and a *Supplement*, 1974; 37 volumes).

Christianity: Information on missionaries and native Christianity is abundant but still widely scattered in the literature. Researchers should consult the general bibliographies on pages 197 - 210 of this handbook (especially the *Reader's Guide to Canadian History*, Surtees, Thibault, Thwaites, and Abler); the special references on schools on pages 160 - 163; the annual bibliography of Canadian church history published in the *Bulletin of the Canadian Catholic History Association*; and two important US-oriented reviews, James P. Ronda and J. Axtell, *Indian Missions: A Critical Bibliography* (Bloomington, Ind.: Indiana University Press, 1978) and James Axtell, "Some thoughts on the ethnohistory of missions", *Ethnohistory* (forthcoming). Some useful Canadian works are: Cornelius Jaenen's various studies, including *Friend and Foe: Aspects of French-Amerindian Cultural Contact in the Sixteenth and Seventeenth Centuries* (Toronto: McClelland and Stewart, 1976), "The frenchification and evangelization of the Amerindians in seventeenth century New France", Study Sessions of the Canadian Catholic History Association (1979), and "Missionary approaches to native people" in D. Muise, ed., Approaches to Native History in Canada (Ottawa: National Museums of Canada, 1977, pages 5-15); P.G. LeBlanc, "Indian missionary contacts in Huronia, 1615-1649", Ontario History (1968) vol. 60:133-146; R. Conklin, "Legitimacy and conversion in social change: the case of French missionaries to the northeastern Algonkians" Ethnohistory (1974) vol. 21: 1-24; Francois-Marc Gagnon, La conversion par l'image: un aspect de la mission des Jésuites... (Montréal: Bellarmin, 1975); M. Dumont-Johnson, Apôtres ou agitateurs. La France missionnaire en Acadie (Trois-Rivieres: Boréal Express, 1970); Elizabeth Graham, Medicine Man to Missionary: Missionaries as Agents of Social Change Among the Indians of Southern Ontario, 1764-1867 (Toronto: Peter Martin Associates, 1975); and Jean Usher, William Duncan of Metlakatla (Ottawa: National Museums of Canada, 1974).

(j) LANGUAGE, LITERATURE, MUSIC AND ART

Archival records contain some information on these subjects, including material on folk traditions, antiquities and recent art and artists. Because of the complexity of some of the scholarly studies, especially those on language and music, an extended list of reference works is given here.

SOURCES

Music: For good general reviews of Indian and Inuit music, with bibliographies, see Helmut Kallmann, et al. (eds.) Encyclopedia of Music in Canada (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1981, pages 448-453 and 458-460) and Marcia Herndon, Native American Music (Norwood, Pa.: Norwood Editions, 1980). Further readings are listed in Edward

Buller's Indigenous Performing and Ceremonial Arts in Canada: A Bibliography (Toronto: Association for Native Development in the Performing and Visual Arts, 1981); Ian and Patricia Bradley, A Bibliography of Canadian Native Arts: Indian and Eskimo Arts, Crafts, Dance and Music (Victoria, B.C.: GLC Publications, 1977); J.J. Nattiez' "La musique indienne sur disque: Cent ans d'ethnomusicologie", Recherches Amérindiennes au Québec (1981) vol. 11(3) pp. 251-261; M.F. Guédon, "Canadian Indian ethnomusicology: select bibliography and discography", Ethnomusicology (1972) 16(3): 465-478; and R.M. Stone's "Twenty-five years of selected films in ethnomusicology: the Americas (1955-1980)", Ethnomusicology (1982) vol. 26(2): 305-316. See also the journal Ethnomusicology (1956 to present) for much technical and academic material on Canadian native music. Original Indian song and music recordings, made by Frances Densmore, Marius Barbeau and others, can be found in the collections of the National Museum of Man in Ottawa and some of the larger regional museums. Addresses are given in Appendix 4 of this book.

Art: The best reading lists are Ian and Patricia Bradley's A Bibliography of Canadian Native Arts, listed above, and Glen Wardwell and L. Lebov's Annotated Bibliography of Northwest Coast Indian Art (N.Y.: Library of the Museum of Primitive Art, 1970). Some useful general works are: Nancy-Lou Patterson, Canadian Native Art (Don Mills: Collier MacMillan, 1973); Ted J. Brasser, Bo'jou, Neejee! Profiles of Canadian Indian Art (Ottawa: National Museum of Man, 1976); Olive P. Dickason, Indian Arts in Canada (Ottawa: DIAND, 1972); Cyril Simard, Artisanat Québecois, 3. Indiens et Esquimaux (Montréal: Editions de l'Homme, 1977); and Norman Feder, American Indian Art (N.Y.: Harry V. Abrams, 1969). Also available are a wide variety of shorter bibliographies, books and articles on related subjects such as craftwork, picture-writing, petroglyphs, sign language and games. For a partial list, see G.P. Murdock's Ethnographic Bibliography of North America (4th edition, New Haven: HRAF Press, 1975). "How-to" guides on particular Indian crafts are found in various issues of the U.S. periodicals American Indian Tradition (formerly The Hobbyist) and Powwow Trails; see also Richard C. Schneider's Crafts of the North American Indians: A Craftsman's Manual (Cincinnati, Ohio: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1972).

Some recently published biographies of contemporary Indian artists are: B.C. Indian Arts Society, Mungo Martin, Man of Two Cultures (Sidney, B.C.: Gray's Publishing, 1982); Lister Sinclair and Jack Pollock, The Art of Norval Morisseau (Toronto: Methuen, 1979); Kenneth James Hughes, The Life and Art of Jackson Beardy (Winnipeg: Canadian Dimension Publishers, 1979); and Edith Iglauer, "The myth maker" (Bill Reid), Saturday Night (February 1982) vol. 97(2):13-24.

Most major Canadian museums (with the notable exception of the National Gallery of Canada) have collections of native art. See especially the collections of the University of British Columbia Museum (Vancouver), the Provincial Museum of British Columbia (Victoria), the Glenbow-Alberta Institute (Calgary), the Manitoba Museum of Man (Winnipeg), the Royal Ontario Museum (Toronto), the National Museum of Man (Ottawa), and the Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development (Ottawa). Some Indian bands and cultural groups have significant local art collections. These institutions usually have reference libraries, catalogues or historical documents that can be used by researchers.

Language: Listed here are three different types of language studies: (a) linguistic studies, or in-depth works on specific languages or language groups, including grammars, dictionaries and analyses, (b) texts in native languages, and (c) histories of government and church policy with regard to native languages. Much of the existing material lies unpublished in the archives of linguists, universities and museums around the world.

Linguistic studies: For general reviews of Canadian native languages, see M.K. Foster, "Canada's first languages", Language and Society (1982) vol. 7: 7-16, J.K. Chambers, The Languages of Canada (Montreal: Marcel Didier, 1979) pages 15-129, and a more technical study by Lyle Campbell and M. Mithun, eds. The Languages of Native America (Austin: University of Texas Press, 1979). The best current short reviews on individual languages are in the Handbook of North American Indians (Washington: Smithsonian Institution; vol. 6 on Subarctic and vol. 15 on Northeast available to date). Lists of further readings are found in: G.P. Murdock's Ethnographic Bibliography of North America (4th ed., New Haven, HRAF Press, 1975); Jack W. Marken, The American Indian: Language and Literature (Arlington Hts., Ill.: AHM Publishing, 1978); Barry Edwards, A Bibliographical Check-List of Canadian Indian Linguistics in the Languages Centre of the Metropolitan Toronto Library (Toronto: Metropolitan Toronto Library Board, Languages Centre, 1975) and A Supplement to the Bibliographical Check-List... (same, 1976); G. Edward Evans et al. Bibliography of Language Arts Materials for Native North Americans: Bilingual, English as a Second Language and Native Language Materials 1965-1974 (Los Angeles: American Indian Studies Centre, UCLA, 1977); and G. Edward Evans et al., North American Indian Language Materials 1890-1965: An Annotated Bibliography of Monographic Works (Los Angeles: American Indian Studies Centre, UCLA, 1980).

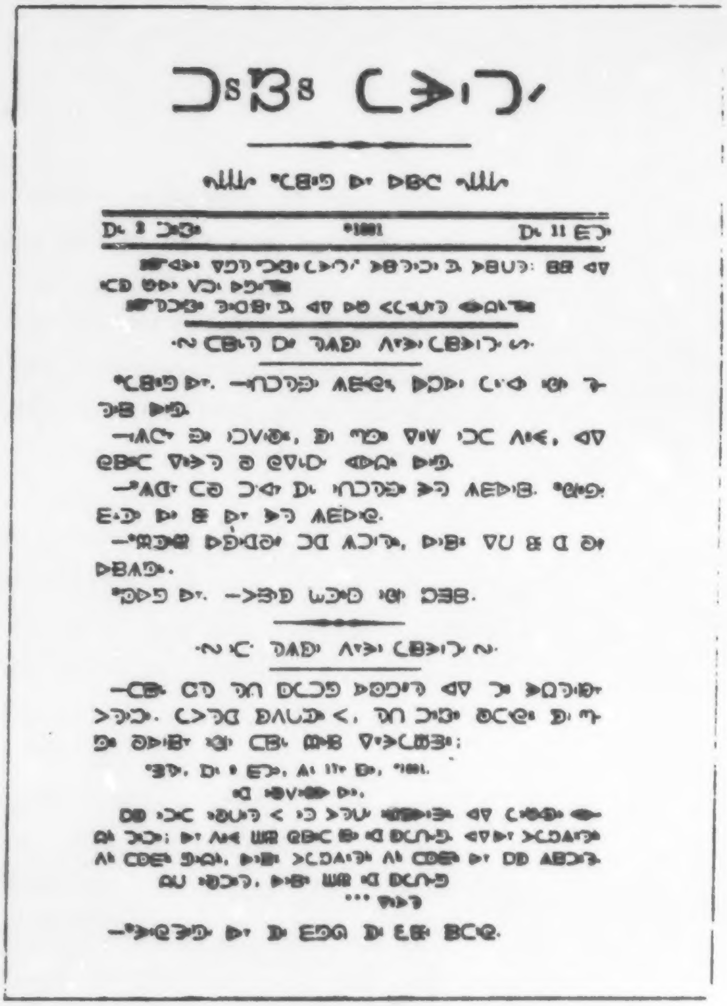
Lists on specific language groups include: (Algonquian) David Pentland and C. Wolfart, Bibliography of Algonquian Linguistics (2d edition, Winnipeg: University of Manitoba Press, 1982); (Athapaskan) June Helm, ed. Handbook of North American Indians, Volume 6: Subarctic (Washington: Smithsonian Institution, 1981); and Richard T. Parr, A Bibliography of the Athapaskan Languages (National Museum of Man, Mercury Series, Ethnological Division Paper No. 14) Ottawa: National Museums of Canada, 1974. See also the Pilling bibliographies, listed below.

Current linguistic research is described in the academic newsletters of scholarly groups, such as Algonquian and Iroquois Linguistics (formerly Algonquian Linguistics Newsletter), the Papers of the Algonquian Conferences (various editors, 1972 to present); Northwest Languages Newsletter (Vancouver); and the Newsletter of the Conference of American Indian Languages Clearinghouse (Arlington, Va.: Centre for Applied Linguistics).

Texts in native languages include books, periodicals, newspapers, transcripts of traditional stories, legends, songs, religious and devotional texts, and vocabularies. A useful discussion of early texts is in Victor E. Hanzeli's "Early descriptions by French missionaries of Algonquian and Iroquoian languages..." (Ph.D. thesis, Indiana University, 1961). List of texts include (a) James C. Pilling's five bibliographies: Bibliography of the Algonquian Languages (Smithsonian Instutution, Bureau of American Ethnology Bulletin 13, Washington: Government Printing Office, 1891), Bibliography of the Athapaskan Languages (Bulletin 14, 1892), Bibliography of the Chinookan Languages (Including the Chinook Jargon) (Bulletin 15, 1893); Bibliography of the Iroquoian Languages (Bulletin 1, 1887), and Bibliography of the Siouan Languages (Bulletin 5, 1887). These items are discussed in J.M. Banks' "James Constantine Pilling and the literature of the native peoples" in: Bibliographical Society of Canada Colloquium III... 1978 (Toronto: The Society, 1979), pp. 58-70. (b) Joyce M. Banks, Books in Native Languages in the Collection of the Rare Books and Manuscripts Division of the National Library of Canada (Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1980). (c) Five guides and lists by Gaston Carrière, o.m.i., of Oblate archival holdings of Indian texts, published in Anthropologica (1970) n.s. vol. 12 pp. 151-179 and (1973) n.s. vol. 15 pp. 129-151, Culture (1951) vol. 12:213-226 and (1957) vol. 18(1):105-112; and in Etudes Oblates (1972) vol. 31:165-204.

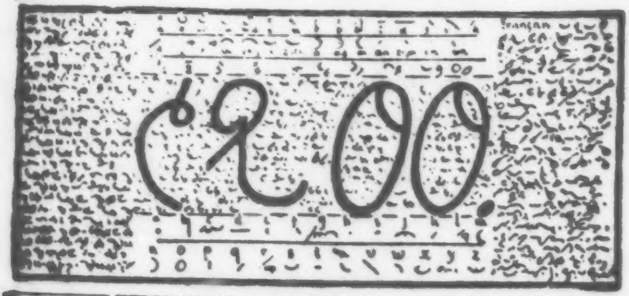
NEWSPAPERS

Three notable newspapers produced by or for native people, in native languages, are shown below. RIGHT: First page of an early issue of Toestloes-Nahwoelnoek, (The Carrier Review, Stuart Lake, B.C.), a monthly newspaper published in Carrier syllabics by Oblate missionary A.G. Morice from 1891 to 1893. The Review covered national and international as well as church news. BELOW LEFT: Masthead of the Kamloops Wawa, a magazine published by the Catholic missionary J.M.R. LeJeune in the Chinook language, at Kamloops, B.C., from 1891 to 1905. The alphabet used is an adaptation of Duployan shorthand. At right is a Hudson's Bay Company fur advertisement from the May 1896 issue. BOTTOM: Masthead of The Native People, published in Edmonton by the Alberta Native Communications Society (1968 to present) in English, Cree and occasionally other languages. This is Canada's oldest continuing native weekly, though not the first (see the Hagersville Indian, p. 185 of this handbook).



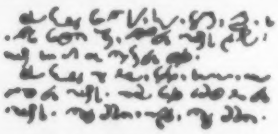
From A. G. Morice's Souvenirs d'un missionnaire en Colombie Britannique (Winnipeg: Éditions de la Liberté, 1933) p. 119.

No. 154 50 Centimes. 10 Cents.



Vol. vi., No. 7. KAMLOOPS WAWA. July, 1897.

THE OLD FUR TRADERS, Established 1670.



HUDSON'S BAY CO. - Kamloops, B.C.

THE

NATIVE PEOPLE

Canada's FIRST NATIVE WEEKLY Newspaper

"From Smoke Signals To Satellites"

July 2[illegible], 19[illegible] Volume 10, No. 30 Price: 25¢

Contact Joyce Banks (Rare Books and Conservation Librarian, National Library of Canada), Dr. David Pentland (Department of Anthropology, University of Manitoba, Winnipeg, Manitoba) and Barry Edwards (Languages Centre, Metropolitan Toronto Library Board, 789 Yonge Street, Toronto, Ontario M4W 2G8) for information about planned revisions of these lists. Further bibliographies of texts in native languages are now being promoted and funded by the Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of Canada.

Government and mission policy on native languages is reviewed in L. Tschanz, "Native languages and government policy in Canada: an historical examination", Man in the Northeast (1982) vol. 23: 1-16; J.A. Price, "The viability of Indian languages in Canada", Canadian Journal of Native Studies (1981) vol. 1(2) pages 339-346; W. Cowan, "Native languages of North America: the European response", American Indian Culture and Research Journal (1974) vol. 1(2): 3-10; and various studies in the Papers of the Algonquian Conferences (first through eleventh), various editors, c. 1972 to present.

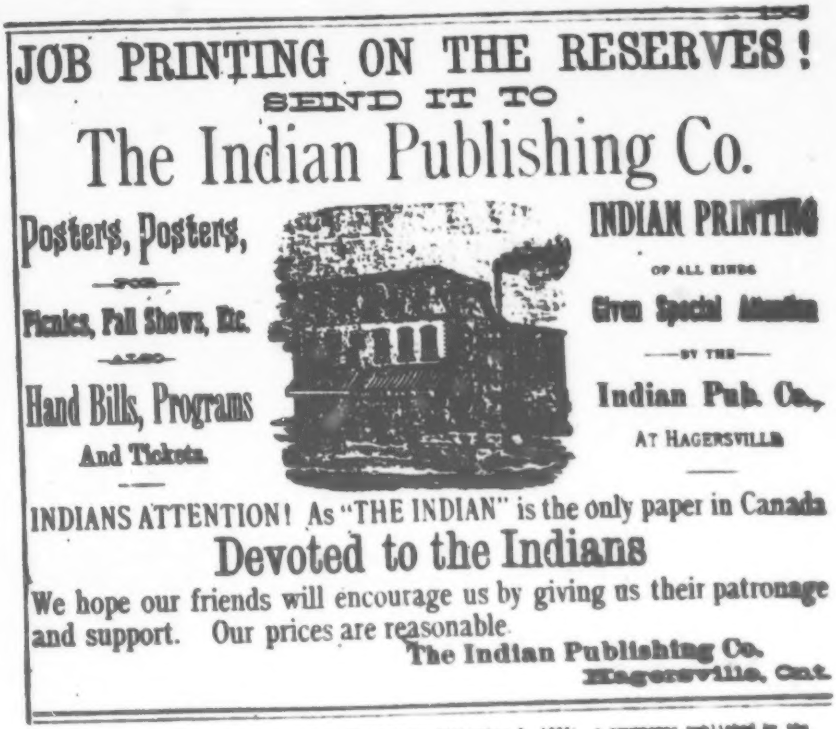
Literature, publishing and journalism, by and for Canadian native people, has not yet been studied. Some thoughtful US-oriented works are: Abraham Chapman, ed., Literature of the American Indians: Views and Interpretations (New York: New American Library, 1975); various articles in the American Indian Culture and Research Journal, 1974 to present; and R.W. Lewis, "English and American Indian studies", The Indian Historian (1973) vol. 6(4):32-37, 54 (on methods for the teaching of Amerindian literature). For further sources see below.

Literature: See National Library of Canada, Indian-Inuit Authors: An Annotated Bibliography (Ottawa: Information Canada, 1974); Jack W. Marken, The American Indian: Language and Literature (a bibliography, Arlington Hts., Ill: AHM Publishing, 1978); Daniel Littlefield and J.W. Parins, A Biobibliography of Native American Writers, 1772-1924 (Metuchen, N.J.,: Scarecrow Press, 1981); B.C.

Peyer, "A bibliography of native American prose prior to the 20th century" Wassaja/The Indian Historian (1980) vol. 13(3): 23-25; and J.B. Mays, "The flying serpent: contemporary imaginations of the American Indian", Canadian Review of American Studies (1973) vol. 4(1):32-46.

Aside from collections of traditional legends and tales (indexed in this handbook under "Religion", page 176) there are only a few anthologies of Canadian Indian speeches and creative literature. See Kent Gooderham, ed., I Am An Indian (Toronto: Dent, 1969); Waubageshig, ed., The Only Good Indian (Toronto: New Press, 1970); David Day and M. Bowering, eds., Many Voices: An Anthology of Contemporary Canadian Indian Poetry (Vancouver: J.J. Douglas, 1977); and Ken George Batisse, Native Sons (Cobalt, Ont.: Highway Book Store, 1977). Indian oratory is reprinted in André Vachon, Eloquence indienne (Montréal: Fidès, 1968) and T.C. McLuhan, ed. Touch The Earth (New York: Promontory Press, 1971). An excellent American collection is Geary Hobson's The Remembered Earth: An Anthology of Contemporary Native American Literature (Albuquerque: University of New Mexico Press, 1979).

Periodicals and journalism: For lists and descriptions of Canadian native newspapers and magazines, past and present, see: R.W. Ogle and A. Malycky, "Periodical publications of Canada's Indians and Métis: a preliminary checklist" Canadian Ethnic Studies (1970) vol. 2(1): 109-115, and "First Supplement..." (1973) vol. 5(1-2): 183-192; Duncan McLaren, Ontario Ethno-cultural Newspapers 1835-1972. An Annotated Checklist (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1973) pp. 89-95; National Library of Canada, Newspaper Section, Union List of Canadian Newspapers Held By Canadian Libraries (Ottawa: National Library of Canada 1977); and John A. Price, Native Studies (Toronto: McGraw-Hill Ryerson, 1978) pp. 180-187, "Native periodicals". Partial lists of current native periodicals are also available in The Native Directory (Ottawa: National Indian Brotherhood, 1981) or from the Public Communications and Parliamentary Relations Branch of the Indian-Inuit Affairs Program, DIAND, Ottawa. A further catalogue, covering all of North America, is being prepared by Maureen Hady of the Newspapers and Periodicals Section, State Historical Society of Wisconsin, Madison, Wisconsin, USA. Finally, US Indian journalism is described in James E. Murphy, Let My People Know: American Indian Journalism, 1828-1978 (Norman, Okla.: University of Oklahoma Press, 1981.



JOB PRINTING ON THE RESERVES!
SEND IT TO
The Indian Publishing Co.

Posters, Posters,
—FOR—
Picnics, Fall Shows, Etc.
—ALSO—
Hand Bills, Programs
And Tickets.

INDIAN PRINTING
OF ALL KINDS
Given Special Attention
—BY THE—
Indian Pub. Co.,
AT HAGERSVILLE

INDIANS ATTENTION! As "THE INDIAN" is the only paper in Canada
Devoted to the Indians
We hope our friends will encourage us by giving us their patronage and support. Our prices are reasonable.

The Indian Publishing Co.
Hagersville, Ont.

From The Indian (September 8, 1886), a newspaper published by the Rev. P.E. Jones (Kahkewaquonaby) at Hagersville, Ont., 1885-86.

General: For current government policy on native arts, consult files in (a) the Central Registry of DIAND (consult the Treaties and Historical Research Centre, Ottawa for references) and (b) the Secretary of State, Native Citizens' Directorate. For past policy, see material in the PAC, RG-10. (INDEX: subject indexes to the Red and Black Series and the New Accessions: see especially files on "handicrafts" (e.g. RG-10 volumes 7551-7554, 7908-7919, 8293, and 8614-8817), "preservation of totem poles" (RG-10 vol. 6817), and general files (RG-10 volumes 8618-8620).) Some material on export and trade in native antiquities dated before 1950, may be found in the PAC's RG-7, RG-22, RG-25, RG-45 and RG-65, and in administrative files held by the various ethnological museums, such as the National Museum of Man, Ethnology Division, Ottawa. (INDEX: consult local museum curators and archivists for further information.) For general published material, see the Bradley and Buller bibliographies, above, and John A. Price's "The Arts" in Native Studies: American and Canadian Indians (Toronto: McGraw-Hill Ryerson, 1978).

(k) INDIAN BIOGRAPHY AND AUTOBIOGRAPHY

The life stories of many individual Canadian Indian people have been published, some written or dictated by the subjects themselves, some by others. Note that those listed here are not all of equal depth or quality.

SOURCES

Unpublished: the recollections and life histories of many individuals are still buried in the unpublished records of governments, churches, historians, anthropologists, and other researchers. Look for them in the major native resource centres, in university collections, and in museum archives in your area or in Ottawa. Since there is no general guide to these records, visit the collections and ask the librarian or archivist for help.

The records of the Department of Indian Affairs include some unorganized biographical files: see the Public Archives of Canada (RG-10), especially (a) the Red and Black Series subject indexes, under the names of individuals; (b) biographical references in Matheson's "Who Was Who and When" in RG-10 volume 737; and (c) miscellaneous biographical memoranda on famous Indian people (1700s to 1963) in RG-10 volumes 10017-10031, 8581-8582 and 8616-8620. The Departmental "membership and status" records after Confederation (described in an earlier section of this handbook) also contain some biographical information. For information on prominent Indian persons today, consult (a) the Assembly of First Nations library in Ottawa and (b) the "biographical" newsclipping files of the Department of Indian Affairs (c. 1960-1977) filed by name of person, and held in the Library section of the Public Archives of Canada, Ottawa.

Published Biographies: The best single collection of historic Canadian Indian biographies is in the *Dictionary of Canadian Biography* (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1966- ; volumes I to IV and IX to X are available to date). Biographies of native people who died between 1000 and 1800 are indexed in: *Dictionary of Canadian Biography. Index. Volumes I to IV. 1000 to 1800* (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1981) pages 50-51. There is as yet no index for the other volumes: among many others, these include lives of Mekaisto or Red Crow, Kahgegagahbowh or George Copway, J.B. Askin, J.B. Assikinack, Francis Assickinack, Maskepetoon, Peguis (volume IX) and Calf Shirt, Sotai-na and Sweetgrass (volume X). For a good collection of lives of US Indian people, see Frederick J. Dockstader's *Great North American Indians: Profiles in Life and Leadership* (New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1977).

The following is an extended list (by author) of biographies and autobiographies of Canadian Indian people, and of Métis and other individuals whose lives were closely bound up with Indians: Edward Ahenakew, *Voices of the Plains Cree*, Toronto: McClelland & Stewart, 1973 [Chief Thunderchild and Rev. Edward Ahenakew]; George Barker [Chief, Hollow Water Band, Manitoba], *Forty Years a Chief*, Winnipeg: Peguis Publishers, 1979; Marius Barbeau, *Fameux peaux-rouges d'amérique du nord-est au nord-ouest*, Montreal: Beauchemin, 1966 [Donnacona, Deganawida, Hiawatha, Pontiac, Handsome Lake, Joseph Brant, Tchakta, Maquinna]; Donald C. Barnett, *Poundmaker*, Don Mills: Fitzhenry & Whiteside, 1976; Tom Boulanger, *An Indian Recalls: My Life as a Trapper in Northern Manitoba*, Winnipeg: Peguis, 1971; Henri Bechard, *L'héroique indienne Kateri Tekakwitha* Montréal: Fidès, 1980 [see also books listed in "La bibliographie de Kateri

Tekakwitha", *Bulletin de Recherches Historiques* (1940) vol. 46(5): 146-8]; Johanna Brand, *The Life and Death of Anna Mae Aquash*, Toronto: J. Lorimer, 1978; Maria Campbell, *Halfbreed; A Proud and Bitter Canadian Legacy*, Toronto: McClelland and Stewart, 1973; Harvey Chalmers and E.B. Monture, *Joseph Brant: Mohawk*, Toronto: Ryerson, 1955; J. Clifton, "Personal and ethnic identity on the Great Lakes frontier: the case of Billy Caldwell, Anglo-Canadian", *Ethnohistory* (1978) volume 25(1), pages 69-94; Hugh A. Dempsey, *Crowfoot, Chief of the Blackfeet*, Norman, Okla: University of Oklahoma Press, 1972; Carlotta Hacker, *Crowfoot*, Don Mills: Fitzhenry and Whiteside, 1977; Hugh A. Dempsey, *Red Crow: Warrior Chief*, Saskatoon: Western Producer Prairie Books, 1980; Hugh A. Dempsey, *Charcoal's World*, Saskatoon: Western Producer Prairie Books, 1978; Lovat Dickson, *Wilderness Man: The Strange Story of Grey Owl*, Toronto: Macmillan, 1973; Joseph F. Dion [a Cree teacher and organizer, 1888-1960], *My Tribe the Crees*, Calgary: Glenbow Museum, 1979; Marty Dunn, *Red on White: The Biography of Duke Redbird*, Toronto: New Press, 1971; Peter Erasmus [A Red River Métis who lived with the Cree of central Alberta, 1860-1890], *Buffalo Days and Nights* (ed. Irene Spry), Calgary: Glenbow-Alberta Institute, 1976; Clellan S. Ford, editor, *Smoke From Their Fires: The Life of a Kwakiutl Chief*, New Haven: Yale University Press, 1941; W.B. Fraser, "Big Bear: Indian patriot", *Alberta Historical Review* (1966) 14(2) pages 1-13; Kent Gooderham, *I Am An Indian*, Toronto: Dent, 1969 [extracts from various biographies]; Alma Greene (Gah-wonh-nos-doh), *Forbidden Voice: Reflections of a Mohawk Indian*, Don Mills, Ont.: Hamlyn, 1971; Max Gros-Louis, *First Among the Hurons*, Montreal: Harvest House, 1973; J.C. Hamilton, "Famous Algonquins..." *Transactions of the Royal Canadian Institute* (1898-99) vol. 6 pages 285-307 [Shinguaconse, Peguis, John Prince, Crowfoot, Poundmaker, Red Crow, the Blackbird family, Charles Tebisco Keejik, Gitchi Naigou, Mistawasis, Sweetgrass, and Waubojeeg]; Alvin Josephy, *The Patriot Chiefs*, New York: Viking, 1961 [Hiawatha, Tecumseh and others]; Chief Charles Jones and S. Bosustow, *Queesto, Pacheenaht Chief By Birthright*, Nanaimo: Theytus Books, 1981; Peter Jones, *Life and Journals of Ka-ke-wa-quo-na-by (Reverend Peter Jones)...*, Toronto:

Anson Green, 1860; Betty Keller, *Pauline: A Biography of Pauline Johnson*, Vancouver: Douglas & McIntyre, 1982; Dan Kennedy (Ochankugahe), *Recollections of an Assiniboine Chief* (edited by J.R. Stevens) Toronto: McClelland & Stewart, 1972; Bruce Kidd, *Tom Longboat* (Don Mills: Fitzhenry and Whiteside, 1980); Carl F. Klinck, *Tecumseh: Fact and Fiction in Early Records*, Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall, 1961; Barney Lacendre, *The Bushman And the Spirits*, Beaverlodge, Alta.: Horizon House, 1979; Grant MacEwan, *Sitting Bull: The Years in Canada*, Edmonton: Hurtig, 1973; J.W.G. MacEwan, *Portraits from the Plains*, Toronto: McGraw-Hill, 1971 [various Plains leaders, 19th and 20th centuries]; J.W. Grant MacEwan, *Tatanga Mani: Walking Buffalo of the Stonies*, Edmonton: Hurtig, 1969; Valerie L. Mathes, "Wickaninish, A Vancouver Island Chieftain: his life as told by foreign visitors" (M.A. thesis, University of New Mexico, 1975); J.S. Matthews, *Conversations with Khahtsahlano, 1932-1954*, Vancouver: Vancouver City Archives, 1955; B.A. McKelvie, *Maquinna the Magnificent*, Vancouver: Vancouver Daily Province, 1946; Ethel Brant Monture, *Canadian Portraits: Brant, Crowfoot, Oronhyatekha, Famous Indians*, Toronto: Clarke Irwin, 1960; Wilfred Pelletier, *No Foreign Land: the Biography of A North American Indian*, New York; Pantheon, 1973; Henry Penner, *Chiefly Indian: The Warm and Witty Story of a British Columbia Half Breed Logger*, West Vancouver: Graydonald Graphics, 1972; John A. Price, "The age of heroes" pages 69-79 of his *Native Studies: American and Canadian Indians*, Toronto: McGraw-Hill Ryerson, 1978 [a list of notable native people]; Helen C. Robinson, *Joseph Brant: A Man for His People*, Don Mills: Longman Canada, 1971; Helen C. Robinson, *Mistress Molly, The Brown Lady: A Portrait of Molly Brant*, Toronto: Dundurn Press, 1980; James Sewid, *Guests Never Leave Hungry: The Autobiography of James Sewid, a Kwakiutl Indian* (ed. J.P. Spradley), Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press, 1972; Norma Sluman, *Poundmaker*, Toronto: Ryerson, 1967; Donald B. Smith, *Long Lance: The True Story of an Impostor*, Toronto: MacMillan of Canada, 1982; *Speaking Together: Canada's Native Women*, Ottawa: Secretary of State, 1977 [a collection of short life stories]; Jean E. Speare, *The Days of Augusta*, Vancouver: J.J. Douglas Ltd., 1973 (Mary Augusta

Tappage of Soda Creek, B.C.); John Steckley, *Untold Tales. Three 17th Century Huron. Joseph Chihoatenhwa, Eustace Ahatsistari, Estienne Annaotaha*, Ajax, Ont.: R. Kerton, 1981; John Tetso, *Trapping Is My Life*, Toronto: Peter Martin, 1970 [a Slavey trapper from Fort Resolution, NWT]: University of Saskatchewan College of Education, *Indian, Métis and Eskimo Leaders in Contemporary Canada*, Saskatoon, 1971; R.M. Vanderburgh, *I Am Nokomis Too: the Biography of Verna Patronella Johnston*, Don Mills, Ont: General Publishing, 1977; Jane Willis, *Geniesh: An Indian Girlhood*, Toronto: New Press, 1973; and Keith Winter, *Shananditti, The Last of the Beothucks*, North Vancouver: J.J. Douglas, 1975. Biographies of Indian artists are listed under "Art" in a previous section.

Published Lists and Background Reading: See the National Library of Canada, *Indian-Inuit Authors: An Annotated Bibliography*, Ottawa: Information Canada, 1974; H. David Brumble, *An Annotated Bibliography of American Indian and Eskimo Autobiographies*, Lincoln/London: University of Nebraska Press, 1981 (covers Canadian items, with especially useful critical remarks); B.C. Peyer, "Autobiographical works written by native Americans", *Amerikastudien/American Studies* (1981) vol. 26(3-4) pages 386-402; A. Krupt, "The Indian autobiography: origins, type and function", *American Literature* (1981) vol. 53(1):22-24; and biographies of current personalities listed in Don Whiteside's *Indians, Indians, Indians* (3 volumes; unpublished bibliography, Ottawa, 1979) pp. 604-622.

(1) OTHER NATIVE PEOPLES (THE INUIT, THE METIS AND ABORIGINAL PEOPLES OUTSIDE CANADA)

To some extent, the advice given in this handbook on research methods and sources also applies to Inuit and Métis history projects. But work concerning these peoples is often focused differently [illegible] ny of the most important archival and secondary sources are not [illegible]. Likewise, special sources are needed for research concerning [illegible] nal peoples outside Canada. We have space here only to list some of the best research guides and reading lists for each group.

The Inuit

For a good basic history and reading list on the Inuit of Canada, see Keith J. Crowe's A History of the Original Peoples of Northern Canada (Montreal/London: McGill - Queen's University Press, 1974). The major bibliographies on the Inuit, and on the Canadian North in general, are:

- -- Arctic Institute of North America. Arctic Bibliography (16 volumes) Washington/Montreal: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1953 - .
- -- Ved P. Arora. Eskimos: A Bibliography. Regina: Bibliographic Services Division, Saskatchewan Provincial Library, 1972.
- -- Alan Cooke and F. Caron, eds. Bibliographie de la Péninsule du Québec-Labrador (2 volumes) Boston: G.K. Hall & Co., 1968.
- -- Albert A. Dekin. Arctic Archaeology: A Bibliography and History. New York: Garland Publishing, 1978. (With a detailed review of the literature).
- -- Barry Edwards and Mary Love. A Bibliography of Inuit (Eskimo) Linguistics in Collections of the Metropolitan Toronto Library. Toronto: Metropolitan Toronto Library Board Languages Centre, 1982.
- -- Robin Gedalof. An Annotated Bibliography of Canadian Inuit Literature. Ottawa: Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, 1979.
- -- A.C. Heinrich. "University research on Canada's Eskimos: A preliminary checklist of theses". Canadian Ethnic Studies (1970) vol. 2(1):31-33.
- -- Arthur E. Hippler and J.R. Wood. The Alaska Eskimos: A Selected Annotated Bibliography. Fairbanks: University of Alaska Institute of Social and Economic Research, 1977.
- -- Bennett McCardle. Bibliography of the History of Canadian Indian and Inuit Health. Edmonton: T.A.R.R., Indian Association of Alberta, 1981.
- -- George P. Murdock, ed. Ethnographic Bibliography of North America. (4th edition) New Haven: Human Relations Area Files Press, 1975, volume 1 pages 1-34 and volume 2 pages 1-117.
- -- J.F.V. Millar and A.M. Ervin. A Status Report and Bibliography of Cultural Studies in the Canadian Arctic to 1976 (The Musk-Ox, Special Publication). Saskatoon: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies, 1981).
- -- Yukon Bibliography. Ottawa: Northern Co-Ordination and Research Centre, Department of Northern Affairs and National Resources, 1964. (Original edition comp. by J.K. Lotz.) See also the five Updates, to 1970, 1973, 1975, 1977 and 1979 respectively, published by the Boreal Institute for Northern Studies, Edmonton, University of Alberta.

Current news articles on Inuit affairs, and academic writing since 1979, are indexed in the Boreal Institute for Northern Studies' Northern Studies -- BNIC Index (Edmonton: Boreal Institute, University of Alberta); this has been issued in annual parts since 1979. DIAND's library in Ottawa offers a list of computerized information sources on northern Canada ("Databases available in DIAND library which provide information on the North", 12 March 1982.) Ongoing research in the North is also catalogued by DIAND's Northern Research Information and Documentation Service (NRIDS) in Ottawa: see its Current and Recent Research Studies Relating to Northern Social Concerns, volumes I-III (Ottawa: DIAND, 1976-78).

Material on Inuit claims is also listed in:

— Canada, Indian Claims Commission, Research Resource Centre, Indian Claims in Canada. Ottawa, Information Canada, 1975, pages 155-182 and 197-201.

-- Canada, Canadian Indian Rights Commission. Indian Claims in Canada: Supplementary Bibliography. Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1979, pages 39-65 and 70-76.

-- Geoffrey S. Lester. "The Territorial Rights of the Inuit of the Canadian Northwest Territories: A Legal Argument". Unpublished Doctor of Jurisprudence thesis, York University, 1981.

More material can be found on the reference collections of the various Inuit organizations, especially the Inuit Tapirisat of Canada in Ottawa.

Journals concentrating on Northern history, society, and science include: The Musk-Ox (journal of the Institute for Northern Studies, Saskatoon), Arctic, Arctic Anthropology, Arctic Circular, Polar Record, Etudes Inuit Studies, The Beaver, Paleo-Quebec, the Anthropological Papers of the University of Alaska, Eskimo, Information North, Inuvialuit, Inuit Today, Northern Perspectives, and many others.

The largest group of archival collections on the Canadian North is held by the Public Archives of Canada. Three useful guides to these papers are: Terry Cook's Sources For the Study of the Canadian North (Public Archives of Canada, Federal Archives Division, Special Publications Series, Ottawa: Public Archives of Canada, 1980); and two unedited collections of summaries of archival records, both by James F. Kidd: Polar Archives: Thematic Guide (2 volumes; Public Archives of Canada, Manuscript Division, Finding Aid No. 1071, 1979-) and Post-Confederation Sources Relating to Indians and Inuit: Thematic Guide (Public Archives of Canada, Manuscript Division, Finding Aid No. 1204, 1981). A further guide to sources on native people in the Public Archives will be issued by the Treaties and Historical Research Centre, DIAND, in 1983.

Archival material on the Inuit dating as far back as the 1920s is available in the current files of the government of Canada in Ottawa (Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, Northern Affairs Branch) and in the records of the Northwest Territories and Yukon governments. Some of these are available to researchers, subject to departmental access and screening rules. They are, for the most part, continuous with the older departmental files held by the Public Archives (especially record groups 22, 85 and 91, as described in Cook's guide).

Relevant archival records on the Inuit may also be found in foreign repositories, such as the records of the governments of Greenland and Alaska. No guide to these sources could be found for this handbook. Researchers should contact experienced workers in the field, such as the claims research staff of the Inuit Tapirisat of Canada, or the Northern Social Research unit of DIAND's Northern Affairs Program.

The Métis

The best single list of sources on the Métis is John W. Friesen and Terry Lusty, The Métis of Canada: An Annotated Bibliography (Toronto: Ontario Institute for Studies in Education, 1980). Other more specialized bibliographies are:

- Ved P. Arora. Louis Riel: A Bibliography. Regina: Provincial Library Bibliographical Services, 1972.
- Alan F.J. Artibise. Western Canada Since 1870: A Select Bibliography. Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press, 1978.
- Canada, Indian Claims Commission. Indian Claims in Canada. Ottawa: Information Canada, 1975, pages 144-145; also Indian Claims in Canada: Supplementary Bibliography, Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1979, pp. 34-35.
- T. Flanagan and C.M. Rocan. "A guide to the Louis Riel Papers". Archivaria (1980-81) vol. 11:135-169.
- Dennis Madill. Select Annotated Bibliography on Métis Policy and Claims. Ottawa: DIAND, Treaties and Historical Research Centre, forthcoming 1983.

Researchers should also check the general lists on pages 197 - 210 of this handbook, especially the Reader's Guide to Canadian History, Murdock's Ethnographic Bibliography, and Abler's Canadian Indian Bibliography.

The only detailed guides to archival sources deal mainly with material in the Public Archives of Canada. These are: (a) Public Archives of Canada, Federal Archives Division, Department of the Interior (Record Group 15), unpublished General Inventory, Ottawa: PAC, no date; (b) Dennis Madill, "An Archival Finding Aid for Primary Source Material on the Métis" [not including RG-10 and RG-15], unpublished paper, Treaties and Historical Research Centre, DIAND, Ottawa, October 1979; and (c) Bennett McCardle, "Sources for Métis History in the Public Archives of Canada (Records of the Department of the Interior and the Department of Indian Affairs)", unpublished paper, Indian Association of Alberta, October 1981.

Researchers who want to get a feel for these archival records can consult existing histories that make extensive use of documents, such as the following:

- J.S. Brown. "Linguistic solitudes and changing social categories" in: Carol M. Judd and A.J. Ray, eds. Old Trails and New Directions: Papers of the Third North American Fur Trade Conference, Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1980, pp. 147-159.
- Joanne (Overvold) Burger. Our Métis Heritage ... A Portrayal, Yellowknife: Métis Association of the Northwest Territories, 1976. (A photographic history.)

- J.A. Clifton. "Personal and ethnic identity on the Great Lakes frontier: the case of Billy Caldwell, Anglo-Canadian", *Ethnohistory* (1978) vol. 25(1): 69-94.
- Harry W. Daniels, ed. *The Forgotten People: Métis and Non-Status Indian Land Claims*, Ottawa: Native Council of Canada, 1979.
- Murray Dobbin. *The One-And-A-Half Men: The Story of Jim Brady and Malcolm Norris...*, Vancouver: New Star Books, 1981.
- Marcel Giraud. *Le métis canadien: son rôle dans l'histoire des provinces de l'Ouest*, Paris: Institut d'Ethnologie, 1945.
- Antoine Lussier and D.B. Sealey, eds. *The Other Natives: The/Les Métis* (2 volumes), Winnipeg: Manitoba Métis Federation/Editions Bois-Brûles, 1978.
- A.S. Lussier, ed. *Riel and the Métis. Riel Mini-Conference Papers*. Winnipeg: Manitoba Métis Federation Press, 1979.
- Métis Association of Alberta et al. *Métis Land Rights in Alberta: A Political History*, Edmonton: The Association, 1981.
- "Métis et indiens sans statut", *Recherches Amérindiennes au Québec* (1982) volume 12 no. 2 (numéro spécial).
- Desmond Morton. *The Last War Drum: The North-West Campaign of 1885*. Toronto: Hakkert, 1972.
- William A. Oppen, *The Riel Rebellions: A Cartographic History*, Ottawa: Supply and Services Canada, 1979.
- G.F.G. Stanley. *The Birth of Western Canada: A History of the Riel Rebellions*, Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1961.
- G.F.G. Stanley, et al., eds. *Louis Riel, Collected Papers: Critical Edition*, in preparation; forthcoming 1983?.

More recent items, including periodicals and unpublished papers, can be found in the research collections of the Native Council of Canada, Ottawa, and in the Treaties and Historical Research Centre, DIAND, Ottawa.

Aboriginal Peoples Outside Canada

There is a large body of information available on native or aboriginal peoples around the world. Lists of basic materials are found in the bibliographies attached to the following general works:

- M. Bicchieri. *Hunters and Gatherers Today*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1972.
- Robert S. Allen. *Native Studies in Canada. A Research Guide*. Ottawa: Treaties and Historical Research Centre, DIAND, 1982, pp. 167-184, "Comparative Native Studies".

-- Canadian Indian Claims Commission. *Indian Claims in Canada: An Essay and Bibliography*, Ottawa: Information Canada, 1975, and Canada, Canadian Indian Rights Commission, *Indian Claims in Canada: Supplementary Bibliography*, Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1979.

See sections entitled "General reference", "U.S.A.", "Alaska", "Australia", "New Zealand", and "Eurasia".

-- Nelson H.H. Graburn and B.S. Strong. *Circumpolar Peoples: An Anthropological Perspective*. Pacific Palisades, Calif.: Goodyear Publishing, 1973.

-- J.G. Jorgensen and R.B. Lee, eds. "The new native resistance: indigenous peoples' struggles and the responsibilities of scholars". *MSS Modular Publications* (MSS Press, New York, N.Y., 1974) Module 6, pp. 1-40.

Includes a list of addresses of aboriginal organizations and non-native support groups (pp. 32-40).

-- Richard B. Lee and I. DeVore, eds. *Man the Hunter*. Chicago: Aldine Press, 1968.

-- Douglas E. Sanders. *The Formation of the World Council of Indigenous Peoples* (IWGIA Document 29). Copenhagen: International Work Group for Indigenous Affairs, 1977.

Current news on aboriginal affairs, including activities of the World Council of Indigenous Peoples, is found in various Canadian native periodicals, notably *The National Indian*, *The Nations' Ensign* and *The Saskatchewan Indian*. Material on recent native representations to international bodies (such as the United Nations, the International Court of Justice, and the Russell Tribunal) is found in the reference collections of the Assembly of First Nations (Ottawa) and the Native Law Centre (Saskatoon).

OTHER AIDS TO RESEARCH

Aside from sources listed elsewhere in this handbook, there are certain general reference books that are of special use in researching Canadian Indian history. Many of these are listed in Robert J. Surtees' valuable guide, Canadian Indian Policy: A Critical Bibliography (Bloomington, Ind.: Indiana University Press, 1982). Others are given below, under the following headings: (1) Canadian history generally, (2) Indian history generally, (3) regional Indian history, (4) historiography, ethnological approaches, and popular attitudes, (5) audio-visual material, (6) newspapers, and (7) research and style manuals.

1. CANADIAN HISTORY GENERALLY

America: History and Life. Santa Barbara, Calif., 1964- .

A yearly bibliography, with summaries of published books and articles, on North American history. Covers most of the major Canadian academic journals. See entries under "Canada" and "Indians". Can also be consulted by computer in some libraries. Entries on Indians dated between 1954 and 1972 have been published as: Dwight L. Smith, ed., Indians of the United States and Canada: A Bibliography (Santa Barbara: Clio Press, 1974).

Beers, Henry P. The French and British in the Old Northwest: A Bibliographical Guide to Archive and Manuscript Sources. Detroit: Wayne State University Press, 1964.

A detailed discussion of archival research sources, mainly for the period before 1812. Adequate basic description of Canadian materials.

Bishop, Olga B. Canadian Official Publications. Oxford: Pergamon Press, 1981.

A brief guide to the use of post-Confederation Canadian government publications (Hansard, Sessional Papers, Committee minutes, etc.). Guides to pre-Confederation colonial records are also available for some regions; e.g. O.B. Bishop's Publications of the Government of the Province of Canada 1841-1866 (Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1963), and others listed in M. Bhatia, Canadian Provincial Government Publications: Bibliography of Bibliographies (revised ed., Saskatoon: University of Saskatchewan Libraries, 1971).

Canada. Parliament. House of Commons. Debates (Also knows as "Hansard"). 1867- .

These include much important information on Indian Affairs after Confederation. Subject-indexed adequately in some years and superficially in others. Consult the subject indexes to the House of Commons Journals (the formal record of House proceedings) for further guidance.

Canadian Historical Review. Quarterly, Toronto, 1920- .

Published in each issue is a detailed list of academic publications in Canadian history, including native history. A similar (and sometimes more comprehensive) list is published in the Quebec periodical Revue d'histoire de l'Amérique francaise. See also McIlwraith, below, p. 203.

Canadian Periodical Index. Monthly and yearly, 1928- .

Subject index to articles on native people, covering popular magazines and some scholarly journals.

Colombo, John Robert. Colombo's Canadian References. Edmonton: Hurtig, 1974.

A desk-encyclopedia of facts on Canadian history and life.

Cook, Terry and Glenn T. Wright. Historical Records of the Government of Canada. Ottawa: Public Archives of Canada, Federal Archives Division, 1980.

Catalogue and brief description of each of the 128 groups of historic records of the Canadian government.

Cooke, Alan and C. Holland. The Exploration of Northern Canada 500 to 1920. A Chronology. Toronto: Arctic History Press, 1978.

A detailed chronology of events, year by year, including much information on Indian-white encounters.

Dictionary of Canadian Biography. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1966- . Volumes available to date: I-IV (1000-1800), IX-X (1861-1880), and an Index to volumes I-IV.

Includes biographies of prominent people. Each person is included in the volume for the date of his or her death. For the years not covered, substitute Story's Oxford Companion, below, or W.S. Wallace's Macmillan Dictionary of Canadian Biography (4th edition, Toronto: Macmillan, 1978).

Kerr, Donald G.G. Historical Atlas of Canada (3d edition). Don Mills, Ont.: Nelson, 1975.

Maps outlining Canadian territorial history, explorations, the fur trade, and Indian treaties. See also the National Atlas.

National Atlas of Canada (4th edition). Macmillan/Information Canada, 1974.

See especially maps under "Exploration" (pp. 71-80) and "Posts of the Canadian fur trade" (pp. 79-80). The 5th edition of the Atlas is being issued as separate unbound maps (Ottawa: Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Surveys and Mapping Branch, Geographical Services Division, 1978-). Only one map relevant to native people ("Indian and Inuit Communities...", listed below) has yet appeared in this series.

Public Archives of Canada. Manuscript Division. General Inventory — Manuscripts (Vols. 1-5 and 7-8). Ottawa: Information Canada, 1971-1977.

Catalogues and guides to the major non-governmental records in the PAC. Divided up as follows: Volume 1, MG-1 to 10 (records from French archives; documents on New France and Quebec up to the 20th century; Canadian provincial and local records; records of foreign governments). Volume 2, MG-11 to MG-16 (various records from British government archives). Volume 3, MG-17 to MG-21 (Church archives; records predating 1760; various fur-trade records; Hudson's Bay Company records). Volume 4, MG-22 to MG-25 (autographs; genealogy records; records dated from 1760 to 1867). Volume 5, MG-26, 27 and 28 (papers of the prime ministers and other politicians from Confederation to 1950; records of post-Confederation corporate bodies). Volume 7, MG-29 (various records, 1867-1900). Volume 8, MG-30 (various records, 1900-1950). For other PAC guides see Cook, above, and McCardle, below.

A Reader's Guide to Canadian History. (2 volumes). Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1982. (Volume 1: Beginnings to Confederation, ed. by D.A. Muise. Volume 2: Confederation to the Present, ed. by J.L. Granatstein and P. Stevens).

The best short bibliography of published works on Canadian history, with critical discussions.

Sills, D.L., ed. International Encyclopedia of the Social Sciences (17 vols.) N.Y.: Macmillan/Free Press, 1968.

Explains and discusses approaches and technical terms used by anthropologists and sociologists.

Story, Norah, ed. The Oxford Companion to Canadian History and Literature, and William Toye, ed. Supplement to the Oxford Companion.... Toronto: Oxford University Press, 1967 and 1973.

A useful desk encyclopedia for general reference; more detailed than Colombo (above).

Thibault, Claude. Bibliographia Canadiana. Don Mills, Ont.: Longman Canada, 1973.

The most complete single bibliography on Canadian history. No annotations. Update it by using current lists in the Canadian Historical Review, Revue d'histoire de l'Amérique francaise, or America: History and Life, described above.

Union List of Manuscripts in Canadian Repositories (2nd edition). Ottawa: Public Archives of Canada, 1975; also three Supplements, published 1977, 1979 and 1982.

Detailed list of unpublished manuscript records in archives across Canada. See subject index under "Indians" or names of particular groups and individuals.

2. INDIAN HISTORY

A number of popular general "dictionaries" and "encyclopedias" of Indian history and life are available. With one exception -- see under Sturtevant, below -- these tend to be incomplete, unreliable or focused primarily on the United States. Thus none are specifically recommended here.

Abler, Thomas S. et al. A Canadian Indian Bibliography 1960-1970. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1974.

Poorly indexed but comprehensive for its period. Use in conjunction with the current bibliographies listed above.

About Indians: A Listing of Books (4th edition). Ottawa: Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, 1977.

Short reviews of over 1400 works of fiction and non-fiction for children and adults on Canadian and American Indians, Inuit, and Métis. Includes recommendations on age-ranges and use in teaching. Available free from the Publications Section, DIAND, Ottawa. Two similar guides with more detailed critical content are Mary Jo Lass-Woodfin's Books on American Indians and Eskimos. A Selection Guide for Children and Young Adults (Chicago: American Library Association, 1978) and Anna Lee Stensland's Literature By and About the American Indian: An Annotated Bibliography for Junior and Senior High School Students (Urbana, Ill.: National Council of Teachers of English, 1973).

Bishop, C.A. "Archival sources and the culture history of the Indians of the eastern Subarctic". Canadian Review of Sociology and Anthropology (1975) vol. 12(3): 244-251.

A short review of manuscript sources, with remarks on techniques of interpretation; applicable to research in Canada generally.

Canada. Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development. Indian Conditions: A Survey. Ottawa: DIAND, 1980.

Statistical survey of all aspects of Indian life today. Some of the figures are controversial, but the volume can be used with caution for general reference.

Canada. Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development. Indian-Inuit Affairs Program. Program Reference Centre. A Catalogue of Statistical Data in the Program Reference Centre. Ottawa: DIAND. (Issued annually; last edition, March 1982, forthcoming).

Lists federal statistical information available on various aspects of Indian life, including population, economy, lands, and education. Most of the material is dated 1956 or later.

Canada. Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development. Indian-Inuit Affairs Program. Corporate Policy, Research Branch. Linguistic and Cultural Affiliations of Canadian Indian Bands. (Revised edition). Ottawa: DIAND, 1980.

The only complete list of federally-recognized Indian bands today, with approximate populations and nominal ethnic affiliation. For lists of lands occupied by these groups, see page 55 of this handbook under "Reserve lands and resources".

Canada. Matters in Dispute Between the Dominion and Ontario. Joint Report to the Superintendent General of Indian Affairs by Messrs. McKenna and Rimmer... Ottawa: Government Printing Bureau, 1901.

A summary of twenty Ontario Indian claims involving Treaty land and annuity rights, establishment and surrender of reserves, and Band funds, originating in the period 1820-1900. These cases provide very useful background information on otherwise undocumented subjects. Should be used with the supporting archival and legal documents, which were presented to a federal Board of Arbitration established to settle claims between Canada, Ontario and Quebec. These papers were printed separately as a series of legal submissions, under the general title In the Matter of the Arbitration Between the Dominion of Canada, the Province of Canada, and the Provinces of Ontario and Quebec... (var. pubs., 1894-c. 1897). Portions of these documents are available in the Treaties and Historical Research Centre, DIAND, Ottawa; the Public Archives of Canada, RG-10, volumes 2545-47, files 111834-1 to 111834-3; the National Library of Canada, Government Documents Section; the National Library of Canada, Canadian Indian Rights Collection; and the Ontario Archives (Toronto), Aemilius Irving Papers. The activities of the Board are described in R.C. Daniel, A History of Native Claims Processes in Canada... (Ottawa: DIAND, 1980) pages 56-62.

Canada. Geographic Board. *Handbook of Indians of Canada*. (Originally issued as the Appendix to the 10th Report of the Geographic Board of Canada). Ottawa: King's Printer, 1913; reprinted, Toronto: Coles, 1971.

A "dictionary" of Canadian Indian groups and cultural features. Inaccurate and outdated in some respects, it should not be used as the sole reference in any project. It remains useful, however, for its glossary identifying groups by their Indian or alternative names, and for its detailed references to sources. A similar but much shorter and somewhat more reliable catalogue is on pp. 544-608 of John R. Swanton's *The Indian Tribes of North America* (Bulletin of the Bureau of American Ethnology No. 145) Washington: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1952. Where possible, use Sturtevant's *Handbook of North American Indians* along with these books.

Canada. Indian and Inuit Communities and Languages. Map, extracted from the *National Atlas of Canada* (5th edition), Ottawa: Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Surveys and Mapping Branch, 1981.

Despite a few errors in the identification of ethnic groups, this is the best available map for the location of Canadian Indian communities. Copies can be obtained from the Treaties and Historical Research Centre, DIAND, Ottawa.

Canadian Journal of Anthropology, Edmonton, 1980- . (Formerly *Western Canadian Journal of Anthropology*, 1969-1979).

Articles on Canadian Indian society and history, including archaeology.

Canadian Journal of Native Studies. Brandon, Man., 1980- .

Articles on all aspects of Canadian Indian life.

Cumming, Peter A. and N.H. Mickenberg, eds. *Native Rights in Canada*. (2nd edition). Toronto: General Publishing Co., 1972.

Outdated in many respects, but still the best single source on Canadian native law.

Daniel, Richard C. *A History of Native Claims Processes in Canada 1867-1979*. Ottawa: Tyler, Wright and Daniel Ltd./DIAND, Research Branch, 1980.

Dockstader, Frederick J. and A.W. Dockstader. *The American Indian in Graduate Studies: A Bibliography of Theses and Dissertations* (2 volumes; 2d edition). N.Y.: Museum of the American Indian, Heye Foundation, 1973-74.

A list of unpublished academic theses, 1890-1970. See also Malycky and Nickerson, below.

Fisher, Robin. "Historical writing on native people in Canada". *The History and Social Science Teacher* (1982) vol. 17(2):65-72.

A general review, mainly of recent work.

"Glossary of Indian tribal names" [title varies]. *Dictionary of Canadian Biography*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1966-79, vol. I pp. 12-16 (1000 to 1700); vol. II pp. xxvi - xli (1701 to 1740); vol. III pp. xxxi - xlii (1741 to 1770); and vol. IV pp. 1 - lvii (1771 to 1800).

Good short descriptions and short histories of contemporary Indian peoples for each period separately. Organized alphabetically by name of group.

Haas, M.L. "A basic guide to reference sources for the study of the North American Indian". *Reference Services Review* (1979) vol. 7(3): 15-35.

An excellent detailed review and commentary on the major academic reference aids. Focuses on USA, but should not be ignored by Canadian researchers.

Harvard University. Peabody Museum of Archaeology and Ethnology. Library. Catalogue of the Library (and various Supplements) 71 volumes. Boston: G.K. Hall, 1963-1972.

Useful for locating rare, unpublished and early items; similar to the Huntington, Newberry, and Glenbow catalogues, below.

Hawthorn, H.B., ed. A Survey of the Contemporary Indians of Canada. A Report on Economic, Political, Educational Needs and Policies. (2 vols.) Ottawa: Indian Affairs Branch, 1966-67.

The so-called Hawthorn-Tremblay Report. A detailed review of Indian conditions, with recommendations for government action. For background, see Ponting 1980 and Weaver 1981 (below).

Herman, K. et al. 1981-1982 Guide to Departments of Sociology, Anthropology and Archaeology in Universities and Museums in Canada. (National Museum of Man, Mercury Series, Directorate Paper No. 2). Ottawa: National Museums of Canada, 1982.

Lists scholars and institutions involved in research relating to native peoples.

Hertzberg, Hazel W. The Search for an American Indian Identity: Modern Pan-Indian Movements. Syracuse, N.Y.: Syracuse University Press, 1971.

A useful introduction to modern Indian political and intellectual history.

Hodge, William. A Bibliography of Contemporary North American Indians. N.Y.: Interland Publishing, 1976.

Focuses on United States Indians after 1945, but refers to basic sources on Canada and on earlier periods. The only bibliography that evaluates sources and suggests research plans within each subject area.

Huntington Free Library and Reading Room, N.Y. Dictionary Catalogue of the American Indian Collection (4 vols.) Boston: G.K. Hall, 1977.

List of early and scarce published items, overlapping the Harvard, Newbury and Glenbow catalogues.

Index to Literature on the American Indian (4 volumes to date). San Francisco: Indian Historian Press, 1971-75.

Lists much non-academic material not catalogued elsewhere, with some Canadian items. Volumes are available for 1970, 1971, 1972 and 1973; a fifth volume covering 1973-80 is said to be forthcoming.

Kehoe, Alice B. North American Indians: A Comprehensive Account. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall, 1981.

A good general ethnology, including material on Canada.

Leacock, Eleanor B. and N.O. Lurie. The North American Indians in Historical Perspective. N.Y.: Random House, 1971.

A good collection of overviews. Includes Canadian material on the Maritimes, Iroquois, Subarctic and Plains peoples.

Malycky, A. "University research on Canada's Indians and Métis: a preliminary checklist" and "University research ... first supplement", Canadian Ethnic Studies (1970) vol. 2(1):95-107 and (1973) vol. 5(1-2): 153-182.

Lists unpublished academic theses not covered in Dockstader or Nickerson.

McCardle, Bennett. Archival Records Relating to Native People in the Public Archives of Canada, The National Library of Canada and The National Museum of Man: A Researcher's Guide. Ottawa: Treaties and Historical Research Centre, Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development; forthcoming 1983.

McIlwraith, T.F. "Recent publications relating to Canada: ... Ethnology, Anthropology and Archaeology" (title varies). Canadian Historical Review, annually, various pagings, from vol. 6 no. 4 (1925) to vol. 35 no. 1 (1954). Continued as "Bibliography of Canadian Anthropology" (title varies slightly) in: Canada, Annual Report of the National Museum of Man for 1954 (National Museum Bulletin 142) and for 1955 (Bulletin 147); thereafter in National Museum of Man, Contributions to Anthropology for 1956-1957 (Bulletin 162), for 1958 (Bulletin 167), for 1959 (Bulletin 173), for 1960 (Bulletin 190), for 1961 (Bulletin 194) and for 1962 (Bulletin 204).

Bibliographies of current ethnological writings, 1925-62. Valuable for their detailed critical annotations.

Murdock, George Peter. Ethnographic Bibliography of North America (5 volumes; 4th edition). New Haven: HRAF Press, 1975.

The best single list of ethnological writing on Canadian Indian peoples. Covers some of the related historical primary and secondary material.

Newberry Library, Chicago. Edward E. Ayer Collection. Dictionary Catalogue of the Edward E. Ayer Collection of Americana and American Indians in the Newberry Library (16 volumes). Boston: G.K. Hall, 1961-1970.

Nickerson, Gifford S. Native North Americans in Doctoral Disserations: A Classified and Indexed Research Bibliography (Council of Planning Librarians, Bibliography no. 1232). Monticello, Ill.: Council of Planning Librarians, 1977.

Covers items for 1971-1975 not in Dockstader or Malycky.

Ponting, J. Rick and R. Gibbins. Out Of Irrelevance: A Socio-Political Introduction to Indian Affairs in Canada. Toronto: Butterworths, 1980.

Sealock, R.B. Bibliography of Place-Name Literature -- United States and Canada (2nd edition). Chicago: American Library Association, 1967.

Includes material on Indian geographical terms. For a short Canadian-oriented bibliography and dictionary, see William B. Hamilton, The Macmillan Book of Canadian Place Names (Toronto: Macmillan of Canada, 1978).

Social Sciences Citation Index. Annual, c. 1974- .

A very extensive general index covering published anthropological (and some historical) works on Amerindians. Complex and cumbersome to use, but comprehensive.

Spencer, Robert F. et al., The Native Americans (2nd ed.). N.Y.: Harper and Row, 1977.

A good general ethnology. See also Kehoe.

Sturtevant, William, gen. ed. Handbook of North American Indians (20 vols.). Washington: Smithsonian Institution, 1978- .

The most complete available roundup of material on the native peoples of north America. Now available on Canadian groups are volume 6 (Subarctic, ed. June Helm) and volume 15 (Northeast, ed. Bruce Trigger; includes southern Ontario, Quebec and the Maritimes). Future volumes will include: Volume 1, General introduction and summary of issues for North America, 2, Contemporary conditions; 3, Environment, origins and populations; 4, History of Indian-white relations; 5, Arctic; 7, Northwest Coast; 13, Plains; 16, Technology and arts; 17, Languages; 18-19, Biographies; and 20, Index.

United States. Department of the Interior. Library. *Biographical and Historical Index of American Indians and Persons Involved in Indian Affairs* (8 volumes). Boston: G.K. Hall, 1966.

A subject and biographical index to a wide variety of manuscript and published materials. Includes many Canadian references, mainly pre-Confederation.

Weaver, S.M. *Making Canadian Indian Policy: The Hidden Agenda 1968-1970*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1981.

Whiteside, Don (Sin a paw). *Aboriginal People: A Selected Bibliography...* Ottawa: National Indian Brotherhood, 1973.

Covers unpublished and ephemeral items (newsclippings, speeches, position papers, etc.) not listed elsewhere. Continued in Whiteside's *Indians, Indians, Indians: A Selected Bibliography and Research Guide* (unpublished typescript; 3 volumes, Ottawa, February 1979, available in the Library of the Department of Indian Affairs, Ottawa). A portion of the items indexed in these bibliographies are found in the "Whiteside Collection", housed with the National Library of Canada's Canadian Indian Rights Collection in Ottawa.

Whiteside, Don. *Contemporary Indian Protests. Reference Aids. Bibliographies* (3 vols.) Ottawa: National Indian Brotherhood, 1973.

Lists newspaper articles relating to various major Indian political protests and related activities, 1965 to 1973.

Whiteside, Don (Sin a paw) and S.D. Whiteside. "Articles pertaining to Indians in the *Globe* [Toronto], 1844 to 1867 — annotated". Unpublished typescript, Ottawa: Aboriginal Institute of Canada, April 1981. Available in the Library of the Department of Indian Affairs, Ottawa.

3. REGIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHIES

For other references on specific regions, consult the *Reader's Guide to Canadian History* and the Abler, Murdock and Surtees bibliographies, listed above.

The North

Arctic Bibliography (16 volumes to date). Washington, D.C.: Government Printing Office, 1953- .

Very detailed list, including social, political and technological references.

Arctic Institute of North America. Library. *Catalogue of the Library of the Arctic Institute of North America* (4 volumes) Boston: G.K. Hall, 1968, and *First Supplement*, 1971.

Boreal Institute for Northern Studies. *Northern Studies — KWIC Index*. Edmonton: Boreal Institute, University of Alberta, 1979-c. 1982.

Lists current published and unpublished material on all Northern issues.

Burch, E.S. "The ethnography of northern North America: a guide to recent research". *Arctic Anthropology* (1979) vol. 16(1):62-146.

Canada. Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development. Northern Social Research Division. Current and Recent Research and Studies Relating to Northern Social Concerns. Ottawa: DIAND, 1978- . (Available to date: volumes I, II, and III parts 1-2; pub. nos. NSRD 78-1, 79-1, 79-2 and 80-1).

Lists and summarizes current research projects on sociological, historical, linguistic, legal and other topics.

De la Barre, K. et al. Northern Population Bibliography - Canada. (2 vols.) Vol. 1, Calgary: Arctic Institute of North America, 1978; Vol. 2, Montreal: Committee on Northern Population Research, ASTIS Occasional Publication No. 5, 1980.

A general bibliography, with emphasis on society and demography.

Devine, Maria, ed. NWT Data Book 1982-83. Yellowknife: Outcrop Ltd. 1982.

A general handbook of facts on the Northwest Territories.

Helm, June, ed. Handbook of North American Indians. Volume 6: Subarctic. Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian Institution, 1981.

Detailed essays on the Dené, Cree and other peoples of the Yukon, the N.W.T., and the northern parts of British Columbia, the Prairie provinces, Ontario, Quebec and Labrador. Covers history, society, language and contemporary political developments. For a shorter bibliography and discussion of sources used in the Handbook, see June Helm's The Indians of The Subarctic: A Critical Bibliography (Bloomington, Ind.: Indiana University Press, 1976).

Krech, S. "Northern Athapaskan ethnology: an annotated bibliography of published materials, 1970-79". Arctic Anthropology (1980) vol. 17(2): 68-105.

Lanari, R. Northwest Territories Community Bibliography (NRD pub. 76-2). Ottawa: Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, Northern Research Division, 1976.

Includes published and archival material. Organized by name of community.

Millar, J.F.V. and A.M. Ervin. A Status Report and Bibliography of Cultural Studies in the Canadian Arctic to 1976 (The Musk-Ox, special publication). Saskatoon: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies, 1981.

Includes material on Subarctic and Arctic Indian and Inuit peoples.

Poppe, Roger. Kutchin Bibliography. An Annotated Bibliography of Northern Yukon Kutchin Indians. Edmonton: Canadian Wildlife Service, 1971.

Yukon Bibliography. (5 volumes). First volume ed. by Jim Lotz, pub. Ottawa: Northern Co-Ordination and Research Centre, Department of Northern Affairs and National Resources, 1964; four Updates (to 1970, 1973, 1975 and 1979 respectively) pub. Edmonton: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies, University of Alberta, 1971-1980.

Zaslow, Morris. The Opening of the Canadian North, 1870-1914. Toronto: McClelland & Stewart, 1971.

Eastern Canada (general)

Minnesota Historical Society. Chippewa and Dakota Indians: A Subject Catalogue of Books, Pamphlets, Periodical Articles and Manuscripts in the Minnesota Historical Society. St. Paul, Minn.: MHS, 1969.

O'Callaghan, Edmund B., ed. *Documents Relating to the Colonial History of the State of New York*. (15 vols.). Albany: Weed, Parsons and Co., 1853-1887.

Reprints of important archival material relating to eastern Canada generally.

Parent, R. "Inventaire des nations amérindiennes au début du XVIIe siècle". *Recherches Amérindiennes au Québec* (1978) vol. 7(3-4):5-19.

Covers the Maritimes, Quebec and Southern Ontario.

Quinn, David B. *Sources for the Ethnography of Northeastern North America To 1611*. (National Museum of Man Mercury Series, Canadian Ethnology Service Paper 76). Ottawa: National Museums of Canada, 1981.

A catalogue and summary of about 60 major manuscripts and other primary sources, with annotations.

Schoolcraft, Henry Rowe, ed. *Information Respecting The History, Condition and Prospects of the Indian Tribes of the United States...* (6 vols.). Philadelphia: U.S. Bureau of Ethnology, Bulletin #152; reprinted 1969.

A miscellany of historical and ethnological information of varying worth, including much material relating to Canadian Indians, especially those of southern Ontario. A subject index has been published separately.

Tanner, Helen H. *The Ojibwas: A Critical Bibliography*. Bloomington, Ind.: Indiana University Press, 1978.

Includes discussion of the literature.

Thwaites, Reuben G., ed. *The Jesuit Relations and Allied Documents: Travels and Explorations of the Jesuit Missionaries in New France, 1610-1791*. (73 vols.) Cleveland: Burrows Brothers, 1896-1901, reprinted New York: Pageant Press, 1959.

Reprints of early white missionaries' observations on the native peoples of eastern Canada.

Trigger, Bruce G., ed. *Handbook of North American Indians. Volume 15: Northeast*. Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian Institution, 1978.

The best single source-book on eastern Canadian Indian peoples, with detailed essays on the history, society, language and current politics of the Huron, Iroquois, Delaware, Ojibwa, Ottawa, Algonkin and other peoples.

Weinman, Paul L. *A Bibliography of the Iroquoian Literature*. N.Y. State Museum and Science Service, Bulletin 411). Albany, N.Y.: University of the State of New York, State Education Department, 1969.

The Maritimes

Gould, Gary P. and A.J. Semple, eds. *Our Land: The Maritimes. The Basis of the Indian Claim in the Maritime Provinces of Canada*. Fredericton: Saint Annes Point Press, 1980.

Hamilton, W.D. and W.A. Spray. *Source Materials Relating to the New Brunswick Indians*. Fredericton: Hamray Books, 1977.

Harrison, Michael R. *An Evaluative Ethno-historical Bibliography of the Malecite Indians*. (National Museum of Man, Mercury Series, Ethnology Division paper no. 16.) Ottawa: National Museums of Canada, 1974.

McGee, Harold F. "Ethnographic bibliography of northeastern North America". In: *Three Atlantic Bibliographis*. (Occasional Papers in Anthropology no. 1) Halifax: St. Mary's University, Department of Anthropology, 1975.

Covers the Abenaki, Malecite/Passamaquoddy, Micmac, Penobscot and Beothuk.

McGee, Harold F. "No longer neglected: a decade of writing concerning the native peoples of the Maritimes". *Acadiensis* (1980) vol. 10(1): 135-142.

Morley, W.F.E. *The Atlantic Provinces*. (Volume 1 of *Canadian Local Histories to 1950: A Bibliography*). Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1967.

Ray, R.B. *The Indians of Maine and the Atlantic Provinces: A Bibliographical Guide*. Portland, Me.: University of Maine Press, 1977.

Taylor, H.A. *New Brunswick History: A Checklist of Secondary Sources*. Fredericton, N.B.: Provincial Archives of New Brunswick, 1971; also *First Supplement*, comp. Erich L. Swanick, Fredericton: Legislative Library, 1974.

Union of Nova Scotia Indians. *Bibliography of the Micmac Indians of Nova Scotia and Related Materials Thereto*. Sydney, N.S.: UNSI, 1974.

Quebec and Labrador

Aubin, Paul. *Bibliographie de l'histoire du Québec et du Canada 1966-1975* (tomes I-II). Montréal: Institut québecois de recherche sur la culture, 1981.

Covers historical writing published between 1966 and 1975; further volumes are planned.

Beaulieu, A. and W.F.E. Morley, eds., *La province du Québec*. (Volume 2 of *Canadian Local Histories to 1950: A Bibliography*). Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1971.

Bibliographie du Québec. Québec: Bibliothèque Nationale du Québec, quarterly (later monthly), 1969- .

Cooke, Alan and Fabien Caron, comp. *Bibliographie de la péninsule du Québec-Labrador/Bibliography of the Québec-Labrador Peninsula* (2 vols.) Boston: G.K. Hall, 1968.

Deer, A. Brian. *Bibliography of the Cree, Montagnais and Naskapi Indians*. Rupert House, Que.: Cree Way Project, 1974.

Dominique, Richard. *Bibliographie thématique sur les Montagnais-Nascapi*. Québec: Ministère des affairs culturelles, 1976.

Durocher, René et P.-A. Linteau. *Histoire du Québec: bibliographie sélective (1867-1970)*. Trois Rivières: Editions Boréal Express, 1970.

Feit, H. et al. "La Baie James des amérindiens. Bibliographie". *Recherches Amérindiennes au Québec* (1972) vol. 2(3):3-62; see also supplement in *Recherches Amérindiennes au Québec* (1976) vol. 6(1):61-64.

Includes French and English works on the native people of James Bay.

Fried, Jacob, ed. *A Survey of the Aboriginal Populations of Quebec and Labrador*. (Eastern Canadian Anthropological Series no. 1). Montreal: McGill University, 1955.

Includes a bibliography.

Guide des sources d'archives sur le Canada francais, au Canada. Ottawa: Archives publiques du Canada, 1975.

A good short guide to archival materials on the history of Quebec and French Canada.

Recherches Amérindiennes au Québec. Quarterly, Montreal, 1971- .

Prints articles on all aspects of Quebec native history and society.

Smith, Donald B. *Le Sauvage: The Native People in Quebec Historical Writing*. (National Museum of Man, Mercury Series, History Division Paper 6) Ottawa: National Museums of Canada, 1974.

The bibliography (pp. 106-131) lists and discusses major historical works on Quebec Indian peoples.

Tremblay, M.-A. "Les études amérindiennes au Québec, 1960-1981: état des travaux et principales tendances". *Culture* (1982) vol. 2(1): 83-106.

Reviews ethnological, political and some historical publications.

Ontario

See the section on Eastern Canada (above) for further references.

Bishop, Olga B. *Bibliography of Ontario History, 1867-1976* (2 volumes; revised edition). Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1980.

Continued in the *Ontario Historical Society Annual Bibliography of Ontario History* (Sudbury: Laurentian University, 1980-).

Russell, Victor L., ed. *Ontario's Heritage: A Guide to Archival Resources* (15 volumes; 4 available to date). Toronto: Toronto Area Archivists Group, 1978- .

Detailed region-by-region lists of archival collections.

Spencer, Loraine and S. Holland. *Northern Ontario. A Bibliography*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1968.

Weslager, C.A. *The Delawares: A Critical Bibliography*. Bloomington, Ind.: Indiana University Press, 1978.

Western Canada (general) and Prairie Provinces

Arora, Ved. *The Saskatchewan Bibliography*. Regina: Saskatchewan Provincial Library, 1980.

Artibise, Alan F.J. *Western Canada Since 1870: A Select Bibliography.* Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press, 1978.

Glenbow-Alberta Institute. *Catalogue of the Glenbow Historical Library, The Glenbow-Alberta Institute Library, Calgary, Alberta* (4 vols.) Boston: G.K. Hall, 1973.

Hoebel, E.A. *The Plains Indians: A Critical Bibliography*. Bloomington, Ind.: Indiana University Press, 1977.

Includes a discussion of the literature. Concentrates on the U.S. Plains.

Hoover, Herbert T. *The Sioux: A Critical Bibliography*. Bloomington, Ind.: Indiana University Press, 1979.

See also Canadian items in the more extensive *Bibliography of the Sioux* by Jack Marken and H.T. Hoover (Metuchen, N.J.: Scarecrow Press, 1980).

Peel, Bruce B. *Bibliography of the Prairie Province to 1953* (revised edition). Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1973.

"A selected bibliography on the native peoples of western Canada since the 'making' of the Treaties". In: Ian A.L. Getty and D.B. Smith, eds., *One Century Later: Western Canadian Reserve Indians Since Treaty 7*. Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press, 1978, pp. 139-149.

The best list of basic references for the native people of the Prairie provinces.

Smith, Dwight L., ed. *The American and Canadian West. A Bibliography*. Santa Barbara; Calif.: Clio Press, 1979.

Abstracts from *America: History and Life*, 1964-73.

British Columbia

A Bibliography of British Columbia (3 volumes). Victoria: Social Sciences Research Council/University of Victoria, 1968-75.

For additional items and updates, see the "Bibliography of British Columbia" printed in the journal *BC Studies* (annual, 1968 to present).

Duff, Wilson et al. "A selected bibliography of anthropology of British Columbia". *BC Studies* (1973) vol. 19: 73-121.

Fisher, Robin. *Contact and Conflict: Indian-European Relations in British Columbia, 1774-1890*. Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press, 1977: "Bibliography", pp. 213-239.

Grumet, R.S. *Native Americans of the Northwest Coast: A Critical Bibliography*. Bloomington, Ind.: Indiana University Press, 1980.

Hoover, Alan L., comp. *A Selection of Publications on the Indians of British Columbia* (revised edition). Victoria: B.C. Provincial Museum, 1982.

A good basic list, annotated for the general reader.

Madill, Dennis. *Select Annotated Bibliography of British Columbia Indian Policy and Land Claims*. Ottawa: Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, Research Branch - Corporate Policy, 1982.

The United States

Brown, Dee. *Bury My Heart at Wounded Knee. An Indian History of the American West*. New York: Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1970.

Debo, Angie. *A History of the Indians of the United States*. Norman, Okla.: University of Oklahoma Press, 1970.

Prucha, Francis Paul. *A Bibliographical Guide to the History of Indian-White Relations in the United States*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1977.

The most complete single list of sources for U.S. Indian history, including Canadian material. Covers both published and archival sources. Some commentary.

Prucha, Francis Paul. *United States Indian Policy: A Critical Bibliography*. Bloomington, Ind.: Indiana University Press, 1977.

A short list with discussion and evaluation of the major sources.

Prucha, Francis Paul. Indian Policy In The United States: Historical Essays. Lincoln/London: University of Nebraska Press, 1981.

Spicer, Edward H. A Short History of the Indians of the United States. N.Y.: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1969.

Washburn, Wilcomb E., ed. The American Indian and the United States. A Documentary History (4 vols.). N.Y.: Random House, 1973.

4. HISTORIOGRAPHY, ETHNOLOGY, AND POPULAR ATTITUDES

Much has been written recently on the historiography of native studies in North America; that is, about the special approaches used by scholars, and the biases and prejudices found in historical, anthropological, and popular works about Indian people. (This includes works by Indians as well as by non-Indians.) A selection of Canadian items is listed here, along with related studies comparing North American Indian history to that of other aboriginal peoples, and works discussing the teaching of "native studies" in Canadian schools. For further sources on North America generally, see bibliographies attached to the items by Axtell, Dominique, Jaenen and Porter.

Adams, Howard. Prison of Grass: Canada From a Native Point of View. Toronto: New Press, 1975.

Allan, Robert J. Native Studies in Canada: A Research Guide. Ottawa: Treaties and Historical Research Centre, Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, 1982.

A catalogue of native studies programs and resource centres in Canada.

Anthropology and the American Indian. Report of a Symposium ... at the Meetings of the American Anthropological Association ... 1970. San Francisco: Indian Historian Press, 1973.

See further material on this symposium in The American Indian Reader: Anthropology (San Francisco: Indian Historian Press, 1972).

Arcand, B. et al. "L'imagerie des Amérindiens". Recherches Amérindiennes au Québec (1980) vol. 10(1-2):132-135, vol. 10(3):202-208; 1981 vol. 10(4):278-285; vol. 11(1):96; vol. 11(2):172-176 and subsequent issues.

Picture essays and correspondence on Indians in popular culture in Canada.

Arcand, B. et S. Vincent. "Il y a un dessein dans le Boréal Express". Recherches Amérindiennes au Québec (1979) vol. 8(3):203-212.

Analysis of a popular cartoon series involving Indians.

Axtell, James. The European and the Indian: Essays in the Ethnohistory of Colonial North America. New York: Oxford University Press, 1981.

Baker, D.G. "Color, culture and power: Indian-white relations in Canada and America". Canadian Review of American Studies (1972) vol. 3(1):1-8.

Barron, Pamela P. "The characterization of native Americans in children's and young adults' fiction with a contemporary setting by native American and non-native American authors: a content analysis". Ph.D. thesis, Florida State University, 1981.

Bataille, Gretchen M. and C.L.P. Silet, eds. The Pretend Indians. Images of Native Americans in the Movies. Ames, Iowa: Iowa State University Press, 1980.

Berton, Pierre. Hollywood's Canada. The Americanization Of Our National Image. Toronto: McClelland & Stewart, 1975.

Discusses portrayal of Canadian native peoples in American films.

Bouchard, S. "Faux combats, tristes arènes: réflexion critique sur l'amérindianisme d'aujourd'hui". Recherches Amérindiennes au Québec (1979) vol. 9(3):183-193.

See commentary by A. Balicki in Recherches Amérindiennes au Québec (1980) vol. 10(1-2): 124.

Cardinal, Harold. The Unjust Society. Edmonton: Hurtig, 1969.

______________. The Rebirth of Canada's Indians. Edmonton: Hurtig, 1977.

______________. "Treaties Six and Seven: the next century". In: Ian A.L. Getty, and D.B. Smith, eds. One Century Later.... Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press, 1978, pp. 132-138.

Carney, R. "The native-wilderness equation. Catholic and other school orientations in the western Arctic". Study Sessions of the Canadian Catholic Historical Association (1981):61-78.

Cauthers, Janet H. "The North American Indian as portrayed by American and Canadian historians 1830-1930". Ph.D. thesis, University of Washington, 1974.

Chamberlin, J.E. The Harrowing of Eden: White Attitudes Toward North American Natives. Toronto: Fitzhenry and Whiteside, 1975.

Handles historical data in a questionable manner, but draws interesting comparisons between historical developments in Canada and the USA.

Clifton, J.A. "The tribal history -- an obsolete paradigm". American Indian Culture and Research Journal (1979) vol. 3(4):81-100.

Crow, L.D. "An argument" [on the writing of "Indian" history]. Kainai News, Standoff, Alta. (November 1980) vol. 13(22):14.

Dickason, O.P. "The concept of l'homme sauvage and early French colonialism in the Americas". Revue francaise d'histoire d'outremer (1977) vol. 64(234): 5-32.

______________. "Europeans and Amerindians: some comparative aspects of early contact". Canadian Historical Association, Historical Papers (1979): 182-202.

Dominique, R. et R.F. Trudel. "Bibliographie sur les relations entre anthropologie et histoire et sur l'ethnohistoire". Recherches Amérindiennes au Québec (1978) vol. 7(3-4): 120-122.

A good basic bibliography on the use of ethnohistorical methods in historical research. Includes sources in English and French.

Ewers, John C. "Indian views of the white man prior to 1850: an interpretation". In: Daniel Tyler, ed. Red Men and Hat-Wearers. Viewpoints In Indian History. Fort Collins, Colo.: Colorado State University, 1976, pp. 25-45.

Fisher, Robin. "Impact of European settlement on the indigenous peoples of Australia, New Zealand and British Columbia: some comparative dimensions". Canadian Ethnic Studies (1980) vol. 12(1):1-14.

______________. "Indian warfare and two frontiers: a comparison of British Columbia and Washington Territory during the early years of settlement". Pacific Historical Review (1981) vol. 50:31-51.

Fowlie, Irene. "Indian literature in high school English programs in Canada". M.Ed. thesis, University of Calgary, 1972.

Fowler, Carol Ann, "The portrayal of North American Indians in three series of Canadian social studies trade books". M.Ed. thesis, University of Calgary, 1971.

Gibbins, R. and J.R. Ponting. "Prairie Canadians' orientations towards Indians" In: I.A.L. Getty and D.B. Smith, eds. One Century Later... Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press, 1978, pp. 82-102.

Green, Rayna D. "The only good Indian: the images of Indians in American vernacular culture". Ph.D. thesis, University of Indiana, 1973.

Guillemin, J. "The politics of national integration: a comparison of United States and Canadian Indian administrations". Social Problems (1978) vol. 25(3):319-332.

Hagan, W.T. "Archival captive -- the American Indian". The American Archivist (1978) vol. 41(2):135, 139.

Haycock, Ronald G. The Image of the Indian. The Canadian Indian as a Subject and a Concept in a Sampling of the Popular National Magazines Read in Canada 1900-1970. Waterloo, Ont.: Waterloo Lutheran University, 1971.

Healy, G.R. "The French Jesuits and the idea of the noble savage". William and Mary Quarterly, 3rd series (1958) vol. 15: 143-167.

Heyser, R.G. and L. Smith. "Public library service to native Americans in Canada and the continental United States". Library Trends (1980) vol. 29:353-368.

Hirschfelder, A.B. "The treatment of Iroquois Indians in selected American history textbooks". The Indian Historian (1975) vol. 8(2):31-39.

Hughes, J.D. "The de-racialization of historical atlases: a modest proposal". The Indian Historian (1974) vol. 7(3):55-56.

Jaenen, Cornelius. Friend and Foe: Aspects of French-Amerindian Cultural Contact in the Sixteenth and Seventeenth Centuries. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart, 1976.

______________. "Conceptual frameworks for French views of America and Amerindians". French Colonial Studies (1978) no. 2:1-22.

______________. "France and the New World: some neglected writers and views". Revue de l'Université d'Ottawa/University of Ottawa Quarterly (1978) vol. 48(1-2):116-123.

______________. "French attitudes toward native society". In: Carol Judd and A.J. Ray, eds. Old Trails and New Directions.... Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1979, pp. 59-72.

______________. "'Les sauvages amériquains': persistence into the 18th century of traditional French concepts and constructs for comprehending Amerindians". Ethnohistory (forthcoming).

Jennings, Francis. The Invasion of America: Indians, Colonials and the Cant of Conquest. Chapel Hill, N.C.: University of North Carolina Press, 1975.

La Roque, Emma. Defeathering the Indian. Agincourt, Ont.: Book Society of Canada, 1975.

Lurie, Nancy O. "Anthropologists in the U.S. and the Indian Claims Commission". Unpublished paper presented to the Symposium on Canadian Indian Treaty and Aboriginal Rights, Carleton University, Ottawa, 7-9 May 1970. Available in the Assembly of First Nations Library, Ottawa.

McDiarmid, Garnett and D. Pratt. Teaching Prejudice: A Content Analysis of Social Studies Textbooks Authorized For Use in Ontario. Toronto: Ontario Institute for Studies in Education, 1971.

Manuel, George and M. Posluns. The Fourth World: An Indian Reality. Don Mills, Ont.: Collier-Macmillan, 1974.

Mickenberg, N.H. "Aboriginal rights in Canada and the United States". Osgoode Hall Law Journal (1971) vol. 9(1):119-156.

Monkman, Leslie G. A Native Heritage: Images of the Indian in English-Canadian Literature. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1981.

The best general review of the subject to date.

Mowat, William and C. Mowat. Native Peoples in Canadian Literature. Toronto: Macmillan of Canada, 1975.

An anthology of fiction by native and non-native writers.

Ortiz, A. "Some concerns central to the writing of 'Indian' history". The Indian Historian (1977) vol. 10(1):17-22.

Ponting, J.R. and R. Gibbins, "English Canadian and French Quebeckers' reactions to contemporary Indian protest". Canadian Review of Sociology and Anthropology (1981) vol. 18(2):222-238.

Porter, H.C. "Review article: reflections on the ethnohistory of early colonial North America". Journal of American Studies (1982) vol. 16(2): 243-254.

With an extensive bibliography of other works on the subject.

"Portraits d'Indiens: figurations ou défigurations". Recherches Amérindiennes au Québec (1981) vol. 11(4), special issue.

Price, A. Grenfell. White Settlers and Native Peoples. An Historical Study of Racial Contacts Between English-Speaking Whites and Aboriginal Peoples in the United States, Canada, Australia and New Zealand. Melbourne: Georgian House/Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1950.

Price, John A. Native Studies: American and Canadian Indians. Toronto: McGraw-Hill/Ryerson, 1978, pp. 200-225, "Stereotyping in motion pictures" and "Stereotyping by Indians".

____________. "Native Studies", Canadian Journal of Native Studies (1981) vol. 1(1): 159-206; see also commentary in (1982) 2(1):177-179.

For a comparable U.S. review see the American Indian Culture and Research Journal (1978) vol. 2(3-4).

____________. "Native studies in Canadian universities and colleges", Canadian Journal of Native Studies (1981) vol. 1(2):349-361.

____________. "Historical theory and the applied anthropology of U.S. and Canadian Indians". Human Organization (1982) vol. 41(1):43-53.

Reviews and compares U.S. and Canadian developments in several "social" fields (policy, cross-border issues, language, etc.).

"Quelques réflexions autour de..." [la littérature québecoise et les Indiens]. Recherches Amérindiennes au Québec (1980) vol. 10(1-2):70-74.

Ray, A.J. "Fur trade history as an aspect of native history". In: Ian A.L. Getty and D.B. Smith, eds. *One Century Later....* Vancouver: University of B.C. Press, 1978, pp. 7-19.

Ronda, James P. and J.A. Axtell, *Indian Missions: A Critical Bibliography*. Bloomington, Ind.: Indiana University Press, 1978.

Lists material on the Christian churches' views of American Indians.

Seydegart, M. "Curriculum development on peoples of native ancestry: a process of development". *Bulletin, Canadian Association In Support of the Native Peoples* (1975) vol. 16(2):24-29.

Skinner, J.M. "*The Silent Enemy*: a forgotten chapter in the screen history of the Canadian Indian". *Ontario History* (1979) vol. 71:159-167.

Smith, Donald B. *Le Sauvage: The Native People in Quebec Historical Writing on the Heroic Period (1534-1663) of New France*. (National Museum of Man, Mercury Series, History Division Paper No. 6). Ottawa: National Museums of Canada, 1974.

Published in French, with a new introduction by Rémi Savard, as *Le 'Sauvage' pendant la période héroique de la Nouvelle-France (1534-1663) d'après les historiens Canadiens-francais des XIXe et XXe siècles*. Ville La Salle, Qué.: Cahiers du Québec/Hurtubise HMH, 1974.

Stephens, C. "Interpretation and the Canadian exploratory narrative". *Anthropologica* (1981) n.s. vol. 23(2):107-120.

Taylor, J.L. "Two views on the meaning of Treaties Six and Seven". In: Richard Price, ed. *The Spirit of the Alberta Indian Treaties*. Montreal: Institute for Research on Public Policy, 1980, pp. 9-45.

Townley, Charles, gen. ed. *National Indian Education Association Library Service Guides* (Nos. 1-11). Minneapolis, Minn.: NIEA, 1980- .

Short manuals on library and reference services for native communities, with pungent critiques of existing materials and library methods. See especially Guide I, Parts 1 and 2 (Rosemary Christensen and Hannis Smith, *Establishing Indian Library Service*, 1980) and Guide 10 (*Materials Selection*, 1980).

Trigger, B.G. *The Indians and the Heroic Age of New France*. (Canadian Historical Association Historical Booklet No. 30) Ottawa: Canadian Historical Association, 1977.

______________. "Pour une histoire plus objective des relations entre colonisateurs et autochtones en Nouvelle-France". *Recherches Amérindiennes au Québec* (1981) vol. 11(3):199-204; printed in English as: "Colonisers and natives: toward a more objective history of New France". *Rapports du XVe Congrès des Sciences Historiques*, vol. II. Bucarest: Editura Academiei RSM, 1980.

______________. "Ethnohistory: problems and prospects". *Ethnohistory*, forthcoming.

Viola, H.J. "Tribal archives programs: past and present." *American Indian Libraries Newsletter* (1982) vol. 6(2):5-7.

Describes programs to establish Band (Tribal) archival collections and to train Indian researchers.

Walker, J.S.G. "The Indian in Canadian historical writing". *Canadian Historical Association Historical Papers* (1971) :21-51.

Washburn, W.E. "The moral and legal justification for dispossessing the Indians". In: J.M. Smith, ed., *Seventeenth Century America....* Chapel Hill, NC: University of North Carolina Press, 1959, pp. 15-32.

Waubageshig, ed. *The Only Good Indian: Essays By Canadian Indians*. Toronto: New Press, 1970.

Wauchope, Robert. *Lost Tribes and Sunken Continents. Myth and Method in the Study of American Indians*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1962.

Upton, L.F.S. "Contact and conflict on the Atlantic and Pacific coasts of Canada". *Acadiensis* (1980) vol. 9(2): 3-13 and *BC Studies* (1980) vol. 45:103-115.

Vincent, Sylvie et B. Arcand. *L'Image de l'Amérindien dans les manuels scolaires du Québec*. Ville La Salle, Qué.: Cahiers du Québec/Hurtubise HMH, 1979.

5. AUDIO-VISUAL MATERIAL

See also the collections listed in "Map, Picture, Film, and Sound Archives" (part D, Appendix 4 of this handbook), items on popular portrayals of Indians cited in the previous section of this bibliography, and items under "Music" (page 177).

Blackman, Margaret B. *Window on the Past: The Photographic Ethnohistory of the Northern and Kaigani Haida*. (National Museum of Man Mercury Series, Canadian Ethnology Service Paper 74) Ottawa: National Museums of Canada, 1981.

Discusses techniques for interpreting photographs and relating them to other sources.

Brigham Young University. Institute of Indian Services and Research. *Bibliography of Non-Print Instructional Materials on the American Indian*. Provo, Utah: Brigham Young University Printing Service, 1972.

Includes films, filmstrips, slide sets, and records. Some Canadian material. Well indexed.

Canada. National Film Board. *Canada Picture Index*. (6 vols.: vols. 7 onward are titled *Photothèque: Photos Canada*) Ottawa: NFB, n.d.

Illustrated catalogues showing a sampling of photos available for commercial use in NFB collections, including many pictures of modern Canadian Indian people and communities.

"Le cinéma ethnographique". *Recherches Amérindiennes au Québec* (1981) vol. 10(4):218-250.

Clavet, Alain. *Guide to Canadian Photographic Archives — Provisional Edition*. Ottawa: Public Archives of Canada, 1979.

Includes a general subject index and partial descriptions of each collection. See commentary by C. Siegfried in the *Newsletter* of the Society for the Anthropology of Visual Communication (SAVICOM), 1980, vol. 8(3):6-7.

Deer, A. Brian. "Annotated bibliography of resources". *Bulletin, Canadian Association in Support of the Native Peoples* (1975) vol. 16(2):19-23.

Lists some Canadian libraries and institutions holding records and tapes of native music and oral history.

McCardle, Bennett. *Archival Records Relating to Native People in the Public Archives of Canada ... A Researcher's Guide*. Ottawa: Treaties and Historical Research Centre, DIAND, forthcoming 1983.

Describes film, television, sound-tape and picture holdings of the Public Archives of Canada and the National Museum of Man.

Ojibway-Cree Resource Centre. *Audio-Visual Bibliography 1978*. Timmins, Ont.: The Centre, 1978.

Ontario, Department of Education. *Multi-Media Resource List: Eskimos and Indians*. Toronto: Department of Education, 1969; also a *Supplement*, 1970.

"Pictures as documents: resources for the study of North American ethnohistory". *Studies in the Anthropology of Visual Communication* (special issue, 1975) vol. 2(2).

Rothwell, Stephen J. *Multi-Media on Indians and Inuit of North America, 1965-1980*. Ottawa: Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, 1980.

The most complete catalogue for Canadian subjects after 1965. Includes films, television programmes, and some filmstrips and slide sets.

Saskatchewan Indian Cultural College. *Accumulated Film Holdings List*. Saskatoon: Saskatchewan Indian Cultural College, Library Department, c. 1978.

"Still pictures in Subarctic research: A symposium...". *Arctic Anthropology* (special issue, 1981) vol. 18(2).

See especially "Repository sources of Subarctic photographs", J.C. Scherer, pp. 59-65.

Zimmerly, David W. *Museocinematography: Ethnographic Film Programs of the National Museum of Man, 1913-1973* (National Museum of Man Mercury Series, Ethnology Division Paper 11) Ottawa: National Museums of Canada, 1974.

Lists and summarizes early academic films on Canadian native people.

6. NEWSPAPERS

Researchers must often use local newspapers as historical sources. This is frequently made difficult by the disorganization of local collections, the lack of subject indexes, and even the total destruction of original runs of some papers. The following items describe Canadian newspapers generally; for guides to native publications, see page 184 of this handbook.

[Ervin, L.] "Newspapers in the National Library". *National Library News*, Ottawa (June 1980) vol. 12(6):3-5.

Describes Canada's largest collection of local newspapers.

Lunn, A.J.E. "Bibliography of the history of the Canadian press". *Canadian Historical Review* (1941) vol. 22(4):416-433.

McGill University, McLennan Library, Reference Service. "Bibliographical Supplement #10. Newspapers: Identification and Location Tools". Unpublished finding aid, n.d.

Describes the major indexes and bibliographies relating to Canadian and foreign newspapers.

National Library of Canada, Newspaper Section. *Union List of Canadian Newspapers Held by Canadian Libraries*. Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1977.

An extensive (though not complete) list of past and current Canadian newspapers, by region and town. Also gives publication dates, and indicates what copies of each are held in libraries across Canada. Includes a partial list of native newspapers. Available free from the Library; updates and corrections since 1977 are contained in the Newspaper Section's card index. The few subject indexes available (mainly for recent runs) are listed in the Section's *Checklist of Indexed Canadian Newspapers* (revised edition, March 1982). For more detailed historical reviews of the seven major Canadian papers today, see L. Ervin's "Building a collection of Canadian newspapers...", *Serials Review* (January-March 1980): 45-48.

Clipping Files

Many libraries keep files of newsclippings on particular subjects. For a brief list of collections by region and subject, see the National Library of Canada, Newspaper Section, *Access to Newspaper Collections*, Annex 11, "Newspapers Regularly Clipped for Vertical Files" (unpublished paper, Ottawa, n.d.). The four largest clipping files on native and northern affairs are as follows:

DIAND Collection: clipping files on native and northern affairs generally, c.1955 to present. Subject, area, and biographical files, arranged alphabetically by file title (up to c.1977) or unindexed in chronological order (c.1977 to present). Collection to 1977 is housed in the Public Archives of Canada Library, 2nd Floor, 395 Wellington Street, Ottawa; for later material contact the Public Communications and Parliamentary Relations Division, DIAND, Room 1717, 10 Wellington Street, Hull, Quebec. A selection of clippings dated c.1880-c.1930 can be found in the "DIA Scrapbooks" in PAC, RG-10, Accession 78-9/16 (as yet uncatalogued).

CASNP Collection: clipping files on native affairs, with emphasis on current politics and claims, from the collection of the Canadian Association in Support of the Native Peoples, Toronto, 1968-c.1978. Available in microfiche form in various libraries across Canada, and by purchase from Micromedia of Toronto (see Appendix 3 of this handbook for address).

Boreal Institute for Northern Studies Collection: clipping files on native affairs, with emphasis on northern and Arctic Canada, 1975-c.1982. Originals at the University of Alberta in Edmonton; microfiche copies available from same source as CASNP collection, above.

Canadian Indian Rights Commission Collection: clipping files on native claims in Canada and internationally, c.1971-1978. Available in Canadian Indian Rights Collection, Reference Division, National Library of Canada, Ottawa.

7. RESEARCH AND STYLE MANUALS

Different researchers use different methods and styles of writing. The following are a few of the many guides available for those who want to improve their skills. The items recommended were chosen for their clarity and relevance to a wide variety of projects.

Barzun, Jacques and H.F. Graff. The Modern Researcher (3d edition). N.Y.: Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, 1977.

Describes research methods, project organisation, writing style, and historical approaches, in a clear and entertaining manner. Recommended for researchers with some prior experience.

Blackburn, Marc et al. Comment rédiger un rapport de recherche. Montréal: Centre de Psychologie et de Pédagogie, 1969.

Campbell, William G. and S.V. Ballou. Form and Style: Theses, Reports, Term Papers (5th edition). Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1978.

On style and format only. For university-level researchers.

Cook, Terry, comp. Suggestions For the Citation of Archival Documents at the Public Archives of Canada. Ottawa: PAC, 1982.

Turabian, Kate L. Student's Guide for Writing College Papers (3d edition). Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1976.

For beginning researchers and others. Brief and to the point. Includes advice on research techniques, writing style, and format of reports.

Turabian, Kate L. A Manual for Writers of Term Papers, Theses and Dissertations (4th edition). Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1973.

Similar to the previous item, but for more advanced researchers.

The York Press Style Manual (For Writing and Typing of Scholarly Works and Research Papers). Fredericton: York Press, 1971.

A very short and direct pocket guide, which describes the setting up and typing of reports (punctuation, format of pages, footnotes, bibliography, and abbreviations).

INDIAN HISTORY AND CLAIMS:

A RESEARCH HANDBOOK

VOLUME TWO: RESEARCH METHODS

Prepared by

Bennett Ellen McCardle

for the

Treaties and Historical Research Centre
Research Branch
Corporate Policy
Indian and Northern Affairs Canada

December 1982
Second Printing, July 1983

©Published under the authority of the
Hon. Douglas C. Frith, P.C., M.P.,
Minister of Indian Affairs and
Northern Development,
Ottawa, 1983.

QS-3246-020-EE-A3

TABLE OF CONTENTS

VOLUME TWO: RESEARCH METHODS

Page

The Stages of a Project 219

1. PLAN 221

2. RESEARCH

Where to find information in local sources 226

Where to find information in Ottawa 232

The Public Archives of Canada 233
The Department of Indian Affairs 250
Other federal departments 256
Other Ottawa archives and libraries 259

Archives outside Canada 260

Some special types of research project

Legal research 265
Archaeological research 268
Research using fur trade records 270

Ways of taking and storing information 274

Special research problems 280

3. EVALUATE 286

4. WRITE 290

5. ACT

Storing information 293
Making research public 294
Claims 296

APPENDIX 1: Glossary of terms used in Indian historical research 300

APPENDIX 2: Restrictions on access to records on Indian history 331

APPENDIX 3: Borrowing or buying microfilm for research on Indian history 344

APPENDIX 4: Addresses for researchers: archives, libraries, government offices, and other resources 352

SUBJECT INDEX 373

RESEARCH METHODS

This volume gives detailed advice on how to plan and do research. Most researchers use methods like those outlined here to keep their collections of information in order, and to write histories or reports.

The Stages of a Research Project

You have decided to write a history, or to research a possible claim. How do you do it? These are the five steps most researchers follow:

Step 1: Plan	• Decide what questions you want to answer. • Find out what resources you have to work with. • Make a work plan.
Step 2: Research	• Collect the information you need. • Store it in an orderly way for later use.
Step 3: Evaluate	• Decide what to do with what you have found. • Get special advice from others, if you need it.
Step 4: Write	• Write your report.
Step 5: Act	• Use your research to inform people, to help other researchers, or to take action on a claim.

In the next five sections, I will explain how each of these steps can be carried out.

STEP 1: PLAN

At the start of your project, you, and any other people you are working with, will sit down to settle three things: what you are researching, what resources you have to do the research, and what your work plan will be.

First, what are the questions you want to answer? The most important step in any journey is to decide where you are going. If you make sure that the question or questions you want to research are clear in your own mind, your work is already well begun.

Sometimes this is not as easy as it sounds. For example, you may want to write a history of a particular Indian community. Should you also research other neighbouring communities that may be related to it? Should you write only about facts such as wars, alliances, Treaties, and land surrenders? Or should you also describe day-to-day matters such as traditional family life, or how people made a living by hunting or farming? These questions are important because they affect the amount of research you will have to do, and where you do it.

You will, of course, learn more about your subject as you go on. As a result, you may think of still more questions. Most projects do change direction, at least a little, before they end. Be aware that this can happen. Stop to take stock once in a while, and adjust your plans to deal with new ideas or facts.

Next, what resources do you have to work with? That is, what people, money, and time are at your disposal?

The people are yourself and any co-workers you may have. If you are alone, planning is simple: you know your own skills and schedule, and can organise the work yourself. If you are part of a team, you will have to divide up the work on some practical basis.

There are no set ways of doing this. For example, one person may read published books and other "secondary" sources in libraries, while another works in the archives with original documents, and a third interviews people. Alternatively, each researcher takes one special subject and researches it completely. For example, one person doing a local history project writes about traditional life and Band economy, another works on the history of reserve or settlement lands and resources, and a third describes the community as it is today.

WHEW! FOUR LOUSY HOURS OF TORTUOUS CLIMBING TO REACH THE LOOKOUT POINT WHAT A MISERABLE ORDEAL!
GUESS THE CHIEF GOOFED!... IT'S REALLY MY TURN AT LOOK-OUT!... YOU'RE RELIEVED
I'VE HEARD OF "JUMPING FOR JOY" BUT THIS IS RIDICULOUS!

TUMBLEWEEDS by Tom K. Ryan. © 1969 by CSB Publications; courtesy of Field Newspaper Syndicate.

If you are part of a team, you should work closely together and should meet regularly to share information. If someone outside the team is responsible for directing the project, keep him or her informed. Thus, everyone will be aware of new and important ideas, any problems can be dealt with early, and extra work can be kept within bounds.

Time is your next resource. How much time will the work take? How much time can you give to it? If this is your first research project, you may not be able to estimate the time needed. If so, consult someone who has experience with the same kind of work. You should at least make up a rough work schedule for the project as a whole. You may not be able to keep to it, but it will encourage you to try.

It is always wise to set aside some extra time in your schedule as a "cushion". Documents never turn up quite as fast as you expect them to. Orders for books or photocopies may be delayed. New facts crop up and have to be investigated. Be as prepared for this as you can.

Money is your last resource. Research costs vary greatly, depending on the size and aims of your project and the distances you have to travel. There are, however, some costs that are likely to apply to any project. These are listed in a "checklist" of research expenses on page 225.

Some large projects are carried out under the direction of a Band Council or Indian organization. These involve extra costs, such as salaries and administration expenses, above and beyond those described here.

You can cut some of your costs, especially if you have extra time and access to a good library. Interlibrary loans can reduce the number of your research trips. The price of a few telephone calls to libraries or archives, plus some letter writing, may be as productive as one trip away from home. On the other hand, some costs are unavoidable. For many projects, you will have to travel to a provincial archive or to Ottawa. Once there, spending a little extra money on some things -- especially copies of hard-to-find documents -- may save you a second trip later.

Where do you look for research funding if you can't pay the costs yourself? Finding money is a job suited to the most creative mind in your group. Certain kinds of projects are funded by Band Councils themselves, or by the Department of Indian Affairs through Councils and Indian organizations. If you cannot get moneys of this kind, you could try your school or school board, a local historical society or museum, a "native studies" program at a university, a provincial government's Department of Culture, or a local "heritage" foundation.

Approaching outsiders for money takes time and special preparation. The best advice on how to do it is given in books such as Funding (Full Circle Series, Ottawa: National Indian Brotherhood, c. 1980) and Lynda Cronin's A Fund-Raising Guide for Native Groups (Ottawa: Canadian Association in Support of the Native Peoples, 1977), both available on interlibrary loan). Among other things, you will have to make sure that the terms under which you take money are suited to own goals, and not just to those of the people who fund you.

The last step is to make up your work plan. Lay out the questions you want to deal with, in order. Set up a tentative time schedule for the project. If you are in a group, assign specific jobs to each person. Finally, divide up your funds in the form of a budget.

Your work plan should be definite, but not too rigid. Some researchers say that a successful research project takes all the money, twice the time and three times the effort you plan for. (And that an unsuccessful project takes even more). But don't think of this as a rule. Start out with a clear plan, one you think you can manage. Include in it a little room for the unexpected. Most (if not all) projects organized like this will give you much of the information you need.

BASIC EXPENSES OF RESEARCH

A CHECKLIST OF EXPENSES FOR
A RESEARCH PROJECT ON THE HISTORY OF A BAND OR COMMUNITY

Since prices vary, no "typical" expenditures can be given for any of the items below. Each project will have to be budgeted by the researcher, taking local costs into account.

---

1. Travel Expenses

- Car mileage (for trips to interviews, public libraries, or local archives)
- Bus, train or plane fare for one or all of the following:

  Travel to the Provincial Archives or a university library to consult books and microfilms

  Travel to the Regional Office of Indian Affairs to use DIAND files

  Travel to Ottawa to use records in the Public Archives of Canada, Indian Affairs offices, and other federal departments

- Accommodation and meals while on research trip:

  Meals (usually budgeted as an average cost per day)

  Accommodation (if you have to stay in hotels)

  Other travel costs (such as city buses, taxis or rented cars)

2. Supplies and Copying Costs

- Office supplies (writing and typing paper; file cards; file folders; pens and pencils; envelopes; labels; report covers or binders; tapes for interviews)
- Reference books (if needed)
- Photocopying charges (including the price of copying books, articles, maps, photos, and documents from archives)
- Typing costs (typing fees and/or rental of typewriter, if necessary)
- Binding and printing costs for final report (if report is being distributed in a special format)

3. Other Costs

- Postage
- Telephone (long distance calls to archivists, librarians, or persons being interviewed)
- Other (any special costs not listed here)

STEP 2: RESEARCH

Now that you know what your questions are and have made up a work plan, you can start to research. But how do you do it? First, where do you go to find information? Second, how do you record and store it? Third, how do you deal with delays and other problems? I will discuss these three matters separately.

A. WHERE TO FIND INFORMATION IN LOCAL SOURCES

Oral history

Volume One of this handbook described methods of collecting oral history -- the memories of older people, preserved in interviews. Once you have transcripts of these interviews on paper, you can use them just as you would use a book or document. Store them with the rest of your collection, and refer to them when you are writing your report.

Research in offices, archives and libraries

You have made your outline, you have set up your system of taking and storing notes, and you have done all the work you can in your community (as described in Volume One of the handbook). Now, you are ready for work on archival sources: that is, unpublished records in offices, archives and libraries. The following are some of the best places to look for information close to home. Visit them and become familiar with the records they hold. Keep a list of the names and phone numbers of people who help you.

Band Council Office records: Some Band Councils have their own archives: that is, collections of important historical records, such as original copies of Treaties or surrenders, minutes of Council meetings, correspondence, membership lists and Treaty paylists. Some Councils have built up special collections of photocopies from other archives and libraries.

If you are not yourself working for the Band, approach the Council office and explain what you are researching. Ask the chief and councillors, or other Band officials responsible for Council records, whether you can use their historical records. If the Council is concerned about protecting personal, legal or business information, you will, of course, have to agree to treat any facts entrusted to you with the proper care.

Even if you are not working for the Council, or do not use their records, you could arrange to give them reports on your work as it progresses, or a copy of your final report.

Church records: The churches in or near your community may have old records which contain valuable information on your community's past. For example, you may find a report written by the first missionary to visit the area, which describes the camps and settlements he visited to preach, and what the people there said to him. Or the missionary may have been active in Indian politics: his records may mention Treaty negotiations, dealings with traders, and relations with Indian leaders. Finally, the missionary may have kept detailed records of births, marriages and deaths in Indian families. These are important for research on family history, or the movements of particular people or groups.

To find church records for your area, approach the minister or priest nearest you. Explain what you are doing, and ask if his church has kept any old historical or family records. If he is knowledgeable, you could also interview him, just as you would interview an Indian elder.

He may no longer have any such records, and might not be able to tell you where to look for them. They may have been destroyed; however, many churches send their oldest records to a central archive for storage. Your Provincial Archives or library may be able to find these for you.

Look for the following types of church records:

- Cemeteries. Tombstones in many old cemeteries give you important information, such as names, birth and death dates, and family relationships.

- Birth, baptism, marriage and death records. Most large churches keep registers recording these events. They show names and dates, and may also give places of birth, places of residence, and other useful information for families in your area.

- Mission diaries or "journals". These are daily diaries of happenings in a parish. Some missionaries keep them along with more formal records.

- General records. Most churches keep files of letters, reports, maps and other documents relating to their mission work. You may find these in the local church or at mission headquarters, or both.

- Printed Reports. Many churches issue printed annual or monthly reports on the state of their Indian missions. Some also issue magazines or newspapers of more informal news. Good examples of these are the Christian Guardian of Toronto (a Methodist newspaper) and the Petites Annales de la Congrégation des Missionnaires Oblats de Marie Immaculée (a Catholic magazine produced by the Oblate order).

- Church Histories. The histories of many local churches or church districts have been published.

Church records can be especially useful for building up a complete picture of an event. If there is more than one mission in your area, you can compare their reports on the same happening. Also compare what they say with the views of Indian agents or other government officials. Often you will find that each party tells a different version of the story.

Once in the 1920s a Band Council meeting was held to discuss a proposed sale of the Band's reserve to non-Indians (after which the Band was supposed to remove to another place). The meeting ended without approving a sale or a move. What had gone on? The Indian Agent reported that few Band members had been present at the meeting, and that these few had stubbornly refused to give their opinions on the sale, one way or another. A missionary, of whose church most of the Band were members, reported that the whole Band disapproved of the sale, and that he personally had stood up in the meeting to make a fine speech against it, which had angered the Agent. Another local missionary, most of whose parishioners were non-Indian, reported that there had been no talk of a land sale at any recent Band meeting. No one reported exactly what the Indians said or thought; all we know for sure is that the reserve, and the Band, are still there today.

Any one of these facts, standing alone, would not help you to understand the meeting. But taken together, facts from many different sources enrich your knowledge of the situation.

Indian organizations. Many Indian political associations have collections of historical documents and reports that may relate to your work. Usually these organizations need authorization from the Council of the Band or Bands involved before they can open their files to you.

Local governments and local history museums. Municipal, township, or county government records can be useful to researchers working on land titles, land use and community economic development projects.

Municipal planning offices often hold records and maps relating to historical patterns of land use. Get their addresses from your local library or land titles office.

Land titles offices (or "registry offices") are local bureaus run by provincial governments. They contain all the records of land ownership for your district, dating from the time the first grants of land were made. Most land titles offices do not record dealings on existing Indian reserves: these are found in the Indian Land Registry in the Department of Indian Affairs in Ottawa. However, land titles offices can be used by researchers working on reserve land boundary problems, disposal of surrendered land, and similar projects. Many land titles offices have both historic and current maps of their area. For a fee, they help you to do a title search -- that is, trace the ownership of specific pieces of land back to the original grants from the Crown, through all the intervening owners. To save time and money, find out exactly what parcels of land you want to trace before you begin the title search.

To find your local land titles office, call the office of your provincial Attorney-General, or consult a reference book such as The Canadian Almanac and Directory 1982 (Toronto: Copp, Clark, Pitman, 1982).

If there is a local historical museum in your area, it may have useful records such as old photographs, objects, and newspaper clippings. The museum's staff may also know of people in your area who have useful private collections of letters or pictures.

Provincial government records. Most provinces keep files on Indian Reserves, political relations with Indian groups, and social and economic issues such as Indian health, schools, and hunting, fishing and trapping. To get access to them, approach the appropriate government department. You may not get what you want. However, some provinces transfer their older files to provincial archives, where you may be able to use them without restrictions.

Provincial archives. In each province there is a central provincial archive which holds valuable records of all kinds on Indian history. These usually include old government records, church records, personal papers, maps, and pictures. The professional archivists there can advise you on where to find and how to use other information. Appendix 4 of this handbook (page 353) lists all the provincial archives in Canada.

Other collections. A number of other archives, museums and libraries across Canada contain large and valuable collections of material on Indian history. Some are private, such as the Hudson's Bay Company Archives in Winnipeg, which has the largest single group of records on Indian people and the fur trade, or the Glenbow-Alberta Institute Archives in Calgary, which has material on western Canadian Indians generally. Others are found in universities, such as the Boreal Institute for Northern Studies in Edmonton, whose library (until the recent closing of the Institute) collected material on northern Canada. A number are run by Indian Bands or organizations, such as the Nakoda Institute in Morley, Alberta and the Cree-Ojibway Resource Centre of Timmins, Ontario, to name only two.

Lists of archives. Useful directories to archives for researchers in native history are listed on page 355 of Appendix 4 of this Handbook. To decide which ones to visit, consult the general catalogue of archival collections in the Union List of Manuscripts in Canadian Repositories (Ottawa: Public Archives of Canada, 1975) and its three Supplements (dated 1977, 1979 and 1982). It is well-indexed by subject and covers most of the major archives in Canada.

Local offices of Indian Affairs. The Department of Indian Affairs has, of course, kept detailed records on Indian communities, beginning well before Confederation. Most of these records are now in Ottawa, and are described later in this section. Many of the Department's local (Regional and District) offices, however, also keep useful records, maps, and accounts. Holdings vary, but most of the files of these local offices date from the 1930s. These records can be important in research on recent history or current claims, since they often contain unique copies of Agents' reports, Band council minutes, membership information, and other papers that cannot be found on Ottawa files.

For the address of your nearest Regional office, see Appendix 4 of this handbook. For addresses of the District offices, call the Regional or Ottawa offices of Indian Affairs.

B. WHERE TO FIND INFORMATION IN OTTAWA

In Ottawa you will find the largest single group of records on Canadian Indian history. This group includes:

- Current headquarters records of the Department of Indian Affairs, dated mainly from 1930 to the present.
- Historic records of the Department of Indian Affairs, including British, headquarters, Regional, and Agency or District Office records dating back to the 18th century.
- Other government and private records (both historic and current) dating back to the 16th century.

After you use the records in your home area, you may decide to visit Ottawa to complete your work.

If you do, you will probably spend most of your time in the Public Archives of Canada, reading the historic records of the Department of Indian Affairs. If you are working on Indian history before Confederation, you are likely to need other records as well, especially those relating to the fur trade, church missions, and the activities of the

British, French, and colonial governments. Above and beyond these you may use records of other governments, businesses, and private families, and historic maps, pictures, films, and sound recordings.

Second, you may also use the current files of the Department of Indian Affairs, held in the department itself. A large part of these are open to outside researchers. They include general files, covering mainly the years since 1950; the Indian Land Registry's collection of legal documents on reserve land transactions; the Legal Surveys map collection; Indian status and membership records; Treaty paylists; and other records.

Third, you may use the records of other government departments and museums. These include documents on Indian lands, social services and Indian health, development of natural resources, and ethnological works on Indian language, society and culture.

Finally, there are some other Ottawa archives and libraries that are convenient for researchers to use when visiting the city. Each of these is described in greater detail below.

The Records Held by the Public Archives of Canada

The records most often used by Indian historical researchers are in Record Group 10 -- the historic records of the Department of Indian Affairs, called "PAC, RG-10" for short. Researchers also use major record groups dealing with Indian history before Confederation, including documents on the fur trade, explorations, wars and military alliances, and early Treaties and reserves. Indian history since 1867 is covered in other Department of Indian Affairs records in RG-6, RG-15, RG-22, RG-26, and RG-85, and in private papers in the "Manuscript Groups" (or MGs), especially MGs 17, 19, 27, 28, 19 and 30.

Finally, the Archives also has special historical maps, pictures, photographs, films, and sound recordings.

Record Group 10 — Indian Affairs

What sort of documents are found in the records of a government department? Specifically, what will you find when you first look at RG-10? The records you will use most often are: (a) letters, reports and legal documents, in files; (b) letterbooks; (c) minutes of meetings and councils; (d) diaries; and (e) accounts and paylists. To track down the exact records you need, you will use (f) special guides called "finding aids" or "inventories".

Files (letters, reports and legal documents). Most papers you use will be stored in files. These tend to be organized by date, often back to front, so that the most recent paper is on top. In the file you will find letters from one official to another, letters from Indian people to the government, official reports of Indian Agents, copies of legal documents such as leases and surrenders, maps, and practically anything else that can be put on paper.

This much is obvious. You can read the papers, collect the bare facts from them, and move on. But there are special ways of looking at a file that may yield extra information. For example, take the following file, which concerns a particular event. In the finding aid made up by the archivist, it is labelled only: "Agent's Reports, Mingotchi Agency, June 1871". On the file are these eleven documents:

1. A letter from the Department of Indian Affairs in Ottawa, dated February 1871, asking the Agent in charge of the Mingotchi Agency to investigate a dispute between the Black River Band and neighbouring white farmers. The dispute concerns the location of the boundary of the Band's reserve. This letter points out that the farmers had built sheds and grazed cattle on land which the Band felt was part of the reserve.
2. A letter from the Agent to Ottawa, dated May 18, 1871, giving his clerk power to do Agency business in his absence.
3. Two petitions from two different groups of Band members, dated May 23 and 25, protesting the actions of the white farmers. They offer two different answers to the problem: one group wants to evict the squatters; the other is in favour of letting them stay on condition they pay the Band.
4. A note from the Minister of Indian Affairs to the Deputy Minister, dated June 1, demanding an explanation of a petition just received from one of the white farmers, who claims title to the land he is occupying.
5. Another petition from members of the Band, dated May 31, protesting any attempts to have their land sold to the squatters.
6. A letter from the Agency clerk, dated June 4, reporting that he was visited at the Agency office by two local white farmers, who threatened to build fences on the disputed land and to stop supplying the Agency with beef.
7. The Agent's report of his visit to the reserve on June 3 and 4, 1871. He describes farming conditions, including the current shortage of grazing land. He suggests that the Band would be willing either to pay for a resurvey of the boundary, or to surrender a small amount of land to sell to the squatters. He also sends to Ottawa a copy of a lease of another part of the reserve, granted to a different white farmer. It has been approved by the Band.
8. The Agent's travel expense account for the visit, including a bill for the services of an interpreter on June 3.
9. A bill from a livery stable at Black River, dated June 6, for payment for a horse that died while on hire to the Agent.
10. A note from the department's accountant, undated, showing that the Band has enough in its trust fund to pay for a resurvey.
11. A copy of the Minister's letter to the squatter, dated July 9, assuring him that the problem is being investigated.

What do you learn from these eleven pieces of paper? The story is clear enough at first glance. But you can learn even more by paying close attention to details. For example, look at the dates of the documents, and ask yourself: How did Indian Affairs in Ottawa learn about the problem in the first place? When did the idea of selling the disputed land come up? When did the farmers first enter on the reserve -- before or after the first petition to the Minister? Why did they visit the Agency if the Agent was in their neighbourhood at the time? Why was the interpreter present only for one of the two days of the Agent's visit, and what effects would this have had on the Agent's dealings with the Band? Why did the horse die?

You can also ask more general questions about the situation. Did the local shortage of grazing have something to do with the incident? Was the threat to stop beef supplies a serious one? Did people in the Band in fact change their minds about allowing squatters to stay on the land? Why was the lease of another part of the reserve approved? Answering these may require thought and further background research.

Finally, the file is incomplete: it does not show how the story ended. There should be more records, but where? One of the ways to find out is to study the documents on the file for clues. On page 238 I show a typical government letter of the 1890s. The notes with this letter explain how you could find as many as three more files on the same topic by "decoding" various marks on the letter.

Letterbooks. These are copies of all or most of the letters sent out by an Agent or other official. They are in book form, usually arranged roughly in date order. Some are indexed by subject. The Agency Letterbooks in RG-10 are especially useful because they record much of the business that passed through the Agency office, such as repairs to fences, bulletins on the month's fur catch, remarks on people and local politics, or details of the negotiation of Treaties or surrenders.

Records of Meetings and Councils. Formal meetings between Indian groups and white officials in the 18th and 19th centuries were sometimes recorded in writing as "Minutes of Council". After Confederation, many Bands in eastern Canada also kept regular records of their ordinary meetings. Indian Agents sometimes maintained these records on the Band's behalf. Few Bands in western or northern Canada, however, kept any regular written minutes of Council until 1945 at the earliest (and some not until the 1970s).

Official Diaries. Many Indian Agents and other officials kept daily diaries recording what they did and saw in the course of their duties.

Accounts and Paylists. These record the finances of a Band or an Agency. They show what moneys were being spent out of Band or government funds for such things as Treaty annuities, welfare, improvement of reserves, trappers' advances, and payment of salaries.

Finding Aids. These are extremely important guides that explain how to use particular groups of PAC records. Some only summarize the information in the record group. Some list all the documents in a collection, piece by piece or file by file. Some index the records by subject.

Experienced researchers say that, to research something fully, you must look at every file or record you can find that is even indirectly related to the subject or the Band in question. (For example, vital evidence on one major surrender of reserve land was found on a file supposedly concerned with Band fences.) Thus it is wise to read all the finding aids you can lay your hands on, and investigate as many sources as you can.

156973 ③ 1624 ②

IN YOUR REPLY REFER TO ①
105,956
ALSO TO THE DATE OF THIS LETTER

ADDRESS REPLY TO THE
DEPUTY SUPT GENERAL OF INDIAN AFFAIRS,
OTTAWA

INDIAN COMMISSIONER'S OFFICE REGINA ASSA. JAN 1896 ⑥

Ottawa 15th January 1896

[illegible] ⑦

MAR 2 1896 FILE ⑧

DEPARTMENT OF INDIAN AFFAIRS JUN 6 1896 ⑨

1,624 ④

Sir,

966 ⑤

I have to acknowledge the receipt of your letter of the 10th Instant, respecting the proposal to refuse licenses to trade on Indian Reserves to persons who give credit to the Indians; and in reply I beg to inform you that the Department approves of such a rule being applied in the modified form suggested in your letter; and I have accordingly to request that you will be good enough to see it enforced to the extent suggested.

WM ⑩

Your obedient servant,
Hayter Reed
Deputy Superintendent General
of Indian Affairs. ⑪

A.E. Forget Esq., ⑫
Indian Commissioner
Regina N.W.T.,

WM ⑩

⑬
PAC
RG-10
Vol. 3601
File 105956

"DECODING" RECORDS:

A LETTER FROM THE FILES OF THE DEPARTMENT OF INDIAN AFFAIRS

This is a composite letter that could have been sent by the Deputy Superintendent General of Indian Affairs (in Ottawa) to the Indian Commissioner for Manitoba and the NWT (in Regina) in 1896. The notes and markings on it show what path the letter followed through government offices during the six months after it was written. They give the researcher clues as to where to look for other documents on the same subject.

---

1. First file reference. The number of the Indian Affairs file in the "Black Series" in Ottawa on which the draft version of this letter, and other related papers, was put. This file is now in the Public Archives of Canada, RG-10. See note 13.

2. Second file reference. The number of the file on which this copy of the letter (the original) was put after it was received in Regina on 20 January 1896. See note 6.

3. Letter reference. The number stamped on the letter when it was returned by the Commissioner to Ottawa for further action, probably in June 1896. See note 9. Every letter received by DIA in Ottawa between 1872 and about 1923 was stamped with its own "letter reference" number. This was entered in a "Letter Register" for either the Black (western) or Red (eastern) Series. In these registers, each letter was summarized, subject-indexed (sometimes not in detail) and its file number was recorded. Researchers can use the Registers to find other files containing information on the same subject. Note that letter references on a document are easy to confuse with file references.

4. Third file reference. The same number as in note 2. The presence of this number shows that there is probably earlier correspondence on the same subject, which would be found on file 1624 if it still exists today.

5. Fourth file reference. A number showing that other records on the same topic - specifically the letter mentioned in the text opposite the number - can be found on yet another file, number 966. Note that the term "instant" refers to a letter of "the same month as now", or January 1896. If the word "ultimo" had been used instead, it would refer to "last month", or December 1895.

6. First stamp. This shows the date the letter was received in the Indian Commissioner's office in Regina.

7. Annotation. This hand-written note shows what action was taken on the letter, presumably in Regina.

8. Second stamp. This shows the date the letter was filed away, probably in Regina.

9. Third stamp. This shows the date the letter was received in Ottawa. The sequence and dating of the marks suggest that the letter was removed from the file in Regina and sent back to Ottawa for further action.

10. Initials. The marks of officials who have approved or acknowledged the letter.

11. Name and signature of sender.

12. Name, title and address of person receiving the letter.

13. Researcher's reference. The researcher's note on a photocopy of the original document, showing where he or she found the letter. In this case, the copy comes from the Public Archives of Canada, Record Group 10 ("PAC, RG-10") volume 3601, file 105956. Some researchers also add the number of the microfilm reel, if any.

How RG-10 Is Arranged

To find what you need in RG-10, it helps to know how the record group is arranged. RG-10 can be divided up into seven main parts:

Part	Description	RG-10 Volumes	Finding Aids
1. Pre-Confederation Records	Records dated from 1677 to about 1872, covering all aspects of Indian history. Most documents are grouped in files or letterbooks, which are classified under the names of the officials who collected or wrote them. There are many gaps. Many documents in these volumes are closely related to records in other parts of the PAC (such as RG-1, RG-8 and MG-11).	1 to 1854	• The general ("green") inventory for RG-10. • Various lists and indexes (consult archivists for details). • Some subject-indexed registers relating to the indexed file system used between 1842 and 1872 (RG-10 volumes 751-759).
2. The "Red Series" and the "Black Series"	Files on all subjects, dated mainly between 1867 and the 1930s. Red Series files cover eastern Canada and Black Series files cover western Canada, with an overlap at the Manitoba/ Ontario border (Treaty Three area).	• 1855-3251 (Red) • 3555-4095 (Black)	• Two computerized subject indexes, one for the Black and one (incomplete) for the Red series. • Two detailed lists of files, one for each series. • miscellaneous other subject indexes, described below. • The old subject-indexed annual "letter registers" (in RG-10 volumes 3252-3554, 4095-4375 and 5852-5913).
3. Schools Files	Files on Indian schools, 1879-1953. (Note that there are also schools records in the other categories.)	6001-6491	• Computerized subject index. • List of files (for "Accession 72/596").

4. The "New Accessions"	Files on all aspects of Indian history and administration, mostly dated from the 1870s to the present, with some earlier material. Only the first eleven accessions are fully organized as yet.	6492 onward (beginning with "new accession" 72/597)	• A single computerized subject index, covering the eleven organized accessions (which are numbered 72/597 to 72/601 and 72/603 to 73/103). • Lists of files for the eleven organized accessions. • Some lists for the later (unorganized) accessions.
5. Agency Records	Records of local Agency and Regional offices on a wide variety of subjects. These include letterbooks, files, accounts and other items.	Various volumes	• The general ("green") inventory for RG-10, pages 23-50. • Special RG-10 finding aid no. 40 ("Agency Records")
6. Departmental Letterbooks	Two sets of letterbooks containing letters sent out by the Department as a whole (the "departmental letterbooks", dated 1868-1920), and by the Deputy Superintendent General of Indian Affairs (the "DSGIA letterbooks", 1862-1867 and 1879-1924).	• 528-531 and 4376-5836 (Departmental letterbooks) • 521-527 and 1078-1133 (DSGIA's letterbooks)	Some letterbooks have internal indexes. Note that the contents of the DSGIA's books in the latter part of the period refer mainly to routine matters.
7. Other Records	Various files, ledgers, accounts, and legal documents such as copies of Treaties, land and resource accounts, and Band Trust Fund records. Schools Branch records. Reports of special investigations and commissions. Special reference collections and documents.	Various volumes	• The general ("green") inventory for RG-10. • Various file lists and indexes. See RG-10 special finding aids numbered 1 through 59, on shelves in the Federal Archives Division.

The four most important finding aids to RG-10 are:

1. The "Green Inventory". This describes clearly and briefly all the records in RG-10. It also refers researchers to special finding aids for particular subdivisions of the group. Its full title is Records Relating to Indian Affairs (Public Archives of Canada, Federal Archives Division, General Inventory no. 1, 1975). It is available, free, from the Federal Archives Division of the Public Archives of Canada.

2. The Computerized Subject Indexes. These are four detailed subject indexes covering files in: (a) the Red Series, (b) the Black Series, (c) the Schools Files, and (d) the first eleven "new accessions" respectively. These lists are available on microfiche at the Archives, and can be bought, or borrowed on interlibrary loan.*

   Note two problems with these finding aids: (a) some, though not all, of the restricted files (such as the Enfranchisement case files in Accession 72/598) have been omitted from the subject indexes; and (b) the Red Series computerized index lacks detail; it includes only names of individuals, names of bands or reserves, and a limited selection of the policy and general files (indexed under "Headquarters").

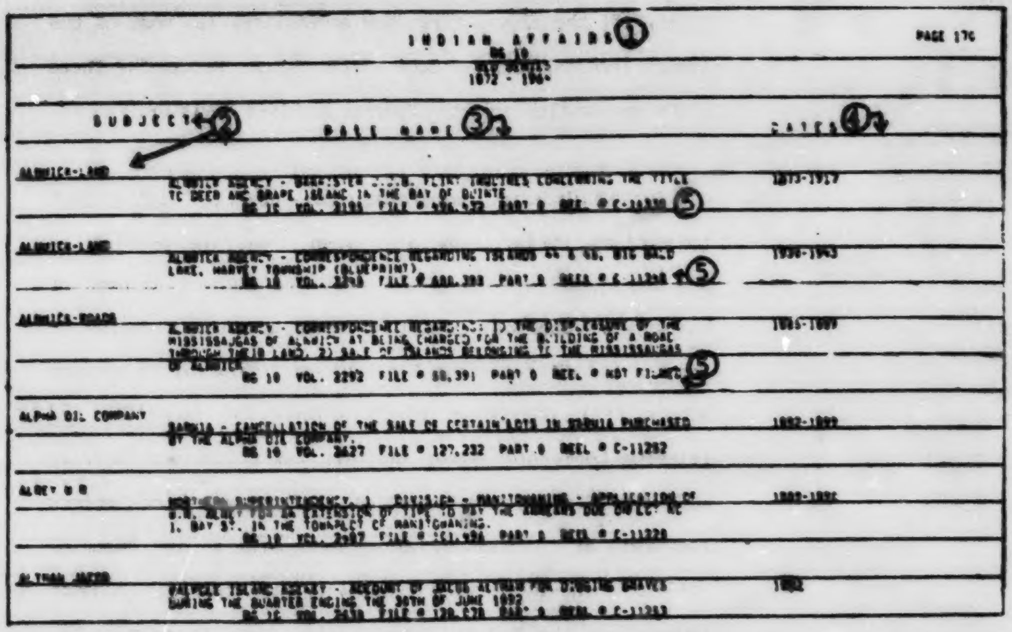
   Sample pages from one of the computerized indexes are shown on page 243.

---

* The computerized subject index for the "new accessions" will not be available until early 1983.

"COMPUTERIZED" SUBJECT INDEXES TO INDIAN AFFAIRS RECORDS IN THE PUBLIC ARCHIVES OF CANADA

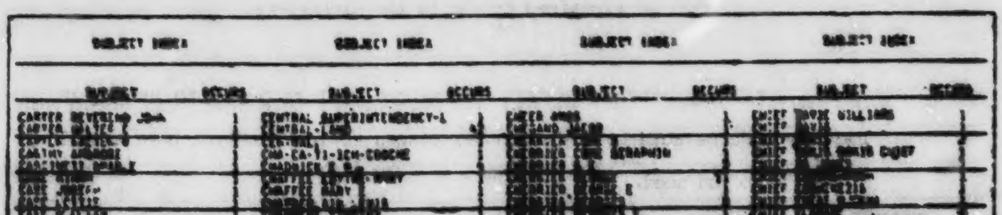
Two pages from the subject index to the "Red Series" (eastern Canadian and general Indian Affairs records for 1872-1964 in the Public Archives of Canada, Record Group 10). Similar indexes are available for the "Black" (western) Series and other DIA records in the same group.



```
                         I N D I A N   A F F A I R S ①                      PAGE 176
                                      RG 10
                                   RED SERIES
                                   1872 - 196?

     S U B J E C T S ②          F U L L   N A M E ③                          D A T E S ④

ALNWICK-LAND          ALNWICK AGENCY - [illegible] CONCERNING THE TITLE        1873-1917
                      TO DEER AND GRAPE ISLAND IN THE BAY OF QUINTE
                            RG 10  VOL. [illegible]  FILE # [illegible]  PART 0  REEL # C-[illegible] ⑤

ALNWICK-LAND          ALNWICK AGENCY - CORRESPONDENCE REGARDING ISLANDS [illegible], BIG BALD   1930-1943
                      LAKE, HARVEY TOWNSHIP (BLUEPRINT)
                            RG 10  VOL. [illegible]  FILE # [illegible]  PART 0  REEL # C-[illegible] ⑤

ALNWICK-ROADS         ALNWICK AGENCY - CORRESPONDENCE REGARDING: 1) THE DISPLEASURE OF THE   [illegible]
                      MISSISSAUGAS OF ALNWICK AT BEING CHARGED FOR THE BUILDING OF A ROAD
                      THROUGH THEIR LAND. 2) SALE OF ISLANDS BELONGING TO THE MISSISSAUGAS
                      OF ALNWICK.
                            RG 10  VOL. 2292  FILE # 58,391  PART 0  REEL # NOT FILMED ⑤

ALPHA OIL COMPANY     SARNIA - CANCELLATION OF THE SALE OF CERTAIN LOTS IN SARNIA PURCHASED   [illegible]
                      BY THE ALPHA OIL COMPANY.
                            RG 10  VOL. 2627  FILE # 127,232  PART 0  REEL # C-11292

[illegible]           NORTHERN SUPERINTENDENCY, 1  DIVISION - MANITOWANING - APPLICATION OF   [illegible]
                      [illegible] FOR AN EXTENSION OF TIME TO PAY THE ARREARS DUE ON LOT NO
                      1, BAY ST. IN THE TOWNPLOT OF MANITOWANING.
                            RG 10  VOL. [illegible]  FILE # [illegible]  PART 0  REEL # C-[illegible]

[illegible]           [illegible] ISLAND AGENCY - ACCOUNT OF JACOB [illegible] FOR DIGGING GRAVES   1892
                      DURING THE QUARTER ENDING THE 30TH OF JUNE 1892
                            RG 10  VOL. [illegible]  FILE # [illegible]  PART 0  REEL # C-[illegible]
```

A. THE SUBJECT INDEX

1. Title of index.
2. Subject of file.
3. Description of contents of file.
4. Dates of correspondence on file.
5. Location of file (gives RG-10 volume number, file number, file part number and microfilm reel number).



B. THE KEYWORD LIST

This section lists all the subject headings and other keywords that appear in the Subject Index (above) and states how many times each one occurs.

3. The File Lists (or "shelf lists" or "box lists"). These simply list all the files in particular subgroups of RG-10. They also give "outside dates" (dates of the earliest and latest documents in each file). There are full file lists for (a) the Black Series (b) the Red Series, (c) the School Files, (d) the eleven first New Accessions, (e) most of the Agency records, and (f) some of the "Other Records". These lists are available in the Federal Archives Division.

4. Old Subject Indexes. Some researchers use the "old" subject indexes to RG-10, especially when they are working on pre-Confederation records that have no subject indexes of their own. The most useful of these are (a) a series of indexes by DIA registrar G.M. Matheson relating to records before 1872 (found in RG-10 volumes 766 to 768A) and relating to records after 1867 (in new accessions 75-7/124 and 78-9/16); (b) the summaries or "abstracts" of letters received at Indian Affairs headquarters in Toronto, 1845-1877 (RG-10 volumes 739-746); (c) the "old subject indexes" to the Red and Black Series (used to make up for omissions from the new computerized indexes); and (d) the subject indexes in the yearly letter registers and letterbooks of the Department, 1842 to c. 1950. These are described on pages 11-16 of the "green inventory" and can be further explained to you by the archivists.

Finally, the archivists themselves will help you to use RG-10. They may also be able to suggest other places to look, if you have trouble finding what you need.

Always allow extra time to study the finding aids and to learn how the records are organized. Once you have some practice, you will be able to hunt out documents much more quickly. Many records are scattered and un-indexed, and many finding aids are not as good as they should be.

This is especially true for records dating from before Confederation. But most people can cope with them after a little practice. You will soon become more confident, and will learn more about how and where to look every time you return to the Archives.

Other Early Records in the Public Archives of Canada

Researchers working on the period before Confederation must use records in other record groups. Each group has its own detailed funding aids, which are available from the Archives. Listed here are some of the most important:

Records on New France. Very early records on French colonial relations with Indian people are found in the collections known as Manuscript Groups (MGs) 1 through 8 and 18. These records deal with a wide variety of subjects.

British military and colonial records. Records on the British Crown's relations with Indians before 1867 cover a variety of subjects, including the fur trade, military actions and alliances, councils and treaties, and the setting up of the earliest Indian reserves. The largest collection of these records is among the papers of the British Colonial Office (Manuscript Group 11), especially the subgroups CO-42 (Canada generally, Ontario and Quebec); CO-217 (Nova Scotia), CO-188 (New Brunswick); CO-226 (PEI) and CO-60 (British Columbia). Other important government and military records are in MG-18, MG-19, MG-21, RG-4, RG-5, RG-7, RG-8 and RG-9. The information in these groups is closely related to documents in volumes 1-1834 of RG-10, and to the private papers of such individuals as the Claus family (MG-19-F), Frederick Haldimand (MG-21-G-2), and many others.

Early land records. Legal matters relating to early Indian lands in eastern Canada, especially Quebec and Ontario, are dealt with in Record Group 1.

Fur trade records. Papers related to Indians and the fur trade are found throughout MG-19, and in a very large collection of records on the Hudson's Bay Company and related bodies in MG-20. These give general pictures of the fur trade, detailed descriptions of the comings and goings of Indians and traders at particular places, and censuses of particular Indian groups. Since research in these records is a complex matter, a later section of this handbook (pages 270 - 273) describes fur trade research in greater detail.

Church records. Many early records written by missionaries about Indian people are found in Manuscript Group 17 (papers of the Catholic, Anglican, Methodist and other denominations).

Post-Confederation records in the PAC

These records include records relating to the Department of Indian Affairs, records of other government departments, and records of private persons, bodies or churches, dated after 1867.

"Indian Affairs" Records. Some of the records of the Department have been divided up and filed with the records of the other departments who were formerly responsible for Indian Affairs. Thus, there are Indian records in the special files of (a) the Secretary of State, 1867-1873 (RG-6); (b) the Department of the Interior, 1873-1936 (RG-15); (c) the Northern Affairs Branch, including a mixture of the old records of the Department of Mines and Resources, 1936-1950, the present Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, 1966-1982, and the present Northern Affairs Program (RGs 22 and 85); and (d) the Department of Citizenship and Immigration, 1950-1966 (RG-26). These records are especially useful for research on Indian policy generally, and on settlement and development of the Canadian north and west. Most of them overlap with the material kept in RG-10.

Records of other government departments. About 100 of the 131 sets of records of government departments and related Federal bodies contain some material on Indian people. Among those of special interest are the records of the Royal Canadian Mounted Police (RG-18) which give good descriptions of events and peoples in western and northern Canada between 1874 and the 1920s; the Governor-General's and External Affairs records (RG-7 and RG-25) which deal with colonial policy, international fish and wildlife controls, border - crossing and citizenship issues, and Indian claims in the United States; Justice Department records (RG-13) including material on native offenders, the Riel Rebellions and legal opinions on Indian issues, 1867-1934; the Privy Council collection of Orders in Council (RG-2 series 1) which includes official documents on many aspects of Indian administration since 1867; the Surveyor-General's records (RG-88) on surveying of Indian lands since the 1870s; and the many records on native people of the North in RG-91 (Yukon government records), RG-42 (Marine), RG-45 (Geological Survey), RG-33 (Royal Commissions), and RG-126 (The Mackenzie Valley Pipeline Enquiry).

Other Papers. These include records such as the Prime Ministers' Papers (MG-26), many of which are indexed by subject so that information on native people can be easily found; the papers of politicians such as Edgar Dewdney, Alexander Morris, Adams Archibald and Clifford Sifton (MG-27); and papers of missionaries, explorers, and others (such as the Rev. John Maclean, William Bleasdell Cameron, Diamond Jenness and William Duncan) in MG-29 and MG-30.

Finding Aids for Record and Manuscript Groups

The Archives makes available a detailed guide ("inventory") for each record and manuscript group. Most of these are unpublished, but can be consulted in the Archives reference rooms, and photocopies can be ordered in some cases. The inventories to about a dozen RGs have been published (including those for RG-2, RG-10, RG-31, RG-88 and RG-126) and the others are summarized briefly in Terry Cook and Glenn Wright's

Historical Records of the Government of Canada (Ottawa: PAC, Federal Archives Division, 1980). The current inventories for the MGs are unpublished. Researchers outside Ottawa can use the somewhat outdated versions of inventories to MGs 1-27 and 29-30 published as: *General Inventory - Inventoire Général. Manuscripts - Manuscrits*, volumes 1-5 and 7-8 (Ottawa: Manuscript Division, PAC, 1971-1977). Microfilms of the updated inventories are also available.

A more detailed guide to PAC material on Indian people (*Archival Records Relating to Native People in the Public Archives of Canada, the National Library of Canada, and the National Museum of Man*, Ottawa: Treaties and Historical Research Centre, DIAND) is to be published in 1983.

Pictures, maps and sound records

Pictures. The Public Archives of Canada has collections of historic photographs in the National Photograph Collection, and pictures or drawings in the Picture Division. Many relate to Indian people across Canada. The collections are indexed by region and subject, but there is no complete published catalogue for either collection. You must normally visit them yourself, but if you have a specific picture in mind, you may be able to order a copy by mail.

You may be frustrated by the many unidentified pictures of Indian communities and portraits of Indian people in the collections you visit. Some of these can be identified by using other sources, including the records of the photographer or painter himself. For comments on this and other problems related to pictures, such as the biases of non-Indian portrait makers, see the items listed on page 215 in volume one of this handbook.

Maps. The National Map Collection has some of the most valuable historic maps of Indian reserves, settlements, Treaty areas, and other lands. Many of these are also held in DIAND's Legal Surveys Division collection. If you are interested in understanding the general history of your area, visit either the National Map Collection or the DIAND collection and look at a series of local maps. This will help you get a good picture of the changes in your region, settlement, or reserve over time.

The Map Collection's holdings on Indian subjects are listed in a set of published catalogues called Maps of Indian Reserves and Settlements in the National Map Collection, edited by Linda Camponi and others (Ottawa: Public Archives of Canada, 1980-). Volumes I and II on British Columbia, the Prairies and the Territories are now available. Other items are listed in the Catalogue of the National Map Collection, Public Archives of Canada (16 volumes, Boston: G.K. Hall, 1976).

Early maps produced during the fur trade period are discussed in G.M. Lewis's "Indian Maps" and R.I. Ruggles, "Hudson's Bay Company mapping" (pages 9-23 and 24-36 of Carol M. Judd and A.J. Ray's Old Trails and New Directions: Papers of the Third North American Fur Trade Conference, Toronto: University of Toronto, 1980).

Sound and Film Archives. The Public Archives also contains Canada's National Film, Television and Sound Archives. Here you will find tapes, TV shows and films relating to native people, dated mostly within the last 20 years or so. Older material can be found at the National Museum of Man, at the address given in Appendix 4 of this book. The holdings in both collections are indexed by subject. Further information on audio-visual collections can be found on page 215 of volume one of this handbook.

Department of Indian Affairs Records

After using records in the Public Archives, you may need to go on to the Department of Indian Affairs. This section will first list the kinds of records held by the Department. It will then explain how you go about using those in Ottawa and those at Regional or District Offices.

The headquarters of the Department in Ottawa — specifically the subdivision called the Indian and Inuit Affairs Program* — holds many records that are important to historical researchers. A large part of these are open to all researchers, and some are available only to those doing claims research on behalf of Indian Bands. To use the records, you will visit the Department's Treaties and Historical Research Centre. Its address is given in Appendix 4 of this book.

The Regional and District Offices of the Department of Indian Affairs have records that are more limited in extent, although they can be very useful if you are researching recent history. Most of these date back only to the 1930s or 1940s; earlier records have been destroyed, acquired by local archives, or sent to the Public Archives of Canada. They are filed and organized according to the same system as the records in Ottawa. Local DIAND offices usually have at least a file collection, a set of historic maps copied from DIAND's Legal Surveys collection in Ottawa, and some Indian membership records.

---

* The references to "Indian Affairs" or "DIAND" records in this book are meant to indicate the records of the Indian and Inuit Affairs Program of the Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development (DIAND) specifically. The records of other programs within DIAND — such as the Northern Affairs Program — are administered separately, and are discussed in a later section.

These are the seven major groups of historical records held by the Department in Ottawa:

- *The Central Registry files*. You will probably spend most of your research time with these. They are the working files of the Indian-Inuit Affairs Program, and cover all of the Department's activities affecting Indian and Inuit people. They include most of the Department's records that are less than 30 years old.

Most material over 30 years old is sent to the Public Archives. Some much older documents, however, are kept on recent files still held by the Department. (These are the so-called "over and under" files, so named because they hold material over and under 30 years old, dated in some cases back to the late 19th century.)

All current files are subject-coded. Thus, a file on any given topic can be located through the Treaties and Historical Research Centre, either by specific file number or by general subject. Researchers should remember that Indian Affairs has used at least four different filing systems since Confederation (not to mention those used before that date). Thus, file codes for current records will not serve to locate earlier materials.

These multiple systems often cause trouble for researchers, because old files are often brought forward into a new system and renumbered. This leads to apparently "missing" files, gaps in file series, duplicate numberings, and untraceable cross-references. However, many old files can in fact be traced by "converting" their old numbers to newer codes, using catalogues in DIAND's Central Registry. (Contact the Treaties and Historical Research Centre, Ottawa, for further information.) If you cannot find a particular document or file that you know once existed, make sure that you investigate this process before you give up the search.

- The Indian Land Registry. This is the Department's central collection of basic legal documents relating to specific Indian reserves. It holds documents on reserve establishment and enlargement; land, timber and mineral surrenders; sales; land grants (patents), leases, expropriations; subdivision and locations; and all other legal land transactions on every reserve in Canada, as well as on Crown Lands managed by DIAND.

Most of these documents are indexed in five interrelated Registers, organized by province and name of reserve. The Registry system is described in more detail in Appendix 1 of this book (pages 310 - 312). Other important documents held by the Registry include special collections of British Columbia Indian land records, and groups of previously restricted material relating to reserves and Bands across Canada, screened off RG-10 "New Accession" files, but now declassified. These are described in "A List of Lands Branch Reference Collections" (November 1982), available from the Treaties and Historical Research Centre, DIAND. Further records relating to the transactions documented in the Registry are found in DIAND's current (Central Registry) files, or in the Public Archives, RG-10.

- The Legal Surveys Map Collection. This is the Department's central collection of maps relating to all Indian reserves, settlements and DIAND-managed Crown Lands in Canada. The collection is in two parts: first, the main series, containing microfiche copies of most of the existing historic maps (copies of these are also available in DIAND Regional Offices); and second, paper copies of more recent reference maps. Both are well indexed by name of province and reserve or settlement.

- The Program Reference Centre. This holds (1) a nearly complete collection of the Treaty Annuity Paylists for the Robinson Treaties and the "numbered" Treaties between 1850 and 1955 (with isolated sets for certain areas up to the 1970s); (2) miscellaneous censuses, interest distribution lists, scrip ledgers, and other membership or population records, dated from the 1850s to the present, including some material copied from RG-10, and extensive original British Columbia census records dated between the 1920s and the present; (3) miscellaneous Departmental reference records, including an extensive (though not complete) set of departmental Orders-in-Council since 1868, departmental Annual Reports since 1864, and Departmental Field Manuals and Circulars (handbooks and instructions to DIA personnel) since 1953; (4) the Department's main statistical reference collection, beginning in the late 1950's (a printed catalogue is available);* and (5) a collection of recent published and unpublished reference reports, mainly on the economic development of particular Bands, done by Department or Band consultants.

- *The Indian Membership Division records*. These include the Indian Register, which records detailed family history on all Indian-status persons since 1951, and related files and indexes. These records contain personal information, and so are not normally opened to outside researchers. However, special arrangements can be made with the Registrar of Indian Membership to get information from them for certain specific purposes, as described in Appendix 2 of this handbook.

- *The Elections and Bylaws Unit of the Statutory Requirements Division*. This office keeps a list of all Indian chiefs and councillors since about 1956, with dates of selection or election. Lists of earlier Councils for some Bands can be obtained from the Program Reference Centre.

- *The Departmental Library*. This has a good reference collection of books and periodicals on Indian history and claims, as well as the following archival collections: (1) a complete set of Public Archives microfilms of Record Group 10 (the historic records of the Department) with subject indexes, and reading and printing machines; (2) a good range of government publications, including *Annual Reports* of the Department of Indian Affairs; federal and provincial statutes; indexed and bound volumes of DIA and Interior Department Orders-in-Council (but only those printed in the Canada Gazette, Part II); and minutes of the various Parliamentary Committees on Indian Affairs; (3) a collection of departmental press releases (communiqués) and Ministers' speeches since the late 1950s, indexed by subject and year; and (4) newsclippings on Indian Affairs since 1979, indexed by year only. (Earlier clippings are described on page 217 of this handbook.)

---

* *A Catalogue of Statistical Data in the Program Reference Centre* (Ottawa: DIAND, Indian & Inuit Affairs Program, Program Reference Centre, March 1982).

Other records and indexes elsewhere in the Department include current records relating to estates, Indian schools, economic activities and other administrative matters. Ask the Treaties and Historical Research Centre for further information, or consult the partial listing on pages 138 - 149 of the Index of Federal Information Banks (Ottawa: Treasury Board of Canada Secretariat, 1981), available in most post offices.

How to order and use DIAND records

These are the steps to follow when you use current Indian-Inuit Affairs Program records.

1. Preparing for Your Visit: Call or write the Treaties and Historical Research Centre in Ottawa (or any other office you may be visiting) at least two weeks before your visit. Tell the office what, in general terms, you are working on, and on whose behalf you are doing it. The staff will then look for and order any files you need. This can take some time, so make sure you give enough advance notice.

You won't be asked to give more than a very general idea of what you are researching. However, the more you can tell the Centre staff, the easier it will be for them to find the records you need.

2. Getting access to restricted records: Some records in DIAND and the Public Archives are "restricted" — that is, closed to ordinary outside researchers. People doing claims research can use some of these records if they have special written permission to do so from an Indian

Band, individual, or organization. Make sure you have any letters of authority you need before you begin. Further information on access rules can be found on pages 331 - 343 of this handbook.

3. Ordering files: The DIAND office will find your files in the index of its Central Registry, and will have them ready for you when you come. Ask the office to call you back if there are any hitches, such as access restrictions or mislaid files.

4. Doing the research: Visit the DIAND office and give the staff your letters of authorization, if any. They will then ask you to fill out a form applying formally for access to their records. In this, you will have to state, in general terms only, what you are researching.

5. "Screening" the files: All of the files shown to you are "screened" first. That is, an official of the department reads them over, and takes any "restricted" documents off the file. If you ask, you may be given more information about the screened-off material, including its date and general subject. You can also protest any removal of papers by appealing to the District Supervisor, Regional Director or Director of the Corporate Policy Branch. For further information on screening and access problems, see Appendix 2 (pages 331 - 343) of this handbook.

6. Using other DIAND records collections: People who use the Treaties and Historical Research Centre in Ottawa can also use the other records collections of the Department (the Indian Land Registry, Program Reference Centre, etc.) except where the usual restrictions apply. Within limits, you may also be able to have Central Registry staff make up lists of files for you on specific subjects.

7. Photocopying: Photocopying in the Centre in Ottawa is free and unlimited, but it must be done by the researcher in person. Practices vary in local offices.

The general rules apply equally to researchers who use Indian Affairs records in Ottawa and in all other offices of the Department across Canada. In practice, however, there is some variation in how the rules are interpreted in particular places. If you meet with significant differences that interfere with your research, bring them to the notice of senior Department officials.

Other Federal Government Departments

The Northern Affairs Program. This is a program within the Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, but separate from the Indian and Inuit Affairs Program. Northern Affairs records deal with all aspects of native affairs in the North, mainly since the 1920s. Some of these current files are open to researchers. To locate them and obtain permission to use them, contact the Treaties and Historical Research Centre of the Indian-Inuit Affairs Program.

The National Museum of Man. This has a large amount of unpublished information on Indian groups across Canada, collected by anthropologists, archaeologists and folklorists. It includes facts on family life, society and culture; ethnohistorical records; studies of particular native languages; information on archaeological digs; recordings of traditional songs and stories; and interviews with elders and others. These are found in four divisions of the museum: the Canadian Ethnology Service, the Archaeological Survey of Canada, the Visual Anthropology Unit and the Canadian Centre for Folk Culture Studies. As there is yet no general guide to these holdings, researchers must visit the museum in person (unless they have a specific question that the archivists can answer without extensive searches). A description of the Museum's holdings on native people will be available from the Treaties and Historical Research Centre in 1983.

The Department of Energy, Mines and Resources (Legal Surveys Division). This office holds: (1) the largest single Canadian collection of historic maps, surveyors' field notes and surveyors's reports relating to Indian reserves, settlements and Crown Lands (most, but not all, of this collection is available on microfilm in DIAND's Legal Surveys Section); (2) the only complete collection of Department of the Interior "township maps", affecting reserve land title throughout western and northern Canada; and (3) recent files on the survey or resurvey of Indian reserves across Canada. Some of these contain older historic material, although most departmental files over 30 years old have been transferred to Record Group 88 in the Public Archives of Canada.

The Department of Consumer and Corporate Affairs (Office of the Registrar General). This office holds copies of all patents (grants) of Indian reserve land to non-Indian buyers since 1845. Microfilms of part of this collection are also found in DIAND's Indian Land Registry (grants before 1960 only) and in the Public Archives of Canada (Record Group 68).

The Privy Council Office (Order in Council Section). This office holds subject-indexed copies of all Federal Orders-in-Council issued during the last five years. These include many Orders relating to Indian lands, band government, and financing. Earlier Orders are available in the Public Archives of Canada, Record Group 1 (before 1867) and Record Group 2 Series 1 (1867 to about 1977).

The Department of National Health and Welfare (Medical Services Branch, Native Health Services). This office holds a large number of files on medical services to native people. These include files on general policy, particular diseases, disabilities, hospitals and nursing stations, and case files on individuals. The records date from the late 1920s to the present.

The Federal Court and the Supreme Court of Canada. The two highest Canadian courts have files on federal-level court cases involving native people from Confederation to the present. Some of these include supporting historical documentation as well as records of the arguments and final decisions. Files from the old Exchequer Court of Canada are found in the collection of the present Federal Court of Canada (Trial Division). Supreme Court files before 1923 have been moved to the Public Archives of Canada's Record Group 125. The Supreme Court also has an excellent law library.

Other Departments. Among the many other departments with records useful to researchers are the following:

- Parks Canada (Department of the Environment): holds files on parks and Indian land or wildlife use, historical research material on the fur trade, and on some "historic sites" relating to native people.

- Canadian Wildlife Service (Department of the Environment): holds information on Indian use of wildlife and migratory birds.

- Department of Fisheries: holds information on Indian fishing and fishing rights.

- Secretary of State (Native Citizens' Directorate): holds files on recent research on, and funding of, native groups' activities (mainly from the late 1960s to the present).

- the Northern Pipeline Agency: holds information on northern pipelines generally and their effect on native interests.

Note that there may be restrictions on some or all of these records, and that many departments do not interpret the present access-to-records guidelines as liberally as does DIAND. The only general catalogue of archival records in the hands of government departments is the Index of Federal Information Banks (Ottawa: Secretariat, Treasury Board of Canada, 1981); this was designed to list "personal" material relating to individuals, but covers general records as well. Earlier records of these departments are found in RGs 1 to 131 of the Federal Archives Division, Public Archives of Canada.

Other Ottawa Archives and Libraries

The National Library of Canada is the largest library in the country. It is in the same building as the Public Archives, so that many researchers consult published sources there when they are in Ottawa. It is not the most convenient of libraries to use. Researchers do not have access to the stacks, so that books must be ordered sight unseen. There are three separate overlapping main catalogues, and still more catalogues for government documents, periodicals, and newspapers. The National Library does, however, have a helpful reference staff and a very wide choice of material on Canadian subjects.

The National Library also holds five special Indian collections: the Canadian Indian Rights Commission Library (the largest single Canadian collection on native claims); two general groups of hard-to-find books, articles and unpublished material, the Whiteside Collection and the Canadian Indian Bibliography Project; part of the National Indian Brotherhood Library's collection of unpublished material, on microfilm; and the Rare Book Division's special collection of books printed in Canadian native languages.

Federal Government Departmental Libraries often have useful reference collections. A selection is listed in Appendix 4 of this handbook (page 369).

Carleton University and the University of Ottawa have good reference libraries, including material on Indian history and society that is not available at the National Library. They are also open on weekends at some times of the year.

The Université Saint-Paul has a good reference collection on the history of the Canadian Roman Catholic church. Near this university is the Archives Deschâtelets, the central archive of the Oblate Order, which has a large collection of documents, pictures and publications on Catholic missions to native people across Canada.

C. ARCHIVES OUTSIDE CANADA

A few researchers may need to use records outside Canada for their projects. This is usually not necessary in ordinary historical research, since many of the foreign records relating to Canada have already been copied and placed in the Public Archives of Canada. But in a few cases -- such as projects on the history of groups on the Canada/US border, or on very early eastern Canadian Indian history — you may need to do special work abroad.

Note that the European libraries often ask researchers for special letters of reference from supervisors, teachers, or other persons in charge of your project. They often also have limited hours, or impose unusual charges. Consult archivists at the Public Archives of Canada for information on current practices in particular places. Notify any foreign institution of your interests well in advance of your visit, and ask them to advise you of any special preparations you should make. Keep in mind that the records you want to consult may not be in English.

Britain

The central collection of historic British records, government and private, is in the Public Records Office in London. This contains material on Indian relations with Europeans throughout the 17th, 18th, and 19th centuries, relating to the fur trade, military activities, treaty relations, early colonial settlement, early Indian reserves, and missions. The most important of these are the Colonial Office papers (of which there are copies in the Public Archives of Canada, Manuscript Group 11); the War Office Papers (copies are in PAC's Record Group 8 and Manuscript Group 13); and various private persons' papers (some of which are copied in PAC's Manuscript Groups 19, 23 to 29, and 40). The British Library (formerly the British Museum) has private and business papers relating to non-Indian explorers, the fur trade, and politics in general. Copies of some of these are available in the Public Archives of Canada, Manuscript Group 21. Among the many other British archives holding records on Indian history are the headquarters of various Protestant churches and missionary societies, the Royal Commonwealth Society of London, the Scott Polar Research Institute of Cambridge, and Rhodes House, Oxford (which holds the papers of the Aborigines Protection Society). These and other collections are described in the guides listed below.

Reference libraries which a researcher in England might use as a base include the Senate House Library (University of London) and the Bodleian Library at Oxford. You may, however, need special authorization or connections with a Canadian university to qualify for privileges there.

Researchers should prepare well in advance for a British research trip. Do as much work as possible before you go. Consult the records in the Public Archives in Ottawa and examine copies of records already in Canada, as listed in the inventories to MGs 11 through 17, 21 and 40, and RG-8. Talk to the archivists of the PAC's Manuscript Division (British Records Section). Study the published guides, especially Valerie Bloomfield's Guide to Resources for Canadian Studies in Britain (Ottawa:

Department of External Affairs, 1979), and also Charles M. Andrews' *Guide to the Materials for American History to 1783 in the Public Record Office of Great Britain* (2 volumes, Washington: Carnegie Institution, 1912-14) and C.A. Andrews and F.G. Davenport's *Guide to the Manuscript Materials for the History of the United States to 1783, in the British Museum, In Minor London Archives and in the Libraries of Oxford and Cambridge* (Washington, DC: Carnegie Institution, 1908).

Finally, contact the British archives you plan to use and make arrangements for your visit beforehand. Ask about opening hours and any special letters of authorization they may require. Obtain the address of the PAC's special officer in London, who may be able to help you if any problems crop up.

France

Important records on early eastern Canadian Indian groups are held in collections in Paris, including those of the Archives Nationales, the Archives de la Marine, and the Bibliothèque Nationale. Most of these are (or will soon be) available as microfilms in the Public Archives of Canada, Manuscript Groups 1 through 5, 7, and 8. Copies of records from various non-governmental French archives are found in Manuscript Group 6.

Copies of selected records from the French offices of missionary groups, including the Jesuit, Sulpician and Oblate orders, are available in the Public Archives of Canada's Manuscript Group 17.

The following published guides to French records are useful: the *Guide des sources de l'histoire du Canada conservées en France* (Ottawa: Public Archives of Canada, 1982); J.-Edmond Roy's *Rapport sur les archives de France relatives à l'histoire du Canada* (Ottawa: Public Archives of Canada, 1911) and Waldo G. Leland's *Guide to Materials for American History in the Libraries and Archives of Paris* (2 volumes; Washington: Carnegie Institution of Washington, 1932-1943, reprinted New York, 1965-67).

Italy

Archives in the Vatican, and in the headquarters of the Jesuit and Oblate Orders in Rome, both hold documents on Canadian Indian history from the 16th to the 20th century. Copies of some of these records are available in the Public Archives of Canada's Manuscript Group 17, and in the historical archives of the Oblate Order, the Archives Deschâtelets in Ottawa. For general guides, see: Carl Russell Fish, *Guide to the Materials for American History in Roman and Other Italian Archives* (Washington, Carnegie Institution, 1911); L. Codignola, "L'Amérique du nord et la Sacrée Congrégation 'de Propaganda Fide', 1622-1799; guides et inventaires", *Revue d'histoire de l'Amérique francaise* (1979) vol. 33(2): 197-214; PAC, Manuscript Division, Finding Aid No. 1186 for MG-17-A-25, *Archives of the Sacred Congregation of the Propaganda Fidei* (which describes material on Canada dated from 1622 to 1908, and gives a subject index for material up to 1799); and Leonard E. Boyle, *A Survey of the Vatican Archives and of its Medieval Holdings* (Toronto: Pontifical Institute of Medieval Studies, 1972).

United States

Records relating to Canadian Indian peoples in American archives cover (for example) the history, society and claims of border-area groups (Iroquois, Potawatomi, Ojibway, Ottawa, Sioux, Cree, Blackfoot and others); fur trade and church records created by companies and missions operating on both sides of the Canada/US border; and military records relating to Indian participation in the Seven Years' War, the American Revolution, and the War of 1812. These can be found in the National Archives in Washington, DC and its regional records centres, and in museums or private collections such as the Smithsonian Institution in Washington and the American Philosophical Society in Philadelphia. Unlike the European records, few of the US series are available in duplicate at the Public Archives of Canada.

The best guide to the use of the American government's records is M.L. Tate's "Studying the American Indian through government documents and the National Archives", *Government Publications Review, An International Journal* (1978) vol. 5:285-194. The best general list of US archival sources, both government and private, is Francis Paul Prucha, *A Bibliographical Guide to the History of Indian-White Relations in the United States* (Chicago/London: University of Chicago Press, 1977), especially pages 3 to 25. This reviews briefly all the major American collections on Indian people, and lists government publications, ethnological research records, oral history, newspapers, periodicals, maps, and audio-visual material. Somewhat more detail on holdings in private archives is given in A.M. Gibson, "Sources for research on the American Indian", *Ethnohistory*, 1960, vol. 7, pages 121-136. The National Archives in Washington and their regional branches are further described in C.S. Ryan, "The written record and the American Indian: the archives of the United States", *Western Historical Quarterly*, 1975, vol. 6 pages 163-173, and M.S. and E.L. Schusky, "A centre of primary sources for Plains Indian history", *Plains Anthropologist*, 1971, vol. 15 (48), pages 104-108. All the above guides are available on interlibrary loan, or from DIAND's Treaties and Historical Research Centre in Ottawa (collected as "Guide to Research on Indian History in the United States", unpublished paper, November, 1982). See also the general bibliographies listed on page 198 - 211 of this handbook.

Other Countries

Some primary material on early Indian - white contact — especially on the Atlantic and Pacific coasts — may exist in other foreign archives, including those of Spain, Portugal, Holland, Russia and perhaps even China. No suggestions can be made here as to exact locations or finding aids. Consult archivists or historians already familiar with your subject if you are interested in these possibilities.

D. SOME SPECIAL TYPES OF RESEARCH PROJECT

Legal Research

Researchers often need information on legal matters, such as the Indian Act, other laws and regulations, court decisions, and Indian claims processes. Here are some of the most useful sources.

The Indian Act and related legislation

The following are the major collections of laws relating to Indian people in Canada:

Indian Acts and Amendments 1868-1950 and *Contemporary Indian Legislation, 1951-1978* (2 vols.) Ottawa: Corporate Policy Branch, DIAND, 1980 and 1981.

The most complete and accurate compilation of the Act and its amendments available to date. Includes full texts of all versions of the Act since 1868, cross-references to all amendments, texts of current regulations under the present Act (as of 1978), and some related legislation. Not subject-indexed. Available free from the Treaties and Historical Research Centre, DIAND, Ottawa.

Gail Hinge. *Consolidation of Indian Legislation* (4 vols.). Ottawa: Office of Native Claims, DIAND, c. 1976.

An extensive collection of constitutional, colonial, federal, and provincial laws, proclamations, regulations and Orders-in-Council relating to Indians. Very useful for general reference, although it omits some significant pre-Confederation legislation and some Indian Act amendments; there are also errors in cross-referencing the amendments throughout. Out of print, but available in some reference libraries. A new, partly amended edition will be available from DIAND's Treaties and Historical Research Centre in 1983.

S.H. Venne. *Indian Acts and Amendments 1868-1975: An Indexed Collection*. Saskatoon: University of Saskatchewan Native Law Centre, 1981.

Essentially an uncorrected copy of the "Indian Act" volume of the Hinge consolidation, above, but with a new and comprehensive subject index.

Derek G. Smith, ed. *Canadian Indians and the Law: Selected Documents, 1663-1972*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart, 1975.

A short collection of basic colonial and constitutional documents and laws, including instructions to pre-Confederation colonial governors (not covered in the other collections) and the Indian Acts of 1876, 1880 and 1951. Recommended only for general reference, because of occasional printing and editorial errors, and omissions of significant material.

Laurie van Hoorn. *Index to Indian Acts, 1876-1978*. Ottawa: Treaties and Historical Research Centre, 1982.

Analytical charts of changes over time to each clause of each Indian Act, 1876 to the present. Includes a short subject index.

Note that each of these collections has its own drawbacks and advantages. If none are available to you, consult the federal "Statute" section in the "Government Documents" section of your local library.

For a good short history of the Act and its amendments since 1868, see *The Historical Development of the Indian Act* (Ottawa: DIAND, P.R.E. Group, Treaties and Historical Research Centre, 1978). Further detail is found in the massive "Indian Act Amendment" files in the Public Archives of Canada, particularly those in RG-10 volumes 6808-6811; others are scattered throughout the Red and Black Series of RG-10.

Regulations

There is no complete collection of regulations relating to Indians made by Order-in-Council under federal or provincial statutes. Partial collections can be found in the reference files of the Treaties and Historical Research Centre, Ottawa; the *Consolidation of Federal Orders in Council* (Ottawa: Queen's Printer, 1889); the other consolidations of federal "Statutory Orders and Regulations" published in 1955 and 1978; the weekly *Canada Gazette, Part II* (Ottawa, 1867 to present); the Department of Indian Affairs regulations drafting files, 1888-1955 (PAC, RG-10 volume 6813 file 481-1-35 and volume 8577 file 1/1-2-3-4); and the Order in Council collections in the Public Archives of Canada, RG-2 series 1, 1867 to c. 1977.

Court cases and decisions

A complete, indexed set of court decisions relating to Canadian Indians is being published by the Native Law Centre in Saskatoon (see listing below). There are good unpublished collections of decisions in the Native Law Centre's library at the University of Saskatchewan, and in the Canadian Indian Rights Collection of the National Library of Canada in Ottawa. Two partial subject indexes to cases are available: one in the

Canadian Native Law Reporter (1978) volume 1(2) pages 30-46, and another in David Knoll's *A Guide to Case-Law on the Indian Acts of Canada* (revised ed., Saskatoon: University of Saskatchewan Native Law Centre, 1981).

Finally, listed below are some useful general reference works on native law and native claims in Canada and the United States. Current material on Indian claims is not included. For this information, and specifically for the political positions of Indian, Federal and other parties on claims issues, contact the reference libraries or claims research offices of the relevant groups.

Bartlett, R.H. *The Indian Act of Canada*. Saskatoon: Native Law Centre, University of Saskatchewan, 1980.

Canada. Indian Claims Commission. Research Resource Centre. *Indian Claims in Canada: An Essay and Bibliography*. Ottawa: Information Canada, 1975; and Canadian Indian Rights Commission, *Indian Claims in Canada: Supplementary Bibliography*. Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1979.

Covers legal, political and historical items, court decisions, and comparative material on aboriginal rights internationally.

Canadian Native Law Reporter (formerly *Canadian Native Law Bulletin*). Saskatoon, Native Law Centre, 1978-   .

This journal reprints current court decisions and some legal articles. For similar American material see the *American Indian Journal* (Washington, D.C., 1975-   ), the *American Indian Law Newsletter* (1968-   ), and items listed in H. Dees' "Basic bibliography for native American law", *Law Library Journal* (1976) vol. 69:78-89.

Carsen, Gary L. *Indians*. Toronto: Carswell, 1978.

A reprint of the *Canadian Encyclcpedic Digest* (Ontario), 3d edition, summarizing native law in Ontario. Can be used (with caution) as a general reference.

Cohen, Felix S. *Handbook of Federal Indian Law* (Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1942; reprinted New York: AMS Press 1972).

The best single reference work on American Indian law. A revised edition (edited by Rennard Strickland) is forthcoming. Supplement this with summaries and cases in Monroe E. Price's *Law and the American Indian: Readings, Notes and Cases* (Indianapolis: Bobbs-Merrill, 1973) or David H. Getches et al. *Cases and Materials on Federal Indian Law* (St. Paul: West Publishing Co., 1979).

Cumming, Peter and N.H. Mickenberg. *Native Rights in Canada* (2d edition). Toronto: General Publishing Co., 1972.

Outdated on some points but still the best single introduction to Canadian native law. Supplement it with Sanders' casebook, below.

Daniel, Richard C. *A History of Native Claims Processes in Canada 1867-1979*. Ottawa: Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, Research Branch, 1980.

Morrison, J. "Archives and native claims". *Archivaria* (1979-80) vol. 9: 15-32.

Sanders, Douglas E. *Cases and Materials on Native Law*. (3d edition). Vancouver: University of British Columbia Faculty of Law, 1976.

Slattery, Brian, ed. *Canadian Native Law Cases*. Saskatoon: Native Law Centre, University of Saskatchewan, 1980- .

Reprints and indexes all Canadian court decisions on native rights. Available to date are volumes I and II (1763-1869 and 1870-1890).

Archaeological Research

Archaeologists study ancient peoples through the places they lived in and things they left behind: that is, archaeologists find, dig up and interpret sites (such as houses, camps and villages), objects (such as tools and ornaments), and the remains of living things. Some Canadian Indian groups are now using archaeology to explore their own history. Others have taken action over what they consider to be disrespectful interference with human remains by certain archaeologists.

You can use archaeological research to reconstruct a people's traditional way of life by determining the foods they ate, the way they hunted or farmed, and the way they built settlements. Archaeology may also help you to estimate the date at which particular peoples first arrived in, or left, a given region. This information can be used in writing a local history, and in resolving matters such as legal land and resource claims.

Archaeologists use special skills in their work, and normally take special precautions to ensure that what they find is not damaged or taken out of context. For these reasons, you should set aside time to study archaeological methods if you want to use them in your work. In most provinces, you also need special permits (and sometimes special academic qualifications) to set up and carry out your own "dig".* Thus it is a good idea to consult a professional archaeologist if you want to do your own archaeological work in the field.

---

* The law relating to archaeology in each province is outlined on pages 146-150 of *An Introduction to Canadian Archaeology* by D.L. Newlands and C. Breede (Toronto, 1976).

Here are some sources especially recommended as beginners' guides to archaeology:

Facts Wanted	Where to find them
Information on current archaeological work in your area	(a) The "Archaeological Survey" office of your provincial or territorial government (call the government's local information number for its address). (b) Recent issues of your local archaeological journal, or annual report of the local Archaeological Survey. (c) The "current research" column of the journal *American Antiquity*, which summarizes major archaeological activities in Canada. For a list of archaeological journals, reports and newsletters relating to your area, see "Periodical and occasional publications in Canadian archaeology: a checklist", comp. by Bennett McCardle (unpublished paper, 1983; available from the Treaties and Historical Research Centre, DIAND, Ottawa).
Basic books on the archaeology of Canada and of your region	J.V. Wright, *Six Chapters of Canada's Prehistory* (Ottawa: National Museums of Canada, 1976); Jesse D. Jennings, ed. *Ancient Native Americans* (San Francisco: Freeman, 1978), chapters 1 to 6; Jesse D. Jennings, *The Prehistory of North America* (2nd ed., New York: McGraw-Hill, 1974); R.E. Taylor and C.W. Meighan, *Chronologies in New World Archaeology* (New York: Academic Press, 1978); Dean Snow, *The Archaeology of North America* (N.Y.: Viking, 1976); J.V. Wright, *Ontario Prehistory* (Ottawa: National Museums of Canada, 1972); Ronald J. Mason, *Great Lakes Archaeology* (N.Y.: Academic Press, 1981); J.V. Wright, *Quebec Prehistory* (Scarborough, Ont.: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1979); C. Chapdelaine, ed. *Images de la Préhistoire du Québec*, *Recherches Amérindiennes au Québec*, special issue, 1978, vol. 7(1-2); James Tuck, *Newfoundland and Labrador Prehistory* (Toronto: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1977); Walter Hlady, *Ten Thousand Years: Archaeology in Manitoba* (Altona, Man.: D.W. Friesen, 1970); *Handbook of North American Indians, Volume 6: Subarctic* (Washington: Smithsonian Institution, 1981) and *Volume 15: Northeast* Washington: Smithsonian Institution, 1978).
Books on archaeological methods	James Deetz, *Invitation to Archaeology* (Garden City, N.Y.: Natural History Press, 1967); George F. MacDonald, *The Dig* (Ottawa: National Museum of Man, Archaeological Survey, 1976); Knut R. Fladmark, *A Guide to Basic Archaeological Field Procedure* (Burnaby, B.C.: Simon Fraser University, Department of Anthropology, 1976); Francois Picard, *Les traces du passé* (Sillery: Magazine Québec Science, 1979); and David L. Newlands and Claus Breede, *An Introduction to Canadian Archaeology* (Toronto: McGraw-Hill Ryerson, 1976). Note that Newlands' book contains useful general information on methods but focuses on recent and non-native sites.

Lists of further sources	George P. Murdock, Ethnographic Bibliography of North America (4th edition, New Haven: HRAF Press, 1975); Dean R. Snow, Native American Prehistory: A Critical Bibliography (Bloomington, Ind.: Indiana University Press, 1979); Peter Storck, A Preliminary Bibliography of Early Man in Eastern North America, 1839-1973 (Toronto: Royal Ontario Museum, 1975); Roger W. Moeller & J. Reid, Archaeological Bibliography for Eastern North America (Attleboro, Mass.: Eastern States Archaeological Federation, 1977); D.C. Joyes, "An annotated bibliography of Saskatchewan archaeology 1900-1975" Saskatchewan Archaeology Newsletter (1977) vol. 52(4-5); K.R. Fladmark, "Bibliography of the archaeology of British Columbia", BC Studies (1970) volumes 6-7 pages 126-151; Albert A. Dekin, Arctic Archaeology: A Bibliography and History (New York: Garland Publishing, 1978); and Robert F. Heizer et al. Archaeology. A Bibliographical Guide To The Basic Literature (New York: Garland Publishing, 1980).
Advice on setting up your own archaeological project	Archaeologists in the Departments of Anthropology or Archaeology at a university in your area. (For addresses, consult the University's information office, your public library, or the 1981-82 Guide to Departments of Sociology, Anthropology and Archaeology in Universities and Museums in Canada (National Museum of Man Mercury Series, Directorate Paper 2) Ottawa: National Museums of Canada 1982.

Research using fur trade records

The fur trade is an important part of Canadian native history, and has produced records of special interest to researchers. This material includes descriptions of native peoples and their economic and social relations with white explorers and traders from the 16th century up to the present day. These records are widely used, not only in historical and anthropological studies, but also in claims research and the documenting of court cases.

Because of the extent and diversity of fur trade records, they cannot be fully described here. I can only point out that Canadian fur trade archival material falls very roughly into six overlapping groups, corresponding more or less to six important time periods and regions:

1. The Atlantic Coast fur trade: Records on early casual trade between Maritime Indian groups and European fishermen, explorers, and others, mainly in the 16th and 17th centuries.

2. New France and the early northwestern fur trade: Records on French colonial trade, and its later developments, both in New France itself and on the northwestern "frontier" (now Ontario, the Great Lakes, and the eastern Prairies) in the 16th to 19th centuries.

3. The British North American fur trade: Records on trade by the Hudson's Bay Company and rival groups, especially the North-West Company (absorbed by the HBC in 1821), mainly in western and northern Canada in the 17th to 19th centuries (1670 to 1870).

4. The American fur trade: Records on trade in the early American colonies on the eastern seaboard, inland to the Appalachians, and in the western interior. These records include material on most of the border areas of what is now Canada for the 16th to 19th centuries.

5. The Pacific Northwest fur trade: Records on trade in British Columbia, Alaska, and the U.S. Northwest Coast, including early trade by ship from outside the region (the "maritime fur trade") and trade through established land posts. Includes records created by British, Spanish, American, Russian and other traders for the 18th and 19th centuries.

6. The modern fur trade: Records on trade by the Hudson's Bay Company and various other companies and individuals, from the ending of the HBC's western monopoly (1870) to the present. This material relates mainly to the North and the northern parts of British Columbia, the Prairie provinces, Ontario, Quebec and Labrador.

The fur trade records most often used today are those of the Hudson's Bay Company, which include records absorbed from the North-West Company. These are the most detailed and best-organized of the materials available. They include records created by particular fur trading posts (diaries, account books, annual reports, maps, letters, and so on) as well as the business records of the Company as a whole. Documents on other companies, periods and regions are scattered across Canada and the United States in the collections of particular colonial/provincial/state governments, and in the papers of individual explorers and traders. There is a great deal of background reading available for most periods (except the modern period after 1870) but no complete bibliography or guide.

Thus, prepare yourself for research in fur trade records: do some background reading, study finding aids to the records, and talk to the archivists. The following are some of the most useful references; see also guides listed on pages 198 - 211 of this handbook.

Fur trade -- background reading

Bolus, Malvina, ed. *People and Pelts: Selected Papers of the Second North American Fur Trade Conference*. Winnipeg: Peguis, 1973.

"The Fur Trade in Canada". *Western Canadian Journal of Anthropology* (1972) vol. 3 no. 1 (special issue).

Innis, Harold A. *The Fur Trade in Canada* (revised edition). Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1956.

Judd, Carol and A.J. Ray, eds. *Old Trails and New Directions: Papers of the Third North American Fur Trade Conference*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1980.

Phillips, Paul C. *The Fur Trade* (2 vols.). Norman, Okla.: University of Oklahoma Press, 1961.

Focuses on trade in the US but includes much material on the Canadian region before 1867, with a good bibliography on pp. 577-656, vol. 2.

Ray, Arthur J. *Indians in the Fur Trade: Their Roles as Hunters, Trappers and Middlemen in the Lands Southwest of Hudson Bay, 1660-1870*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1974.

Ray, Arthur J. "Fur trade history as an aspect of native history". In: Ian A.L. Getty and D.B. Smith, *One Century Later...* Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press, 1978, pp. 7-19.

Rich, E.E. *The Fur Trade And The Northwest to 1857*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart, 1967.

Sealey, Gary D. "History of the Hudson's Bay Company, 1870-1900". M.A. thesis, University of Western Ontario, 1969.

Thomas, L.G. "Historiography of the fur trade era". In: Richard Allen, ed. *A Region of the Mind...* Regina: Canadian Plains Research Centre, 1973, pp. 73-85.

Williams, Glyndwr. "Highlights of the first 200 years of the Hudson's Bay Company". *The Beaver* (autumn 1970) 301:4-64.

A good short history of the HBC, with recommendations for further reading.

Bibliographies and guides to fur trade archives

Grey J. "Three hundred years of records". The Beaver (autumn 1970) 301:66-70.

A short outline of HBC records and their uses.

Canada. Public Archives of Canada. Manuscript Division. General Inventory-Inventaire général. Manuscripts-Manuscrits. (Vol. 3:) MG17 - MG21. Ottawa: Public Archives of Canada, 1974.

Includes detailed descriptions of PAC document collections in MG-19 ("Fur trade and Indians") and MG-20 (Hudson's Bay Company records to 1870).

Muise, D.A., ed. A Reader's Guide to Canadian History. Vol. 1: Beginnings to Confederation. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1982, pp. 37-40, 63-65 and 169-187.

Prucha, Francis Paul. A Bibliographical Guide to the History of Indian-White Relations in the United States. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1977; see pp. 191-201, "Trade and Traders".

Smythe, Terry. "Thematic study of the fur trade in the Canadian West, 1670-1870". Unpublished Agenda Paper no. 1968-29, Historic Sites and Monuments Board, Ottawa, 1968.

Good catalogue and history of fur posts in western Canada, with an extensive bibliography. Available in the Library or the Treaties and Historical Research Centre, DIAND, Ottawa.

Thibault, Claude. Bibliographia Canadiana. Don Mills, Ont.: Longman Canada, 1973.

The best general bibliography of Canadian primary and secondary fur trade sources.

Usher, Peter. Fur Trade Posts of the Northwest Territories, 1870-1970. (Northern Science Research Group Paper no. 71-4). Ottawa: DIAND, 1971.

Voorhis, Ernest. Historic Forts and Trading Posts of the French Régime and of the English Fur Trading Companies. Ottawa: Department of the Interior, Natural Resources Intelligence Service, 1930.

The only general catalogue of fur posts across Canada. To update, see Smythe and Usher (above) and the map "Posts of the Canadian Fur Trade", pp. 79-80 of the National Atlas of Canada (4th ed., Toronto: Macmillan/Information Canada, 1974).

Various other specialized guides may also be of use to general researchers who need a mental picture of the records: see articles in The Canadian Geographer (1978) vol. 21(3): 268-274; Bulletin of the Committee on Canadian Labour History (1979) vol. 7:1-2; Archivaria (1975-6) vol. 1:3-38; and Business History Review (1980) vol. 54(3):387-93.

E. WAYS OF TAKING AND STORING INFORMATION

One of the most important parts of your job will be to collect and store the information you find so that it can be used to write reports, or for other purposes. Ask yourself: When I find the information I need, how will I keep a record of it? Do I need a full copy of the record, or only a summary? What other facts or documents should I store it with?

To help you deal with these problems, this section shows how to use references, notes, photocopies, and filing systems to keep your information in order.

References

Many researchers will tell you that there is only one rule of research: always write down exactly where you found any piece of information. Note the title, author and date of any useful book you read. Write down the location and number of any file from which you take notes or photocopies, and attach it to the notes or copies themselves. Keep a list of the names of offices, archives, or libraries where you have found books or records, with their addresses and telephone numbers. You will soon be grateful to yourself for doing these "small" things: they guarantee that you will not lose track of facts you will need again.

Taking Notes

Your work is moving ahead. You have more than two or three documents, or one book, to read. How do you begin to record important facts in an orderly way?

The best move at this point is to learn how to take notes. What might be called the second rule of research is: organized notes are the heart of a research project. If you keep good records, dozens of books and thousands of archival documents will fall into place for you. You will be able to write your final report with confidence.

Most researchers working on Indian history and claims find that this is the best way of taking notes:

1. Get supplies: Buy some pads of writing paper (lined) and some file cards (4 by 6 inches or 5 by 8 inches are best). Use either or both of these for the rest of your project. Also buy file folders to hold notes or photocopies.

2. Take references: Have your paper or cards with you when you work. When you read a document that you want to remember, take one file card (or one sheet of paper) and write the source of the document (its "reference") at the top. Include the place where you found the document (name of archive, box or volume number, and file number), its date, and any other important information (such as the name of the letter-writer and receiver, or the registration number of a legal document).

3. Summarize: Write on this card or sheet a summary of the document. Try to make this neither too long nor too short -- just as much as you will need to know when you write your final report. (You may not be sure exactly what is important, or what details you will need. But as long as you put down a good general summary of the record, and note where it can be found, you can always come back to it later.) Treat books and published papers in the same way. Use one sheet per subject if possible.

4. Use subject headings: Each card or sheet should have a subject heading -- a few words written at the top of the paper, saying what the book, file, or document is about. If you use one card for notes on a whole file or book, you may put several subject headings on it. You can also make several different cards. When in doubt, make a new card for each document or subject, with the full reference and a new subject heading on each.

For example, you may find documents in one file that refer to four different promises made when a Treaty was negotiated. You could make four cards for this one file. Each should have the file reference on it in full. Each should have its own heading; for example, "TREATY—SCHOOLS", "TREATY—LAND", "TREATY—MONEYS", and "TREATY—HUNTING, FISHING, AND TRAPPING". On each card, summarize or quote all the documents on that subject.

5. Record quotations accurately: You may need the full, original wording of a document or passage from a book. Always be exact when copying quotations, even to the last comma. Otherwise, the words you use in your report will be yours, and not those of the person you want to quote. This is important in all research, but it is absolutely vital in legal or claims work. If the quotation is very important, or too long to write out, make a photocopy of it.

Here is an example of a note taken from a published book. The subject is shown at the top, then a short version of the "reference" (the author's name, the book title, and the page number), and finally, the notes.

INDIAN VOTING RIGHTS

R. Fisher, Contact and Conflict, page 178:

-- "As was being proved in other parts of the British Empire, protecting native interests was incompatible with granting self-government to colonists."

-- B.C. got responsible government in 1871, but Province passed laws in 1872 and 1875 barring Indians from voting in Prov. elections

-- laws were opposed by some non-Indians (e.g. newspaper Vic. Daily Standard) but had support of public and prov. gov't.

For each book you read, you should also keep a "reference card" (with the full name of the author, full book title, place and date of publication, and publisher's name) like this:

Robin FISHER

Contact and Conflict: Indian-European Relations in British Columbia, 1774-1890.

Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press, 1977.

Photocopies

Many researchers take photocopies of as many documents as they can, and use them instead of (or along with) notes. This is a good system if you do not have much time with the files or in the library, or if you want to set up an "archive" of your own. Most libraries and archives allow you to take photocopies, although you usually have to visit in person to indicate what you want.

A photocopy collection is useful as long as you make sure of one thing: never put a photocopy away without writing a reference on it (that is, the name of archive, volume or box number, and file number from which it came). A referenced photocopy appears on page 238 of this book. If you have a bundle of copies from one file, take the time to put the reference on each page. Half an hour spent doing this can save hours or days later on, if (for example) you have to get more documents from the same file, or if you need certified copies for a legal claim.

You may not think that this is a good way to use your time. But you probably also do not want to share the experience of one Band Council, which took thousands of photocopies from files in Ottawa -- records of more than 100 years of their history -- without referencing a single page. Some years later, a new researcher pulled the papers out of the Council Office's attic to document a claim. He could not use any of them as they stood. It took weeks of work to retrace each page back to the original files and ledgers. Some have not been identified to this day.

Files and Filing Systems

Soon you will have a large pile of file cards or sheets of paper, and a bundle of photocopied documents. Each has a clear subject heading, or a reference showing where it came from, or both. You now need a way of keeping your records in order.

You will have to create a filing or storage system that works well for you. Most people use some combination of notes, photocopies, and files, arranged by subject or date. Here are three different systems.

- Card and file system. Keep file cards in a box (a shoebox or, if your budget allows, a special file card box) in bundles divided up according to subject. Use coloured cards, rubber bands, or printed card dividers to separate them. Within each bundle you can also organize notes according to the date of the source.

  Mark on each card whether you have a photocopy of the documents described on it. Keep the photocopies separately, in file folders arranged and marked in the same way as the cards.

- Sheet and Photocopy System. If you use sheets of paper for notes, arrange them by subject and (within each subject area) by date. Clip each bundle together securely. Attach to each bundle all the photocopies you have taken on that subject. Put each bundle in its own file folder, label the file, and store. (You could also put the files in alphabetical order by subject.)

- Note and Binder System. Keep your cards or sheets in bundles, and store them in card boxes or files, as described above. But take all your photocopies and bind them separately, in special indexed volumes. The cheapest way to do this is to punch each page with side-holes, and bind them in looseleaf binders or hard "Accopress" covers (sold at office supply stores). The documents in each binder can be arranged by subject or simply by date.

  At the front of each binder, put an index. This should list the date, the document's title or writer and receiver, and the source, for each document in the book. Here are two entries in an index, describing two documents from the Public Archives of Canada (PAC), in RG-10, the records relating to Indian Affairs:

1. Letter, Reed to Ferguson, 10 January 1894.
   (PAC, RG-10, Volume 3099, File 345,781).

2. "Report on Indian Schools in Ontario", J.A. McCrae, 16 July 1901.
   (PAC, RG-10, Volume 1675, Pages 61-68).

This system takes time to set up, but it gives you a valuable reference book. In it, your documents are all in order and are easy to consult. You can add to them when you find more. Indexed document-books are useful, not only as basic records, but also as aids in writing detailed reports and preparing complicated court cases or claims. Finally, they can be used as the basis for a Band archive or a public display.

"I've been looking for that!"

Copyright, 1980, Universal Press Syndicate.
Reprinted with permission. All rights reserved.

Whatever filing system you use, stick to it. Filing is always the least interesting part of any project. It is also one of the most important. If you do it systematically, you will find that writing your report is easy. Other people will have less trouble understanding the records you have collected. No one who spends time setting up and keeping a filing system is ever sorry for it later on.

F. SPECIAL RESEARCH PROBLEMS

Researchers are often faced with special problems, and have to find special ways of getting around them. Here are some thoughts on the most common ones -- doing research by telephone or mail, using microfilm, dealing with restrictions on access to records, avoiding delays in photocopying, and obtaining certified copies for legal purposes.

Research by Telephone or Mail

You must usually visit an archive or library [illegible] to find the records you need. Most researchers like to "get used to" [illegible] les — to see what they look like, and how to use them. Few archiv[illegible] have extra staff or time to do research for you. Even so, there are times when you can shorten your work (and save on travel money) by using the phone or the mail. Here are some examples:

When you are preparing for your first trip to an archive

Write or telephone the archive several weeks ahead of your visit. Tell the archivist what you are working on. Ask him or her:

- to mail you any printed information they have on hand about your subject, such as any "inventories" of record groups, or other research guidelines;
- to suggest names of any books you might find in your local library that describe the records you want to use; and
- to tell you about any special library or archive rules, such as hours of operation, registration, and limits on access to particular records.

When you need to use books not held in your own library

Some of the books you need may not be in your local library. Many older books on Indian history are quite rare, and are not even found in the largest libraries in the province. This need not be a problem. You can order copies from libraries in other parts of Canada (or abroad) by using interlibrary loans.

To do this, you need to know the full title and author of the book or article; if you can, also find its date and place of publication and the name of its publisher (if it is a book). For articles published in newspapers, magazines or academic journals, you should also have the full date of publication, including a volume number and page number, if possible. Most good reading lists will give you all these facts. If not, take your list to the library and ask the librarians if they can track down the item.

Many local public libraries, and the large libraries attached to archives, universities or community colleges, can then order the book on interlibrary loan. They will trace a copy somewhere in Canada, and will have it sent to them. You can then use it on their premises. All you need is a large enough library, time (sometimes months), and a reasonably full description of the item you want.

When you need to use microfilmed records

A large part of all Department of Indian Affairs records dated before 1950 -- and certain other old records relating to Indian history -- have been put on microfilm. The original records are packed away for safekeeping, but researchers can read and take copies from the films. You can also borrow microfilms by interlibrary loan.

Appendix 3 at the end of this handbook lists the main Indian historical records on microfilm. You should note that:

- Some large libraries in western Canada, listed in the Appendix, have their own copies of Indian Affairs microfilms.

- Microfilms of RG-10 do not include certain "restricted" records relating to Indian status and membership, and other personal matters. These can only be used in Ottawa by researchers with proper authorization.

- The archives usually place limits on the number of microfilm reels you can borrow at any one time, and sometimes do not allow you to take copies from them.

- Microfilm can be borrowed only through libraries that have the proper reading machines.

When you need documents in a hurry

Most archivists ask you to arrange for copies of documents by coming to the archives in person. Some archives do, however, allow researchers to order copies by mail. This is often done only in cases of special need, and only if you can give the archivists full, correct references to the papers you want. (This is another reason to keep a good reference and filing system.) Orders done in this way can be done incorrectly, so rely on mail-ordering only in emergencies.

Restrictions on Access to Records

Some records in government or private archives are "restricted"; that is, those who hold them do not allow outside researchers to use them. The restrictions may apply to some or to all researchers; temporarily or for good; to whole files, or only to parts of files. You will find a detailed discussion of access rules and what to do about them in Appendix 2 of this handbook (pages 331 - 343).

Photocopying Problems

Researchers often need copies of archival documents in a hurry when there is a deadline or other emergency. They find that it can be difficult to get "rush" copies, especially from Public Archives of Canada microfilms of RG-10 or other records. Because of staff and machine shortages, the PAC's normal delay on orders of over 25 pages per day is now anywhere between one and four months. Orders for copies from paper originals are usually faster, and generally create no problems.

Here are a few ways to avoid the problem, at the PAC or elsewhere.

- Use any available "fast service" copy systems. For example, you can now get up to 25 pages a day on a same-day basis from PAC microfilms, if you apply in person.

- Don't delay ordering copies you know you will need. Put in your orders as soon as possible. Researchers involved in claims work, or researchers who can afford bulk copying, tend to copy as much as possible, as soon as possible. This gives them "insurance" against second thoughts, delays, and unexpected demands for documents.

- Take copies from duplicate collections of microfilm. Where you can get faster copies from the microfilm of a collection, use the film instead of originals.

- Safeguard all the copies you take. Losing documents doubles your effort. Remember that the dollar value of each sheet you misplace is only a part of the resources you spent getting the copy in the first place.

In extremely urgent cases, or where an original microfilm is unreadable, it is also possible to ask for copies from the original documents, instead of from the films. Since the aim of microfilming is to reduce handling of the originals, most archives, and especially the PAC, are unwilling to do this except in very special situations.

Certified Copies of Archival Documents

You may need specially "certified" copies of documents for some court cases and legal transactions. You normally obtain these by making an ordinary photocopy of the document you need, and taking it to the archivist or other official in charge of the original record. He or she will sign, seal, or stamp the document to indicate that it is a "true copy" of the original. There are other special kinds of certification, but these have to be arranged by a lawyer.

STEP 3: EVALUATE

You have now read all the files and books, done all the interviews, and made copies of all the documents you need. At this point it is time to stop for thought. Set aside time to evaluate what you have done, and to decide what comes next.

To evaluate your work so far, ask yourself:

- Do I have enough information to answer all my questions? If not, can I do more research? Is it likely to do me any good?
- Do I need special advice from co-workers, or from professionals such as teachers, archivists, librarians, scholars, Band officials, lawyers, or surveyors?
- What will my final report look like: a short written report, or a long one? A book? A public display with pictures? A legal statement of claim?
- If I can't finish the project, can I use my information in some other way? How can I store my files and notes so that they can be used later, or by others?

After you have made these decisions, you will be ready to go on to the fourth step, and write your final report.

Advice From Professional People

You may be faced with special problems that require advice from outside professional people or experts.

Librarians, archivists, teachers and scholars

People researching histories or claims often need special advice on where to find information. You can usually get it from librarians and archivists. Take advantage of their knowledge whenever you can: learn how to use their indexes, catalogues and finding aids. This will speed up your project and allow you to work more independently.

You may want to talk to teachers or writers who have devoted special time to studying Indian history and ways of life. These may be elders, and/or teachers of history, ethnohistory, anthropology, archaeology, or geography. To find such people, you could visit a "native studies" program in a university near you. If there is none, try a department of history, geography or anthropology. The research director of your local Indian association may be able to give you names of reliable consultants.

Lawyers

If you are preparing a claim on behalf of an Indian group, you almost always need legal advice. Where do you get it, if you don't know a lawyer you can trust? Native law is a complicated subject, and there are still not many lawyers who can claim a very good understanding of it. To make sure that you get in touch with the best possible advisors among those available, consider the following:

- Always look around. The nearest lawyer is not always the best person for you. The lawyer who handles local traffic charges may not be the ideal person to help negotiate a land claim.

- Ask other Bands, Indian organizations, or teachers of native law in the Law faculty of a university, to recommend an experienced lawyer. You can also call the Law Society of your province. (It will be in the telephone book, usually in your provincial capital.) Ask the Society if it has lists of lawyers specializing in native law, or in the particular problem you are researching.

- Shop around among the people recommended to you. Talk to at least two or three before you choose one. Explain your problem, and ask each one how he or she would handle it. Observe how knowledgeable he or she seems to be about native people generally, as well as about native law. Ask what his or her charges might be.

- After you hire a lawyer, make sure to give him or her full information and clear directions. If you are ever dissatisfied with your legal advice, say so. Many people are afraid to look bad or to lose their advisor's trust if they do this. But you are paying well for service, and have a right to make sure the money is being earned. If things do not improve, find another advisor.

- A good lawyer should be able to advise you on how to write a claim so that it puts your case in the best possible way, but he or she needs all the facts first. Lawyers may do background research themselves, or you may do the work for them. If you do co-operate on a project with your lawyer, always sit down with him or her as early as possible and find out what facts you should look for. If you co-ordinate your work carefully, your case has a better chance of success.

Other experts

Doctors or nurses can advise you on the history of Indian health. Economists can work on the past economic history of a reserve. Surveyors can discuss reserve-boundary and related problems with you. Wildlife management experts can be involved in studies of past hunting, fishing, and trapping practices.

Of course, not all experts are found in universities or consultancies. The person with the most useful knowledge may the one who has been most directly involved -- an elder, a leader, or an official (Indian or non-Indian). It would be hard, for example, to write about the history of a Band's government without talking to the former Chiefs and Councillors themselves. Whether you need a specially-trained professional, or a person who has "been there" and has particular experience, varies from project to project.

Before you approach anyone for information it is a good idea to make preparations. First, know what questions you want to ask before you go. Contact the person in advance, and make arrangements for a visit. They can then set aside time, prepare themselves, and perhaps come up with extra information for you.

Finally, remember that experts do not have the final word on your problem. No outsider can be fully aware of all the facts of your situation. A professional's advice has to be weighed against your own knowledge. Experts are likely to know more than you do on their own special subject; but they should not think poorly of you if you question them, or even if you refuse their advice. Most people with special knowledge are pleased and honoured to be asked for help, regardless of what you do with the help later. As long as you can explain your problem to them fully and clearly, both you and they may gain from your meeting.

STEP 4: WRITE

You have now decided what your final report is to look like. It might be:

- A short summary of your findings for the information of others, for a newspaper article, or for "briefing" before a claims meeting.

- A longer report which tells a story or describes people and places in more detail, and which includes pictures, maps and drawings.

- An organized collection of notes, files, and documents, perhaps with short summaries of important subjects. (Think of this as your own research "archive".)

- A display of pictures, maps, and short pieces of writing, such as a "picture essay" on local history for a school or church.

- Any other special form that you invent to suit your purpose.

The form you choose depends on your own needs and imagination, but the written part is usually the most important. In this, you lay out all your findings, tell your story, and pass on any advice you want to give. Your report will be read by others. They will not at first know the facts as well as you do, but they should be able to share your discoveries in the end. So it pays to write a clear, direct report of your findings.

Here is one good way of writing such a report. These steps work for projects of almost any type.

1. Choose the main headings of your report. Decide what are the most important events in your story, or the most important facts about which you want to write. Write them down in order: this will be your outline. If you keep this list in mind, you will be able to write more easily and clearly.

2. Put your file notes and documents in order. You could arrange them according to the headings of your outline, or you could put them in order by date.

3. Read your notes and documents again. Think about them. Write down the most important facts you want to mention. If your paper is long or complicated, do it one heading at a time. Make a separate outline for each heading.

4. Write your paper. Do this in three steps. Begin by telling your readers briefly what you are writing about. Then follow your outline, and write each section, one after another. Lastly, add a conclusion that sums up all your findings, and your thoughts about them, in a few sentences or paragraphs. This system has been summarized as: "Say what you're going to say, then say it, then say what you've said".

5. Add any special material, such as pictures, maps, or copies of important documents. These can be placed within the report, or at the end.

6. Re-read the paper. Then give it to someone else to read — ideally, someone who knows less about the subject than you. Ask this person to tell you about any parts they can't understand. Fix them.

7. Make a title page. This should give the title of the report, the names of the writer(s), the date the report was finished, and any other important information, such as the name of the school, Band Council, university course, or other body for whom the report was written.

8. Make a final copy of the paper.

9. Make at least one extra copy of this final paper, and keep it in a safe place. Losing your only copy of a carefully-written report is a heartbreaking experience. It can easily be avoided.

STEP 5: ACT

You work is finished. You have a document collection, a history, a report, or a claim. Your last step is to use your findings. You may store them for later use, make them public in some informal way, publish them in book form, or put them together as a formal claim.

Storing Information

You may not be able to use your notes and documents at once. You may be unsure about the meaning of your findings, or you may want to do more research. If so, you will have to store what you have found, so that it can be used -- perhaps by someone else -- at a later date.

Plan for this just as carefully as you would plan for writing a final report. After all, you have put a lot of thought, effort, time, and money into your project. Your file system is arranged (you hope) so that others can understand it. Some day, you or others may be able to come back to it and start where you left off.

It makes sense, then, to spend extra time "packing" your records away for what you hope will be temporary storage. The fact is that uncared-for papers are easy to lose forever. Many Indian Agency and Band Office records across Canada have been destroyed by fire or thrown away by people who did not know what they were worth. Remember the files of the Saddle Lake Agency, part of which were eaten by mice. Or the records of the Department of Indian Affairs in Ottawa for the 1940s and 1950s, which were damaged by the flooding of a warehouse in downtown Ottawa in 1962. Something like this could happen to you.

Records can be safely stored in a number of ways. For ideas, go to a good office supply store and look at the different models of file cases, boxes and cabinets available. Whatever you use, it should be designed to keep your papers safe from damage, in their proper order, and available to anyone who has a right to use them.

Check that your tapes of interviews are well labelled and stored away from heat and cold.

Consider putting a short report (a page or two) with your files, summing up your work up to the time it stopped, and stating what has to be done when it begins again.

If you have too many records to store yourself, and if you are willing to let them out of your hands, you could also consider giving them to a local or provincial public archive.

Making Research Public

How you make research public depends, of course, on the aims of your project. If you are writing a report for a Band Council or other official group, they may have their own plans. The same is true if you are doing a local history for a school or newspaper, or an essay for a university course.

On the other hand, you may not have any such obligations. Once you have your final research done, you could ask yourself if there is anyone else who could use this information. Maybe you could give a copy to your neighbourhood or school library so that others could borrow it. You might exchange reports with others working on similar topics. Or you might write a short summary of it for your local newspaper. This would make your work more widely known, and would encourage others to do research like yours.

A very important rule for researchers who write reports that are not private is always to make your findings available to the people whose history you have written. Your knowledge may benefit both them and yourself. You may be giving them back an important part of their own past. They may in turn be able to improve and add to your work. Seeing others do this can be the best and most satisfying (or at least the liveliest) part of research. You may find that you have a great deal to give. You will also find that, however much you know, there is always more to learn.

In some cases you may want to try publishing your findings in book form. This takes some special planning, and, usually, extra money. Here are a few types of publishing to explore, from the cheapest to the most expensive.

1. Find out if your local newspaper, history society newsletter, or native newspaper is interested in publishing your findings. (Sometimes a long report can be published in sections, over several issues of a paper.)

2. Visit a photocopy store and ask about discount prices for producing, say, 20 to 50 copies of your paper. (You may also want a light binding and special covers, if you can afford them.)

3. Ask an experienced researcher, a teacher of native studies in a school or university, or an Indian organization for the names of any special journal or national magazine that might publish your work, or any offices that might pay for basic printing costs.

4. Contact a book publishing company -- for example, one that has already published works on native history -- and ask if it is interested in your report. (Someone there may also be willing to give you advice on improving it if it is close to being publishable.)

Whatever you do, try to talk to someone who has gone through the same steps before. Some good basic advice on publishing can be found in writers' guides, such as E.J. Holmgren's Writing Local History (pages 16-19) and H.A. Dempsey's How to Prepare a Local History (pages 14-19). Full references to these books are on page 22 of this handbook. Also, look at a few published Indian local histories (such as those mentioned in Volume One, page 17).

Claims

Volume One of this handbook described the problems of researchers involved in a claims process. Here, I will suggest ways to approach the preparation and writing up of a formal Indian claim.

Preparing an Indian claim for settlement -- whether this is to be done by negotiation, court action, or some other process -- takes a great deal of work. You, the researcher, have to make special efforts to collect all the facts of the case. These must be kept in good order, so that they can be used by politicians and lawyers. You may have to plan your work to fit into a schedule of negotiation meetings or court hearings. You may have to do a second round of research on new issues that come up part-way through the claim.

Research on a claim begins like any other kind of research. But when your work on a claim is finished, it is a good idea to review it with special care. Study all your facts and findings closely. Ask yourself questions like these:

- Do I have all the known eyewitness reports of the important event I am concerned with (such as a Treaty signing or a surrender)?

- Is my copy of an important document (such as a land lease or surrender) the original one, or an office copy made later?

- If I quote from the Indian Act when discussing a legal matter, am I using the version of the Act that was in force at the time of the event in question? Or is it a later and different Act?

- Are there facts in our case that the other side might use against us? If so, can I prepare new arguments to take account of these facts in some different way, so that they work in our favour?

- Are all my notes and documents in good enough order that they can be used by others involved in the claim?

NEW DECK, PLEASE
WHY?
I GOT YOUR LIBRARY CARD

TUMBLEWEEDS by Tom K. Ryan, © 1976 by CBS Publications, courtesy of Field Newspaper Syndicate.

If a lawyer is involved in the claim, you will probably work with him or her throughout this part of the project.

Writing a claims document

After your research is finished, you may be asked to write up a paper to be used when the claim is negotiated or made public. There is no one good format for such a paper. Each claim is different, and not all people making claims have the same political goals.

The following system is one which has been used by some Indian bands and organizations to develop and present their claims. These dealt mostly with such things as reserve land surrenders, Treaty land entitlement, and Treaty rights generally. The system has six steps, each with a slightly different purpose.

This system is not necessarily a good format for all claims. Following it won't guarantee that a claim will be accepted. It is, however, one way to keep your facts and priorities in order and to inform your decision-makers, when research has to be turned into political action.

1. The background report. You first write a full history of the claim. This describes the history of the people or Band, shows how the claim came into being, and states what you know about the legal right on which it is based. It includes all the facts that seem important to you. These should be fully referenced and footnoted for later use. Attach all the major documents to this paper, or group them in a separate collection. This material will be your main reference tool throughout the claim.

2. The first review. If you have advisors (such as other researchers or lawyers) ask them to read the first report. Have them suggest further work or legal arguments. Get a formal written legal opinion, if one is needed. The Council, or the organization to which you are responsible, then will give directions as to what to do next.

3. Draft statement of claim. You may then be asked to write (or help write) a draft paper outlining the claim just as it will look when it is made public or used in negotiations. In this outline give as many of the facts as you think will help your case. (Your lawyer may advise you to withhold facts for legal reasons.) A good format for this paper is as follows:

Title Page. This announces who you are, the subject of the claim, and the date.

Summary. This gives a very short outline of the facts of the claim. It can be broken up into short numbered paragraphs, each one stating a major fact of the claim.

Argument. Re-type each numbered paragraph at the top of a separate page. Under each one, lay out in more detail the facts that support that part of the claim.

Documents. At the end of the statement, attach all the documents you intend to provide in support of the claim. Each should be fully referenced, and can also be indexed, as described on page 279 of this handbook.

4. The political options paper. If you are asked to do so, write down a summary of important matters not mentioned in the draft statement. This will be used by those making the final decisions. It would list:

- Any problems to be expected during public discussion or negotiation of the claim, such as weak points in the argument, missing evidence, and political issues.
- The choices or "options" available for taking action on the claim. For example, what else could be done if the draft statement of claim is not approved? Or if the arguments are successfully challenged by the other side?
- Any other expert advice or research needed.

5. The final statement of claim. If your draft statement of claim is accepted, make any changes to it that are necessary. Make a good final copy for use.

6. Public briefing paper. Write a short summary of the claim. This can be given out to the public or used in the negotiations.

APPENDIX 1

GLOSSARY OF TERMS USED IN INDIAN HISTORICAL RESEARCH

The definitions given here apply to the terms as they are used in historical research. They are suitable for general reference, but you should consult a law dictionary or a lawyer for more precise legal meanings if you intend to use any of them in a legal document or claim. Consult the "definition sections" included at the beginning of the Indian Act (or related statutes) for meanings of terms not given here.

Words in CAPITALS are also found as separate entries.

ABORIGINAL	Relating to Indian or Inuit life before the coming of non-native people. Compare CONTACT.
ABORIGINAL RIGHTS	The special rights of native people that arise out of their ABORIGINAL use and occupancy of territory. "ABORIGINAL title" is usually used to refer specifically to land rights. In practice, however, it often also indicates closely connected matters such as rights to hunt, fish, and trap, and rights to use various other resources. See also CLAIM.
ABROGATION (legal term)	The breaking of an agreement, such as an Indian TREATY, by one of those who made it, or by a higher power. This term is used when the breaking is, or may be, authorized by law. For example, the Migratory Birds Convention Treaty is said to abrogate the hunting rights provisions of some or all of the NUMBERED TREATIES.
ABSTRACT	A record held by the INDIAN LAND REGISTRY, listing all land dealings ("transactions") on a particular Indian reserve, or in a particular region. Some abstracts, such as the Registry's "Surrendered Land Leasing" abstracts, cover only a particular kind of transaction.
ADHESION (legal term)	A legal undertaking by which someone accepts the terms of an existing agreement, such as an Indian TREATY. Bands who were not present at the signing of a TREATY sometimes "adhere" to it (that is, they sign short written adhesions) many years later. The adhesions often do not repeat all the words of the original agreement. Individual Indian people who have never been in Treaty before sometimes join a Treaty band after the main agreement is negotiated. These people are sometimes said to have "informally adhered to Treaty".

ADVERSE POSSESSION (legal term)	A person who lives on someone else's land for some time, who does not abandon it, and who is never removed by the owner, is "in adverse possession" of the land. In some special situations this person can gain ownership of the land; that is, if he or she has been there long enough, and has used the land in certain ways specified by law. See also PRESCRIPTION and SQUATTER.
AFFIDAVIT	A formal written statement of facts, to which the person making the statement attaches a formal oath swearing that everything in it is true. Affidavits are sworn to and signed in front of a special official with the authority to "take" them, such as a notary or magistrate. Since 1876, the Indian Act has required that both Indian and government representatives swear an affidavit after every SURRENDER. This is meant to show that the surrender has been done in the proper legal manner. Affidavits are sometimes also called "depositions".
ALIENATE (legal term)	To sell, give away, or otherwise dispose of land, or other property, permanently. SURRENDERED Indian reserve lands are not fully alienated from their previous owners until the buyer receives his final deed or PATENT.
AMENDMENT	See STATUTE.
ANNUITY(or TREATY ANNUITY)	A token payment, made yearly by the Crown to individual members of an Indian Band, under the terms of certain TREATIES. Annuities (as distinct from once-for-all lump sum payments made when the Treaty was signed) were paid under most of the pre-Confederation Upper Canadian Treaties from 1818 onward, and under all post-Confederation agreements except the Chippewa-Mississauga Treaties of 1923. Up to about 1827-29, payment was in cash and/or goods worth certain stated sums; each could be substituted or "commuted" for the other according to circumstances. After this date, annuities were paid in cash, usually as a small fixed sum per person, sometimes (as in the ROBINSON TREATIES) with a ceiling on the total amount payable within the Treaty area. In the early period, cash annuities were either distributed to individual Band members, or banked ("funded") on their behalf; these latter sums became the foundation of some Band TRUST FUNDS. Annuities in the NUMBERED TREATIES were (and are) distributed annually in cash. See also CONSIDERATION, PRESENTS, TREATY PAYLIST, TREATY DAY, and TRUST FUNDS.
ANTHROPOLOGY	A type of study that deals with human beings and their society, both now and in the past. Anthropologists study people's ways of making a living, family patterns, political systems, religion, languages, and so on. Some anthropologists have written descriptions of Indian life that are accurate and detailed enough to be used in historical or claims work. See also ETHNOLOGY, ETHNOHISTORY and ARCHAEOLOGY.
APPROPRIATION	The amount of money that Parliament allots each year, out of public funds, for a particular purpose. An appropriation is given to the Department of Indian Affairs to fund its administration and programs. This money is completely separate from Band-owned TRUST FUNDS, even though both funds have until recently been managed by the Department. Appropriation money is sometimes called "the Parliamentary vote".

ARCHIVES	Collections of old or unpublished records which can be used in historical and other RESEARCH. Archives contain such things as family or personal letters and papers; government, church and business records; maps, pictures and photographs; films and TV shows; and tapes or records. A large proportion of these items are PRIMARY SOURCES.
ARCHIVAL RESEARCH	RESEARCH that looks for facts in the records held by ARCHIVES. Archival research is thus usually different from ORAL HISTORY, or from research in SECONDARY SOURCES.
ASSIGNMENT (legal term)	A document that formally hands over someone's part-ownership or INTEREST in a piece of land to someone else. For example, a buyer of SURRENDERED Indian reserve land, who has paid only part of the price to the Department of Indian Affairs, could assign his interest in the land to another person. That person would then have to pay the rest of the price, and would receive the final LETTERS PATENT. LEASES can be assigned in similar ways.
BAND	A group of Indian people. The word has at least two meanings today.
	(1) A legal group defined by the Indian Act. In this sense, a Band is the basic unit of Indian government recognized by the federal government. Each has its own BAND COUNCIL and legal membership list. Most have reserve land and a TRUST FUND as well. See also IRREGULAR BAND.
	(2) A small social group, usually of people following a traditional life of hunting, fishing, trapping and gathering, with special kinds of leadership and family patterns.
BAND BYLAW	A law enacted by a BAND COUNCIL, on certain subjects specified in the Indian Act. Generally speaking, bylaws are enforceable only on the Band's reserve(s). Since 1951, the Act has provided that Band bylaws come into effect under the Indian Act when the Minister approves them. They are now customarily registered under the Statutory Instruments Act and are indexed, though not printed, in the Canada Gazette (Part II).
	Before 1951, Band bylaws were called "rules and regulations" and were brought into force either by ORDER IN COUNCIL or (for those made under the INDIAN ADVANCEMENT ACT) by Ministerial approval.
BAND COUNCIL	The governing body of a BAND under the Indian Act. It is composed of one or more Chiefs, and usually several Councillors (formerly called "headmen"). Some Bands choose their Councils today under the ELECTIVE SYSTEM, and some by CUSTOM. See also HEREDITARY CHIEFS and TRIBAL COUNCIL.
BAND COUNCIL RESOLUTION (or BCR)	A document by which a BAND COUNCIL records a formal decision or a Band Bylaw.
BAND FUNDS	See TRUST FUND.
BLUE BOOK	See ESTIMATES.
BONUS	See MINERAL RIGHTS.

CAVEAT (or "CAUTION")	A formal legal action, by which someone claims ownership of, or an INTEREST in, a particular piece of land that is registered in someone else's name. The usual procedure is for the "caveator" to place a notice in the land title registration books, warning all concerned that the ownership of the right is disputed, and may be taken to court. Provincial laws relating to land titles set down more specific rules as to how caveats must be set up and dealt with.
CEDE	See CESSION.
CENSUS	A count of all the people in a given place, at a given time. Formal censuses sometimes include other information about the people counted, such as names, ages, and amount of land and property owned. The Department of Indian Affairs has taken unofficial censuses of Indian bands for at least 150 years. Until the 1880s, few of these were done on a regular basis, and were not carried out in an organized way. TREATY PAYLISTS are a kind of census. The ten-year national censuses taken by the federal government, such as those of 1871 and 1881, include some Indian settlements and reserves.
CERTIFICATE OF OCCUPATION	See LOCATION TICKET.
CERTIFICATE OF POSSESSION	See LOCATION TICKET.
CERTIFICATE OF TITLE	A secondary legal document issued to show that a grant of public (Crown) land or mineral rights has been made to a private owner. The primary deed -- that is, the original LETTERS PATENT making the grant -- is kept by the Crown, usually in the offices of the federal or provincial Registrar-General.
CERTIFIED TRUE COPY (or TRUE COPY)	A copy or photostat made from an original document where the copy is specially signed or stamped to show that it is a full and correct duplicate of the original. Certified copies are required in some legal proceedings.
CESSION (legal term)	See SURRENDER.
CHARTER (legal term)	A legal document issued by the CROWN to grant certain rights to a group, or to set up a business, town government, or other institution. For example, the Hudson's Bay Company was given exclusive rights to trade within large areas of western Canada by a royal charter issued by King Charles II in 1670.
CLAIM	A formal statement by a person or group, claiming a legal right to something, or demanding protection or recovery of a right alleged to have been lost. Also, the action taken to have the claim settled. Indian claims are often made for the recognition of ABORIGINAL RIGHTS, for the fulfilment of Indian TREATIES, and for compensation for or return of land and other rights. Most claims today are made against the federal government, but some have been brought against the provinces or private persons. Claims can be settled by LITIGATION, ARBITRATION, MEDIATION, NEGOTIATION, and other kinds of political action. The federal government's view today is that there are two kinds of claim: comprehensive claims, based on ABORIGINAL

	RIGHTS in areas where no TREATIES have been made; and specific claims, for rights arising out of TREATIES or relating to reserves, Indian moneys, and specific provisions of the Indian Act. This distinction is not, however, accepted as valid by all Indian groups.
COLONIAL	Referring to the colonies such as the colonies of British North America before Canada was created by Confederation (Upper and Lower Canada, New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, Prince Edward Island, Newfoundland, etc.). Colonial governments in Canada shared responsibility for Indians with the British IMPERIAL government. Their records are often used in Indian historical research.
COMMUTATION	A legal action provided for in the Indian Act between 1876 and 1951. An Indian woman who married a non-Indian, and so lost her INDIAN STATUS, could "wind up" her financial connection with the Band by "taking commutation". That is, she received a lump-sum payment covering ten years' worth of (a) Treaty annuities and (b) any other regular cash payments made out of the Band's TRUST FUND. If she did not "commute her interest" in this way, she could continue to collect these moneys indefinitely. Her name remained on Band lists for the purpose of recording the payments, but she had no other rights as an Indian. In Treaty areas during the 1930s and 1940s, such people were called "red-ticket women" after the colour of the special Treaty card issued to them. Since 1951, all women marrying non-Indians have been obliged to take the lump sum at the time of their marriage, and are removed from Band lists immediately. See also PRESENTS for a different meaning of the term.
COMPREHENSIVE CLAIM	See CLAIM.
CONSIDERATION (legal term)	Money or valuables given by one person to another under the terms of a CONTRACT. This can be a large or a token payment. Treaty ANNUITIES and RESERVE lands are kinds of consideration promised in the TREATIES.
CONSOLIDATION	See STATUTE.
CONSTITUTION	The legal document that sets out the basic laws and principles by which a nation is ruled. From Confederation in 1867, until 1982, the Canadian constitution was embodied in the British North America Act, a STATUTE of the British Parliament. It is now a Canadian STATUTE, the Constitution Act of 1982.
CONTACT	The term used for the time in history when North American native people first met with non-natives from other parts of the world. This meeting could be either face to face, or indirect (that is, through foreign TRADE GOODS and influences). The early part of the contact period, when native life had been changed by new influences only in part, is sometimes called the "contact-traditional" period. Most scholars, think that the contact period in Canada began anywhere from about 200 to 400 years ago, depending on what part of Canada one is discussing. This period differs in important ways from the ABORIGINAL time before it.

CONTRACT (legal term)	A formal legal agreement that binds those who participate in it to do certain things. Some contracts are binding even though they are not written down or spelled out in detail.
COURTS	The places in which legal disputes and CLAIMS can be settled by judges and/or juries. There are different levels of courts in Canada, from local courts up to the federal level. Some of these deal only with particular kinds of cases. Each court has its own special rules. Decisions that have been given in local or "lower" courts can, in some cases, be appealed to "higher" courts, where they may be changed or "reversed". The national system can be summed up as follows, although the first three levels are not always the same in all regions. 1. Provincial or Magistrates' Courts. These deal with minor offences. They may include general courts and special divisions known as "provincial criminal court"; "family" or "juvenile court"; and "probate" or "surrogate court". Small claims and bankruptcy courts may be included at this level or the next. 2. County or District Courts. These deal with civil and criminal cases, within certain limits as to the type and seriousness of the charge. 3. Provincial Supreme Courts. These are sometimes divided into "trial" (or "High Court of Justice") and "appeal" levels. They deal with all kinds of cases, except for certain special matters that must be referred to the federal Courts. 4. Federal Boards and Tribunals. Various court-like bodies dealing with specific federal matters, such as immigration and taxation. 5. Federal Court of Canada (Trial and Appeal Divisions). These deal with (a) certain special Federal matters, named in various STATUTES; (b) appeals from the federal Boards; and (c) CLAIMS against the Crown. Some of these matters go directly to the Appeal level without passing through the Trial Court. 6. Supreme Court of Canada. Deals with appeals from lower federal and provincial courts on all subjects. Until 1949, cases could be appealed from the Supreme Court of Canada to the highest court in Britain, the Judicial Committee of the Privy Council. A number of important native law cases were dealt with in this way. Today, cases relating to Indian people are heard at all levels, depending on the subject and the rules of the court. See also CLAIM, LITIGATION and EVIDENCE.
CROP SHARE LEASE OR SALE	An arrangement in which a person buys or leases a piece of land by paying a fixed proportion of the crops grown on it each year, instead of cash. SURRENDERED Indian land has sometimes been sold by crop share, especially during the 1930s and 1940s.

CROWN	The Queen or King as Canada's Head of State. Also, the Government that represents the monarch. The Crown is in many ways an idea more than a person. Thus the Governor-General "is" the Crown when he exercises the powers the Queen has given him. A federal or provincial government department "is" the Crown when it carries out the duties assigned to it, in the manner in which they were intended to be carried out. Exactly what these delegated duties are is not always clear. Most, however, are set out in the CONSTITUTION of Canada and in federal and provincial STATUTES.
CROWN LANDS	Public lands, legally the property of the CROWN. They are administered by the Crown's representatives (the federal or provincial governments) and may be sold to private owners. Some Crown lands are held by the Department of Indian Affairs for use by Indian people, but do not have RESERVE status. See INDIAN LAND REGISTRY and SETTLEMENT.
CUSTOM	A technical term referring to an actually or nominally "traditional" Indian practice, as opposed to one set out by Canadian law. For example, "custom" marriage and "custom" adoption are regular Indian forms of marriage and adoption that are not carried out under conventional Canadian family law. BAND COUNCILS chosen "by custom" are chosen or elected by traditional means other than the ELECTIVE SYSTEM. They are, however, recognized under the Indian Act as the lawful government of the BAND, except in unusual circumstances (see HEREDITARY CHIEF).
DEED	Any formal legal DOCUMENT passing ownership of land from one person to another.
DISCRETIONARY (legal term)	A discretionary law states what may be done, without staying that it has to be done. For example, one possible interpretation of section 71(1) of the present Indian Act (R.S.C. 1970, chapter I-6) is that it is discretionary. This is because it says that the Minister of Indian Affairs "may" operate farms on reserves for certain purposes. It does not, however, say that he must do so. See also MANDATORY.
DISCHARGE FROM TREATY	See ENFRANCHISEMENT.
DOCUMENT	A paper or record, especially an official one. To document a CLAIM means to bring together all the records needed to prove it. Documentary history is history that is researched using written records, as opposed to history based on facts taken from ARCHAEOLOGY, ORAL TRADITION, or similar sources.
"DOUBLE MOTHER" RULE	A clause in the present Indian Act [R.S.C. 1970, Chapter I-6 section 12(1)(a)(iv)] that denies INDIAN STATUS to children of Indian-status parents if their mother and their father's mother were both of non-Indian status before marriage, or were both not registered or entitled to be registered under certain specific parts of the Act. The rule was introduced into the Act in 1951, apparently to deal with certain Bands in Canada where Indian/non-Indian intermarriage was frequent. It has caused controversy, and has not been uniformly enforced.

DURING PLEASURE (legal term)	Grants of land are sometimes made "during pleasure": that is, they last for an indefinite time, but can be cancelled whenever the grantor pleases. Some grants of Indian reserve land for churches or schools are made "during pleasure" of the Crown and/or of the Band.
EASEMENT (legal term)	A right to use land for a particular and limited purpose. Easements are granted or allowed by the owner of the land to someone else, often someone who owns adjoining property. Easements across Indian reserves for such things as telephone cables, powerlines and pipelines are often granted by BAND COUNCILS. Compare RIGHTS OF WAY.
ENCUMBRANCE (legal term)	An INTEREST in or right to a property, though not a full right of ownership, that continues to exist even when the property is passed from one owner to another. For example, an EASEMENT granted to a third party may encumber the title to land when it is sold to a new owner.
ELECTIVE SYSTEM	The method of choosing BAND COUNCILS by formal elections, according to rules laid down in the INDIAN ACT or the INDIAN ADVANCEMENT ACT. See also CUSTOM and HEREDITARY CHIEFS.
ENFRANCHISEMENT (legal term)	The process by which an Indian person or family gives up its INDIAN STATUS, or is forced to give it up, is called enfranchisement. The person receives a share of Band moneys, and sometimes of reserve land, but thereafter has no further rights as an Indian under the Indian Act. The term is now applied both to people who give up status by choice, and to Indian women who lose their status by marrying non-Indians. Certain western Indian people gave up their Indian status to take scrip as METIS in the period from 1885 to 1910. These were not enfranchised; instead, they were "discharged from Treaty" under special provisions in the Indian Act of the time.
ENTITLEMENT (or **TREATY LAND ENTITLEMENT**)	The right of certain Indian groups, under some TREATIES, to specific pieces or amounts of land. Entitlement is often calculated using complex formulas, based on stated amounts of land per person. In other cases, the group is entitled to lands described in the TREATY itself, or in related agreements. Entitlement CLAIMS are one of the most important types of SPECIFIC CLAIM.
ESTIMATES	The detailed budget or report of planned spending, issued by each government department every year. Estimates are issued after the overall federal budget has been approved at the beginning of a fiscal year. These are different from the actual expenditures, reported at the end of the year. The documents laying out federal departmental estimates are known as the "Blue Books".
ETHNOHISTORY	A technique or method of writing history, especially the history of a non-literate people for whom relatively few written records are available. In ethnohistorical research many different sources of information are compared and interpreted. These may include ARCHIVAL or DOCUMENTARY sources; ARCHAEOLOGICAL, ETHNOLOGICAL and GEOGRAPHICAL studies; ORAL HISTORY; SECONDARY writing; and others. Many of the scholars writing about Indian history today call themselves ethnohistorians.

ETHNOLOGY	A type of ANTHROPOLOGICAL study which describes, compares and interprets the ways of life of specific groups of people. Ethnological writings often include historical information, and can be useful in histories or in claims research. An ethnological study relating to one particular group of people is sometimes called an ethnography.
EVIDENCE	Facts that prove a statement or a CLAIM. COURTS have special rules and standards as to what evidence can be used and what cannot. These rules are usually more restrictive than standards of proof used in other claims settlement methods, or in the writing of history and similar studies.
EXECUTIVE ORDER IN COUNCIL	See ORDER IN COUNCIL (PROVINCIAL).
EXPERT WITNESS	An expert or professional person, with special knowledge of a skill or field of study and good standing in his or her profession, who is called by a COURT to give EVIDENCE in a case. For example, a licensed surveyor could be an expert witness in a CLAIM to ownership of reserve land, if information is needed on the proper methods of surveying a reserve boundary line. Courts usually accept evidence from an expert witness only within his or her area of competence.
EXPROPRIATION	The taking of privately owned land, by the Crown or by specially empowered authorities, for certain "public works". Land for railways, roads, canals, irrigation, schools, hospitals, power-sites and government buildings may be expropriated under certain conditions. The Crown may take the land itself, or may pass a STATUTE empowering a private company to do so. The owner of the land usually cannot stop the land from being taken, but has a right to fair payment, or compensation, for it. There are usually detailed legal rules directing how expropriations must be done. These may include rules about advance notice, making legal surveys and recording them, getting formal approval, and paying compensation. Indian reserve land can apparently be expropriated, at least under the specific expropriation clauses of the Indian Act and the written terms of some TREATIES. See also EASEMENT and RIGHT OF WAY.
EXTINGUISHMENT (legal term)	The complete wiping out, or ending, of an existing legal right.
FIELD NOTES	A surveyor's technical working notes on a survey. These are often in the form of field books which record all measurements and markings made during the survey. Field notes of the surveys of Indian reserves often include reports, maps, and other information on the land surveyed.
FINDING AID	A list, index, or guide to the contents of an ARCHIVE, or to a special group of documents within it.
GEOGRAPHY	A kind of study that deals with the landforms, products, and people of particular regions or types of regions. Geographers often study the relationship of people to their surroundings over time, so that some of their work is classed as ETHNOHISTORY. Some ethnohistorical writing about Canadian Indian people is done by geographers.

GOVERNOR IN COUNCIL	See ORDER-IN-COUNCIL (FEDERAL).
GRATUITY	Originally, a freely given gift or payment of money. In the fur trade, gratuities were special PRESENTS of goods, given by the fur trader to Indian hunters to initiate trading sessions. When the NUMBERED TREATIES were signed, a one-time gratuity or "present" of a small sum in cash was given to every person, along with their first Treaty ANNUITY. Gratuities were sometimes also paid to individuals who made late, informal ADHESIONS to Treaty.
HALFBREED	See METIS.
HEADMAN	See BAND COUNCIL.
HEREDITARY CHIEF	In certain Canadian Bands, this refers to Indian leaders chosen by traditional means, often in opposition to the BAND COUNCILS recognized by the Federal Government and the Indian Act. That is, they are chosen neither by the ELECTIVE SYSTEM, nor by the form of CUSTOM recognized by the government.
IMPERIAL GOVERNMENT	The British government, especially before Confederation, when it was still closely involved in the affairs of the Canadian colonies. The Imperial government, through its Colonial Secretary, was responsible for the administration of Indian affairs in Upper and Lower Canada (Ontario and Quebec) up to at least 1860, and retained authority to pass laws concerning Indian Affairs up to at least 1867. Therefore British records contain important information on Indian local history and claims in the period before Confederation.
IMPROVEMENT	Any valuable change or addition to a piece of land, such as buildings, clearing of bush, fencing, or irrigation works. If the land is sold or expropriated, special compensation may be paid for the improvements on it, depending on who made them and when.
INDIAN ACT	The federal STATUTE that, since 1876, has embodied most of the federal law concerning Indian people. Before 1876, there were a large number of COLONIAL and local STATUTES relating to Indians. Parts of these were rewritten, expanded, and incorporated into two new federal acts relating to Indians, passed in 1868 and 1869. The first complete "Indian Act" as such was passed in 1876. "New" versions were issued in 1880 and 1951, and REVISED STATUTES (including all amendments passed since the last complete reprinting of the Act) were issued in 1886, 1906, 1927, 1952, and 1970. There were numerous changes amendments to individual sections between each revision. Only the 1951 version, however, includes significant overall changes to the Act of 1876. The current Indian Act is that of 1970 (Revised Statutes of Canada, 1970, chapter I-6). It has had only a few minor amendments since that date. A few federal laws relating directly to Indians are not included in the Indian Act, including the INDIAN ADVANCEMENT ACT of 1884; the Indian Oil and Gas Act of 1974; and special acts relating to particular reserves, including Songhees (1914), St. Peter's (1916), St. Regis (1926-27), and Caughnawaga (1934).

INDIAN ADVANCEMENT ACT	A federal law, first passed in 1884 and merged with the Indian Act in 1906, that allowed "wider municipal privileges and powers" to certain BAND COUNCILS who, in the Department's opinion, were ready for them. For these Bands it laid out special election procedures, bylaw-making powers, and control over lands and moneys.
INDIAN FUND	See TRUST FUNDS.
INDIAN LAND AGENTS	Officials of the Indian Affairs Department in parts of eastern Canada (and especially in Ontario) at the end of the 19th century, who were responsible for promoting and administering sales of SURRENDERED Indian land. Like similar officials in the Department of the Interior, they were sometimes paid commissions rather than, or as well as, salaries. The position was merged with that of the regular Indian Agent by about 1900.
INDIAN LAND MANAGEMENT FUND	A federal fund intended to pay the expenses of managing Indian lands and, to some extent, the costs of the Indian Department generally. It was established in 1856 and closed out in 1913-14. The fund consisted of a ten per cent "tax" or levy on all sales of SURRENDERED Indian reserve lands, and a varying percentage on all leases of reserve land, minerals and timber. This money was taken from the Band TRUST FUNDS, banked in the Indian Land Management Fund (Account No. 75), and used at the discretion of the Indian Affairs Department on a wide variety of expenses. These included land matters such as survey, clearing, and roadbuilding costs; administrative expenses relating to schools; medical care; loans to Bands; departmental staff salaries and pensions; etc. The fund never covered even the full cost of land management, and eventually had to be subsidized by Parliamentary APPROPRIATIONS. In 1913-14, the Department closed it out and returned its contents to Band funds. It is not clear how the 1914 distribution was actually made, but the stated plan of division was that western Bands, who received little benefit from the fund, would be reimbursed in full. After this the remainder was to be divided up fairly among the Ontario and Quebec Bands concerned.
INDIAN LAND REGISTRY	The central records of the Department of Indian Affairs in Ottawa that document all legal dealings, or "transactions", on Canadian Indian reserves and related lands. Four of the Registry's five Registers, excluding the Surrendered Land Sales Register, are made up of ABSTRACTS (one for each reserve, lot or parcel of land). These describe each transaction briefly, and give the names and registration numbers of the legal documents relating to it. Copies of these documents are also held by the Registry. For some reserves, two or more Registers (e.g., the "General" and "Leasing" Registers) are filed together. The ABSTRACTS are now (1982) being gradually changed from a longer typewritten format to an abbreviated computerized format, which omits file references and some historical information. The five Registers are as follows:

1. Reserve General Register. Lists all general transactions affecting the reserve as a whole, including authority for establishing the reserve, surrenders for sale and lease, rights of way, easements, and major lease agreements. (Organized by province and name of reserve.)

2. Reserve Land Register. A breakdown of all transactions affecting each separate lot or parcel on reserves which have been legally subdivided and leased or allotted. Maintained under section 21 of the Indian Act, R.S.C. 1970. (Organized by province, reserve, and lot, parcel or quarter-section number.)

3. Surrendered Land Leasing Register. Lists all individual reserve land leases. Some lease documents are also listed in the Reserve General Register. Maintained under section 55(1) of the Indian Act, R.S.C. 1970. (Organized by province, reserve, legal surveys plan number, and lot or quarter-section number.)

4. Surrendered Land Sales Register (also known as the "Land Sales Books"). Lists all major sales of reserve land from the 1830s up to about 1960, including date and terms of sale, names of buyers, payments made, patent references, and file numbers. The Register is in the form of ledgers and cross-referenced index cards. Maintained under section 55(1) of the Indian Act, R.S.C. 1970. (Organized by province, reserve, and sale number or parcel/quarter section. Note that there are three separate sets of ledgers: one group of miscellaneous pre-Confederation books, varying in detail and format, and closely related to similar records in the Public Archives of Canada, RG-10; a second group of standardized ledgers for sales made between about 1880 and 1935; and a third, the "looseleaf ledgers", for sales made or continuing after 1935. These books are to be converted to ABSTRACT form some time in the future.)

5. Crown Lands Register. Lists all federal Crown lands administered by the Department of Indian Affairs, which do not have reserve status. Includes certain Agency, Indian school and hospital sites, Indian SETTLEMENTS, some lands purchased by or for Bands, and miscellaneous others. (Organized by province and name of settlement, site or Band.)

Three other vestigial Registers are to be integrated into the five main Registers in future: (a) the Unsold Surrendered Lands Card Index, which gives an incomplete list of surrendered land remaining in the hands of the Crown (organized by province, Band, and reserve); (b) the Provincial General Register, and (c) the Canada General Register, two overlapping sets of ABSTRACTS listing legal documents affecting Crown Land title in each province and in Canada as a whole. (Both organized by province.)

The Registry also holds these special indexes: (a) a daybook or registration book for all new land documents as they came in, organized by registration number and date; (b) cross-reference indexes to all LEASES and LOCATIONS on reserves, organized by surname of locatee or lessee; (c) a partial index to mineral, oil and gas

	leases on reserves, organized by reserve and name of lessee; (d) a register of mineral, oil and gas lease assignments under the Bank Act, section 82; and (e) two indexes to delegations of authority under the Indian Act: one for Ministers' delegations to other government officials, and one for Ministers' delegations to Band Councils, organized by name of person or Band, and by subject.
INDIAN LANDS	Between 1876 and 1951, this was a technical term used to refer to Indian reserve land which had been SURRENDERED for sale, but which had not yet been ALIENATED from the CROWN, that is, not yet PATENTED to buyers. This land remained under the control of the Indian Act until the PATENT was issued. Between 1887 and 1951, disposition of Indian lands was, at least in theory, governed by the Indian Land Regulations. See REGULATIONS.
INDIAN REGISTER	The central record, kept by the Department of Indian Affairs in Ottawa, that lists every person in Canada who has legal INDIAN STATUS. The Register was begun in 1951, and shows all formally reported births, marriages, deaths, and changes of status within every REGISTERED INDIAN family since that date.
INDIAN STATUS	A person's legal status as an Indian, and specifically his or her status as defined by the Indian Act. It is not necessarily the same thing as status as an Indian under the Canadian CONSTITUTION, or as status based on descent or "race". The Indian Act's complex rules on status are interpreted and applied by the REGISTRAR OF INDIAN MEMBERSHIP in Ottawa. Everyone who has Indian status is listed in the INDIAN REGISTER. The legal term for these people is REGISTERED INDIAN, but they are also informally called STATUS INDIANS, or, in the NUMBERED TREATY areas, TREATY INDIANS. In practice these three terms usually mean the same thing, although ADHESION to Treaty is in theory a different process from registration. See also NON-TREATY INDIAN, NON-STATUS INDIAN, METIS, and SCRIP.
INSTRUCTIONS	The orders given to officials by their superiors, or to employees by their employers, stating how they are to do particular jobs. For example, a TREATY COMMISSIONER might be instructed by letter, or by ORDER-IN-COUNCIL, as to what terms to offer the Indian side when negotiating a Treaty. An Indian spokesman at a Treaty negotiation might likewise be instructed by his Council as to the terms they desire. A surveyor might be given formal written instructions as to how to lay out an Indian reserve. COURTS sometimes consider instructions as evidence in legal disputes over whether, say, a Treaty has been properly interpreted, or as to where the correct legal boundaries of a reserve may lie. See also PREROGATIVE.
INSTRUMENT (legal term)	A formal legal document, often a document that grants a particular right. The documents listed in the INDIAN LAND REGISTRY are called instruments.
INTEREST (general meaning)	A legal right to something, especially when it is less than full ownership. For example, the right to use land owned by someone else, as in an EASEMENT, is an interest. So is the right of someone who sells land to collect the purchase price from the buyer. For example, an Indian Band has an interest in INDIAN LANDS after the down payment is made, which ends when the land is finally PATENTED.

INTEREST (money)	A term used for at least four different types of moneys payable to Indian groups: (a) TRUST FUND moneys deposited in the Interest ("Revenue") section of a Band account. These are handled according to rules implied or laid out in the Indian Act. (b) The yearly bank interest earned by a Band TRUST FUND as a whole. This is paid by the federal government at the same rates of interest allowed on "public" moneys held by the Receiver General. In TRUST FUND statements it is often called "government interest". (c) The interest on deferred instalment payments made by buyers of sold SURRENDERED Indian reserve land. This was calculated at special rates set by Order-in-Council, and deposited at irregular intervals in either the Interest (Revenue) or Capital section of a BAND TRUST FUND. (d) The interest that may be earned for a Band on money payable to it out of a CLAIMS settlement. Types (a), (b), and (c) have often been confused in the past. Before 1951, many SURRENDERS provided for a "distribution of interest" to Band members in cash, from land sales proceeds. This was meant to persuade the Band to agree to the sale. The money given out was often some combination of these three sums. These payments were sometimes recorded in "interest distribution paylists" similar to TREATY PAYLISTS.
INTERLIBRARY LOAN	A system by which researchers can borrow books and microfilms from most large libraries in Canada, through any local library, by mail.
IRREGULAR BAND	A term found in the Indian Act between 1876 and 1951, and defined as: "any tribe, band or body of persons of Indian blood who own no interest in any reserve or lands of which the legal title is in the Crown, who possess no common fund managed by the Government of Canada, or who have not had any treaty relations with the Crown". (C.S. 1876, chapter 18, sec. 3(2), and nearly identical provisions up to 1951). See discussion under NON-TREATY INDIAN.
LAND PAYMENTS	A term used in the early part of the 19th century, in eastern Canada, to refer to moneys from the sale of SURRENDERED Indian lands that were paid to or banked for the Bands concerned. These payments should be distinguished from cash given out as PRESENTS or as Treaty ANNUITIES. All three types of moneys were often administered and paid out in similar ways, though they were made under quite different legal authorities. At or just before Confederation, land sales revenue began to be deposited regularly in Band TRUST FUNDS, which lessened to some extent the confusion surrounding the category.
LAND TITLES OFFICE (or LAND REGISTRY OFFICE)	A local office which records all land transactions in a particular district. These records include legal documents such as LEGAL SURVEY maps, records of LETTERS PATENT, RIGHTS OF WAY, and EASEMENTS. They usually do not record dealings on existing Indian reserve lands, which are documented in the INDIAN LAND REGISTRY in

	Ottawa. They do keep records relating to former reserve lands sold to non-Indians, and land near reserves. Thus they can be used to research SURRENDERS, disputed reserve boundaries, EXPROPRIATIONS, and RIGHTS OF WAY. Land titles offices are administered by the provinces or, in the NWT and Yukon, by the federal government. In Quebec, the offices are called "registres terriers".
LAND USE AND OCCUPANCY STUDY	A type of study that describes all the uses to which people put a particular area of land. It can include reviews of land ownership and large-scale development, settlements and houses, hunting, fishing, trapping and gathering, use of other natural resources, and the ways in which people organize themselves to do all of these things. Studies of this kind can be used to collect information for native CLAIMS.
LAWFUL POSSESSION	See LOCATION.
LEASE	An agreement by which the owner of land allows someone else to use it temporarily, usually for payment, and often for particular purposes only, such as farming, grazing, mining, or operating a store. Since 1876, most leases of Indian reserve land have been granted with at least nominal Band approval, after a "SURRENDER for lease". Not made with Band consent were certain general, mineral, and location leases drawn up under Indian Act amendments of 1898 and 1918; see sections 50 and 93(3) of the Indian Act of 1927, R.S.C. chapter 98. MINERAL, TIMBER, and WATER RIGHTS were also leased out to non-Indians in similar ways.
LEGAL DESCRIPTION	A detailed, formal description of a piece of land, in surveyor's language, that is used in legal documents. For example, a legal description of the land to be set aside as an Indian reserve is often included in the ORDER-IN-COUNCIL "confirming" the reserve. The description can include measurements, landmarks, astronomical readings, and references to LEGAL SURVEY PLANS.
LEGAL SURVEY PLAN or MAP	An official survey map that is made, formally approved, and registered, in ways set out in laws or formal agreements. For example, legal survey plans of all the lands in any province are drafted according to rules in the provincial "Land Titles" or "Land Surveys" Acts, and are stored in local LAND TITLES OFFICES. The legal survey plans of Indian reserves are held by the Legal Surveys section of the Department of Indian Affairs, and the Department of Energy, Mines and Resources (Legal Surveys Division) in Ottawa. Legal survey plans can be used with other legal documents to define the size, boundaries, and ownership of reserve lands.
LEGISLATION	Laws, or the making of laws.
LETTERS PATENT (or PATENT)	The legal document by which the CROWN grants public land to a private owner. The patent is signed by the monarch, the Governor General, or a representative. When Indian reserve land is SURRENDERED and sold, and when the buyer has paid all instalments of the price and met any other terms, he receives letters patent for the land from the Department of Indian Affairs. Once the patent is issued the land no longer comes under the

	control of the Indian Act. The letters patent themselves may be retained by the Crown, in which case a substitute, the CERTIFICATE OF TITLE, is given to the grantee.
LICENSE OF OCCUPATION	A permit to use CROWN LAND, granted by the COLONIAL governments of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick before Confederation. A number of Indian reserves in these provinces were established on land originally granted to Indian groups by licenses of occupation. These date from about the last quarter of the 18th century to the first quarter of the 19th century. Such licences were granted as a result of formal PETITIONS from the residents concerned.
LITIGATION	Going to court; for example, settling a CLAIM by submitting it to a court for a hearing and a final decision. Compare ARBITRATION, MEDIATION and NEGOTIATION.
LOCATEE	See LOCATION.
LOCATION and LOCATION TICKET	A member of an Indian Band who lives on and uses a particular plot of land on a reserve can, under terms set out in the Indian Act, get legal recognition and protection of his or her right to go on doing so, on a semi-permanent basis. Before 1951, he or she was called a LOCATEE, the land was called a LOCATION, and the document recording the right a LOCATION TICKET. After 1951, location tickets were replaced by three other types of document: CERTIFICATES OF OCCUPATION (temporary, short-term, and sometimes conditional licenses); CERTIFICATES OF POSSESSION (permanent licenses that can be cancelled only under special conditions); and NOTICES OF ENTITLEMENT (provisional certificates issued to people entitled to CERTIFICATES OF POSSESSION, where technical obstacles prevent the issuing of such a document; this is usually where there is no adequate LEGAL SURVEY of the land in question). Locatees are said to be in "lawful occupation" or "lawful possession" of their locations. They have special rights to lease them out, by what are called "locatee leases". They may bequeath them to their Indian-status heirs, within limits prescribed by the Indian Act. All legal LOCATIONS today are recorded in the INDIAN LAND REGISTRY's Reserve Land Register. Some Bands in Canada do not use this system; instead, they allocate land on the basis of CUSTOM. See also SEVERALTY.
MANDATORY (legal term)	A law that states what must be done, as opposed to what is DISCRETIONARY and may or may not be done. For example, it is possible to interpret part of section 61(1) of the present Indian Act (R.S.C. 1970) as mandatory: that is, the provision stating that TRUST FUNDS "shall" be spent only for the Bands for whom they are held.

MARINE ALLOWANCE	A narrow strip of land along a shoreline, kept by the provincial CROWN in some parts of Canada when it sells waterside (RIPARIAN) land. This is usually meant to protect public access to, or RIGHT OF WAY along, the shore. It is also used to reserve swampy land that is not suitable for development. The size and locations of marine allowances are determined by specific STATUTES. They sometimes affect the boundaries of Indian reserves.
MARK	The signature of someone who does not know how to write. It is usually an "X" witnessed by someone else to prove that it is signer's true signature. The signer need not make the mark himself or herself, but can merely "touch the pen" held by someone else, as long as the action is properly witnessed. Some Indian MARKS on early TREATIES are drawings of family or clan symbols, often called "totems".
MEDIATION	Settling a CLAIM or political dispute by NEGOTIATION, which is managed by a neutral outsider, the mediator. This person is chosen by both sides and is given authority to influence or arrange negotiations in certain ways. However, he or she normally cannot impose a final settlement. Compare NEGOTIATION and ARBITRATION.
MEMBERSHIP (or INDIAN MEMBERSHIP)	Membership issues are generally the same as INDIAN STATUS issues. The term sometimes refers specifically to the rights of an Indian person as a member of a Band. See REGISTRAR OF INDIAN MEMBERSHIP.
METIS	In its most general meaning, the term refers to a person of mixed Indian and non-Indian descent. In Canadian history, it was apparently first used very early in the 19th century (along with other terms, including "halfbreed", "brulé" or "bois-brulé", "chicot", "native" and "country-born") to refer to the children of white fur-trade employees and Indian women in certain parts of the Prairies. Later in the century it was partially displaced by the term "halfbreed". "Métis" continued to be used by some to refer specifically to members of distinct communities of mixed ancestry on the Canadian Prairies, such as the Red River Settlement. Further, "Métis" sometimes referred to people of Indian-French descent, while the term "half-breed" was applied to those of Indian and English (or Scottish) ancestry. From the late 19th century until the mid-20th, "half-breed" was used in the English texts of federal laws, by English-speaking administrators, and in common speech, to refer to people of mixed descent generally. The parallel term in French-language administration seems to have been "Métis". Usage of all these terms has varied widely according to time, place, and speaker. Thus no absolute definition can be stated for any one term without specific reference to its historical context. Likewise these words are used in a derogatory sense only in certain periods and by particular speakers. "Métis" (sometimes "Métif") is used in its historic senses by some speakers today. It often also indicates anyone of mixed descent, from the Prairies or elsewhere, who does not have INDIAN STATUS under the Indian Act, and who is not considered to be a NON-STATUS INDIAN.

	In the past, the Federal government accorded certain legal rights to the Métis, mainly land rights, which were dealt with through SCRIP issues under the Manitoba Act and the Dominion Lands Act. The province of Alberta has also accorded the Métis limited special rights to land and to the use of certain wildlife, by provincial statutes and regulations. The question of whether the Métis are definable as Indians under the new Canadian CONSTITUTION, or what special rights they have under it, has not yet been settled. See also SCRIP, NON-STATUS INDIAN, AND INDIAN STATUS.
MICROFILM, MICROFICHE and MICROCARD	ARCHIVAL documents are often filmed, reduced in size and issued as MICROFILMS (on reels or cassettes), MICROFICHES (on flat plastic cards) or MICROCARDS (other types of flat card). These must be read on special machines. Most of the Indian Affairs Department records in the Public Archives of Canada, in record group RG-10, are on microfilm.
MINERAL RIGHTS	The rights to own and sell minerals under a piece of land, as opposed to ownership of the land or "surface" title. The term usually includes base metals, coal, oil, natural gas, tar sand, and sometimes precious metals. On most Indian reserves, the mineral rights go with the surface title, and are administered for the benefit of the Band. There are some exceptions, such as certain reserves purchased from the provinces or from private owners. On these, for various reasons, mineral rights have not been transferred with the surface title. Since the 1880s, minerals on Indian reserves (including oil, gas, and sometimes precious metals) have been administered under federal REGULATIONS passed under the Indian Act. These generally provide for mineral exploration under temporary PERMITS. Minerals can only be exploited, however, by special arrangement with the BAND COUNCIL (if the mining is done by Band members) or under leases authorized by a mineral SURRENDER (if the mining is to be done by outsiders). After a surrender, the rights are leased out to private companies, who pay bonuses, rental and royalties on any minerals found. All revenues are put in Band TRUST FUNDS, except for levies transferred to the INDIAN LAND MANAGEMENT FUND between 1856 and 1913. Stone, sand and gravel on reserves are usually not defined as minerals, and are exploited by means of informal permits or direct sale.
MINISTERIAL ORDER	A formal document by which the Minister of Indian Affairs exercises powers given to him by the Indian Act. For example, Ministerial Orders are used to create or merge Bands under section 17 of the present Act (R.S.C. 1970, chapter I-6).
NEGOTIATION	The settling of legal CLAIMS or political disputes by discussions between the parties concerned. These may be formal or informal. For more structured kinds of negotiation, involving independent third parties, see MEDIATION and ARBITRATION.

NON-STATUS INDIAN	A person who does not have legal INDIAN STATUS under the Indian Act, but who considers himself or herself to be Indian because of descent or way of life. This is not a legal term, but is often used today to refer to people who have been ENFRANCHISED, voluntarily or otherwise; Indian women who have lost status by marrying non-Indians; and people in various other special situations. See also METIS.
NON-TREATY INDIAN	A term found in the Indian Act between 1876 and 1951, and defined as: "any person of Indian blood who is reputed to belong to an irregular band, or who follows the Indian mode of life, even though such person be only a temporary resident in Canada". (Canada Statutes, 1876, chapter 18, sec. 3(4), and nearly identical provisions up to 1951). This term and the term "IRREGULAR BAND" were apparently applied by the federal government mainly to two particular groups: first, border-area American Indians such as the Sioux, who immigrated to or visited Canada in the mid-nineteenth century, and who were not allowed to sign TREATIES along with the resident Canadian bands; and second, various Indian Bands or individuals in the Treaty areas who initially refused to sign Treaty, or who were not at first offered Treaty. Bands and people of this second kind could be found in the NUMBERED TREATY areas at least as late as the 1950s, and some may still exist today.
NOTICE OF ENTITLEMENT	See LOCATION.
NUMBERED TREATIES	The eleven post-Confederation TREATIES covering northern Ontario, the Prairie provinces and parts of British Columbia and the Northwest Territories. They are referred to as Treaties One (signed in 1871) through Eleven (signed in 1921). There were late ADHESIONS to several of these, the last being in 1929-30 (to Treaty 9, covering the northernmost part of Ontario) and in 1944-54 (to Treaty 6, individual Bands in west-central Alberta and Saskatchewan). The ROBINSON TREATIES and the Chippewa (Ojibwa) and Mississauga Treaties of 1923, covering parts of northern Ontario, are sometimes linked with the numbered Treaties because of their similar contexts and terms. See also TREATY and ANNUITY.
O.C.P.C.	See ORDER-IN-COUNCIL (FEDERAL).
ORAL HISTORY	Evidence about past life, events, and traditions, taken from the spoken word of people who have personal knowledge of these facts. Oral history is often collected by interviews, recorded on tape, and then transferred to paper. When compared and cross-checked with ARCHIVAL and other records, it can be used to write history and to document claims.
ORDER-IN-COUNCIL (FEDERAL)	Or "O.C.P.C." — ORDER-IN-COUNCIL OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL. A formal legal document used to carry out the authority of the CROWN; that is, to authorize many different kinds of government action, usually in ways dictated by a specific STATUTE or legal agreement. In theory, Orders-in-Council are issued by the CROWN through its representative the Governor General, after discussions with his Privy Council of Cabinet Ministers and others. (This is the "GOVERNOR IN COUNCIL" referred to in the STATUTES.) In fact, most Orders-in-Council

today are drafted by government departments. Routine topics are usually passed by a small committee of Cabinet Ministers, while the more sensitive or important ones are discussed in full Cabinet. When passed, they are "rubber-stamped" by the Governor General or his representative.

Most Orders-in-Council relating to Indian matters are passed under one or other of the following powers:

(a) The Indian Act; for example, section 11(1)(b)(ii) of the current Act (R.S.C. 1970), which states that Bands can be brought into legal existence by the GOVERNOR IN COUNCIL. Orders of this kind are, or have been in the past, used to appoint and dismiss chiefs and councillors; to approve reserve land surrenders and expropriations; to fund Indian schools and hospitals; to set up REGULATIONS under the Act; and for many other purposes.

(b) Other federal Acts; for example, to appoint or fire Indian Affairs staff under the laws governing the public service.

(c) Treaties or other general powers of the Crown; for example, to authorize and ratify TREATIES, to establish or confirm Indian reserves, and to approve claims compensation payments.

Orders-in-Council are public documents and are kept in the Public Archives of Canada's Privy Council Records (RG-2), except for those less than five years old, which can be found in the Privy Council Office itself. Selected Orders are also published in a weekly government document called the Canada Gazette (Part II). Many Orders are accompanied by important documents or maps describing the action or issue in question.

TREASURY BOARD MINUTES have to do with moneys and federal employees. They do not originate in the same ways as Orders-in-Council, but they are approved in the same manner, and can be found recorded in the same places.

ORDER-IN-COUNCIL (PROVINCIAL or COLONIAL)	Sometimes called an EXECUTIVE ORDER-IN-COUNCIL. A formal legal document, similar to a FEDERAL ORDER-IN-COUNCIL, that is issued by the Executive Council or similar body of a provincial government or pre-Confederation COLONIAL governing body. These are used to carry out those duties and rights of the CROWN that belong to the provincial or colonial governments. They were originally records of decisions taken by the Council, which developed into formalized legal documents over time. Provincial Orders-in-Council since Confederation deal with such matters as transfers of land to the federal government for Indian reserves, and payment of compensation for EXPROPRIATED reserve land.
ORDINANCE	See STATUTE.
ORDINARY HIGH WATER MARK (legal term)	The usual or average level to which a body of water rises at its highest point. Often located where there is a definite change in the shoreline or its vegetation. This water mark is sometimes used as a boundary for Indian reserve lands lying along shorelines where water levels fluctuate widely.

OUTSIDE PROMISE	See TREATY.
PATENT	See LETTERS PATENT.
PER CAPITA	A per capita payment or grant is one made to every man, woman, and child in a group, regardless of age.
PERMIT	A legal document granting temporary or short-term permission to do something. For example, permits are granted to private companies to explore for mineral on Indian reserves; or to hunters to take particular kinds of animals at certain times and places, in limited numbers.
PETITION	In common speech, any document signed by a number of people and sent to an office or authority, asking that something be done. In legal language it refers to specific kinds of formal applications. Among others, there are the land petitions made by colonial settlers to get title to, or use of, land (see LICENSE OF OCCUPATION). Petitions of right are a now-superseded kind of formal legal action, taken by some Indian Bands early in this century, asking that the Crown restore lost or impaired rights to land or money. These were dealt with by the COURTS.
PLAN (legal term)	See LEGAL SURVEY PLAN.
PREROGATIVE	Or "Royal prerogative". The Crown's rights, especially as opposed to those of lesser authorities, or as exercised in the absence of a specific STATUTE. For example, some Indian reserves are said to be established by Royal prerogative where no Treaty or other right to land exists. Before Confederation, the Crown sometimes issued formal "prerogative instruments" (called "commissions" or "INSTRUCTIONS" when they are directed to Crown officials) commanding that the Crown's prerogative in a particular matter be carried out.
PRESCRIPTION	A way of gaining rights by exercising them: for example, by occupying land for a long time under certain conditions. When applied to land, the term ADVERSE POSSESSION is sometimes used instead.
PRESENTS	Originally, gifts exchanged between trading partners during a fur-trading session. The term later came to refer to formal gifts of TRADE GOODS to Indian groups, given by the eastern Canadian COLONIAL governments in the 18th and 19th centuries. These were intended as tokens of goodwill from the Crown, or encouragements to peace and order, or incentives to military alliance, depending on circumstances. By the 1830s they had become a regular yearly custom in parts of eastern Canada, and were stopped for good only when the IMPERIAL government ceased to subsidize Canadian Indian affairs in 1858. Toward the end of this period, presents were sometimes COMMUTED from trade goods to money; this was paid in much the same way as were Treaty ANNUITIES and LAND PAYMENTS. See also GRATUITY.

PRIMARY and SECONDARY SOURCES	Two kinds of information used in historical research. A primary source is a source of information about a person or happening that is directly related to what it describes. An example is an eyewitness's account of an event. A secondary source is either a source that summarizes information from other places, both primary and secondary, or a source that is only indirectly related to what it describes. For example, a copy of an original TREATY or an Indian spokesman's speech at the Treaty negotiations would both be primary sources. A book or report summarizing and discussing different accounts of how the Treaty was negotiated, or a book describing traditional Indian life at the time the Treaty was signed, would probably be secondary sources. "Hearsay" evidence (a story somebody retells from another person's account, and not something the teller has personally experienced) is usually secondary evidence. Most ARCHIVAL sources, and some ORAL HISTORY used in Indian historical and research claims, are primary sources. See also EVIDENCE.
PROCLAMATION	A formal legal document, issued by the CROWN or its representative, which gives orders, makes a statement, or otherwise exercises Royal powers. Proclamations can be very general, as was the ROYAL PROCLAMATION OF 1763. They can also be specific, or tied to specific statutes; see, for example, the GOVERNOR IN COUNCIL's power to suspend parts of the Indian Act by proclamation (Indian Act, R.S.C. 1970, chapter I-6, section 4(2).) Royal Proclamations since 1867 have been printed in the government document known as the *Canada Gazette, Part I*. They are indexed by subject in the annual *Statutes of Canada*. See also PREROGATIVE.
PUBLIC ARCHIVES OF CANADA	The central national ARCHIVE that holds the older records of the federal government, including those of the Department of Indian Affairs and various historic private records.
QUIT CLAIM (legal term)	A legal document by which a person formally gives up all claim to a piece of property. Quit claims are often used where the person's claim is uncertain or not very strong. They are sometimes called for in sales or leases of SURRENDERED Indian land, where there is confusion as to the conflicting rights of different buyers and assignees.
RED TICKET	See COMMUTATION.
REFERENCE	The name and description of a book or document, used to locate it or to refer others to it. A reference is always complete enough so that the book or paper can be found again by another person. For example, to locate a document in an ARCHIVE, a researcher needs a reference that includes the name of the archive; the name of the group of records; the box or volume number; the file number; and (usually) the date, author and title of a report, or the date, sender and receiver of a letter.
REGISTERED INDIAN	See INDIAN STATUS.

REGISTERED TRAPLINE	A fixed trapping area, allocated each year by a provincial or territorial government to one or more licensed trappers. Provincial/territorial laws regulate the size of the lines, the way they are used, and the number of animals that can be taken on them each year. They were first introduced to this country in the 1920s, and are now found in most of central and northern Canada. In some areas, individual registered traplines are replaced by large undivided "trapping blocks" shared by groups of licensed trappers.
REGISTRAR (OR REGISTRAR OF INDIAN MEMBERSHIP)	The official of the Department of Indian Affairs who, since 1951, has had powers under the Indian Act to administer INDIAN STATUS, and to decide who does and does not have status.
REGULATIONS	A formal written set of rules used by a government department to conduct a particular kind of business. They are usually confirmed by ORDER IN COUNCIL under the terms of a STATUTE, after which they may have the force of law. Examples of regulations relating to Indians are the "Indian Land Regulations" of 1888, governing sale of SURRENDERED Indian land (made under section 41 of the Indian Act of 1886, R.S.C. chapter 43); the "Indian Health Regulations" of 1953 (made under section 72(1)(f) of the Indian Act of 1952, R.S.C. chapter 149); and the "Indian Oil and Gas Regulations" of 1977 (made under the Indian Oil and Gas Act of 1974, S.C. chapter 15). Other current Indian Act regulations deal with topics such as Indian economic development and housing; borrowing of funds by BAND COUNCILS; Council rules of procedure, elections, and referenda; Indian estates, health, and waste disposal; on-reserve mining and timber cutting; and control of dogs and traffic on reserves. Regulations are CONSOLIDATED in the same way as STATUTES. Consolidations of federal regulations have been made in 1889, 1955, and 1978.
RELEASE (legal term)	See SURRENDER.
RESEARCH	Looking for facts and records that help tell a story, write a history, or document a claim. Research deals with many kinds of information, such as material from ARCHIVES and libraries, ORAL HISTORY, ANTHROPOLOGY, GEOGRAPHY and other scholarly studies, and other PRIMARY and SECONDARY SOURCES.
RESERVE (or INDIAN RESERVE)	Land set aside for the use or occupancy of an Indian group or BAND. Reserves are defined in the Indian Act and are provided for or mentioned in the CONSTITUTION, various TREATIES, various FEDERAL STATUTES, and various other CROWN agreements and executive actions. It is still not entirely clear in law exactly what sort of land an Indian reserve is, or how reserves are established. The current position of the federal government is that all Indian reserves are legally the property of the Crown, and that Indian Bands have significant rights to or INTERESTS in them, but not full ownership in the ordinary sense. See also ENTITLEMENT, EXPROPRIATION, SEVERALTY, and SPECIAL RESERVE.
RESERVE GENERAL REGISTER	See INDIAN LAND REGISTRY.
REVENUE	See TRUST FUND.

REVERSIONARY RIGHT (legal term)	A person's land is sometimes granted to someone else, or EXPROPRIATED for a specified use, on condition that it be returned to its first owner when it is no longer used in that way. The first owner is then said to have a reversionary right to the land. For example, some railways expropriate reserve land on the stated condition that the land will revert to the Band when it is no longer used for railway purposes. In some parts of Canada, reserve land reverts to the province if it is surrendered or permanently abandoned by the Band.
REVISED STATUTES	See STATUTE.
RIGHT OF WAY	A right to cross another person's land. Generally speaking, it can include both pathways that are bought or EXPROPRIATED, and pathways that are established simply by long, unbroken use. The term has been used to indicate many types of right on Indian reserves, such as trails used by long custom, and lines (railways, roads, pipelines, canals, powerlines, etc.) that have been EXPROPRIATED, SURRENDERED, or granted as EASEMENTS. See also ROAD ALLOWANCE and MARINE ALLOWANCE.
RIPARIAN RIGHTS (from the Latin ripa, "a shore")	Special rights to land along the shore of a body of water. Among other things, these include rights to use the shoreline, rights to land under water, and rights to land washed away from the shoreline (erosion) or added to it by water action (accretion). See also WATER RIGHTS and MARINE ALLOWANCE.
ROAD ALLOWANCE	Land retained by the Crown for use as a road when it grants a piece of public land to a private owner. Road allowances are governed by specific STATUTES; these usually provide for specific road widths and a standard road pattern or grid over a specific area. If not actually used for road-building, road allowances are sometimes sold or transferred to owners of neighbouring lands. They are different from RIGHTS OF WAY, which are irregular in layout and are not usually governed by specific STATUTES.
ROBINSON TREATIES	Two Ontario Indian TREATIES signed in September of 1850 between the Crown and Indian peoples inhabiting areas north of Lake Superior (the Robinson-Superior Treaty) and north of Lake Huron (the Robinson-Huron Treaty). They are so called from the name of the Crown's Treaty Commissioner, William Benjamin Robinson. See also NUMBERED TREATY.
ROYAL PROCLAMATION OF 1763	A PROCLAMATION, issued by the British CROWN on 7 October 1763. It defined British Imperial territories in North America, set up governments for the new British COLONIES on the continent, provided for land grants to European war veterans, and stated principles concerning the Indian people within the area claimed. The section of the Proclamation referring to Indians provides for the protection of Indian "possession" of certain territory; the procedure to be followed when Indian interests in land are CEDED to non-Indians (which formed the basis of later Canadian TREATY and SURRENDER policy); the regulation of trade between Indians and non-Indians; and peace-keeping in the territory reserved for Indians.

This Proclamation is an extremely important one in Canadian Indian history and law, although its exact legal scope and meaning have not yet been settled. A copy of the document can be found in the Appendices of the REVISED STATUTES of Canada.

ROYALTY	See MINERAL RIGHTS.
SCRIP (or HALFBREED SCRIP, sometimes misspelled "Script")	A certificate redeemable in land, issued by the federal government to Métis families between 1885 and the late 1920s. Scrip was intended to compensate the Métis for the loss of their aboriginal rights, and to deal with the grievances leading to the uprisings of 1869-70 and 1885. Each person entitled to scrip under the law received a paper that could be exchanged for a certain number of acres of Crown land ("land scrip") or for a certain number of dollars' worth of Crown land or resource rights ("money scrip"). Some families of Indian descent took scrip, but were later allowed to give it back and take Treaty; some TREATY INDIANS left Treaty to take scrip. Scrip issues were governed by the Manitoba Act, the Dominion Lands Act, and ORDERS-IN-COUNCIL made under them. Except for limited issues within the areas of Treaties 10 and 11, no further scrip was given out after 1912. See also METIS and NON-STATUS INDIAN.
SEAL (legal term)	A formal stamp or marker used to witness and approve legal documents. Small round seals are often found beside the MARKS or signatures of Indians on TREATIES or SURRENDERS.
SECONDARY SOURCE	See PRIMARY AND SECONDARY SOURCES.
SEIGNEURIAL SYSTEM	The land-holding system of Quebec before 1854, under which some Indian reserves were established. Land was granted by the French CROWN to a lord ("seigneur") who then granted ownership of parts of it to smallholders or tenants ("censitaires"). Some of the land granted to religious orders, acting as "seigneurs", was used by Indians from an early date. Some of this has Indian reserve status today.
SETTLEMENT	An unorganized, unincorporated townsite or village, usually one which has been surveyed into lots or claims. The term is sometimes used more technically to refer to a permanent, Indian-occupied townsite on federal CROWN LAND, which does not have Indian RESERVE status under the Indian Act. Settlements of this type are not restricted to any one Band. They are listed in the IN[illegible] LAND REGISTRY's Crown Lands Register.
SEVERALTY	Land held "in severalty" is land held by a single owner, as opposed to communal land held by a group of people. NUMBERED TREATIES Eight and Ten provided for small reserves or reserve-like holdings of "land in severalty", to be taken by individual Indian families who did not wish to live in band communities. The term was sometimes also applied casually to individual LOCATIONS within Indian reserves. The concept is analogous in some ways to allotments of reserve land "in severalty" in the United States, under the Dawes Act of 1887.

SPECIAL RESERVE	Land set aside for Indian use by owners other than the CROWN. According to provisions in the Indian Act and earlier pre-Confederation STATUTES, these lands are subject to the same laws as ordinary reserves. In the past, certain parcels of land held by religious orders, charitable organizations, or private owners may have been special reserves in law. See also RESERVE.
SPECIFIC CLAIMS	See CLAIM.
SQUATTER	Someone who moves on to and lives on another person's land (or public land) without permission, for a certain period of time. If not removed, a squatter may under certain conditions gain an INTEREST in, or even ownership of, the land. Special legal rules apply, however, to the rights of squatters on Crown lands and Indian reserve lands. See ADVERSE POSSESSION and TRESPASS.
STATUS INDIAN	See INDIAN STATUS.
STATUTE	A written law, made by a federal parliament or a provincial legislature. The Indian Act is a *statute*. Statutes are written in a standard form: they *have* (a) a title; (b) sometimes a preamble, or general introduction describing the law and its intent; (c) the text, subdivided into sections or clauses, subsections, or even smaller divisions; and sometimes (d) attachments or schedules. Changes or additions made after the statute is first passed are called "amendments". Cancellation of a statute, or part of one, is known as *repeal*. When a statute is made to apply to events that happened at an earlier date, it is called "retroactive" or "retrospective". New statutes are published yearly, either in the *Statutes of Canada*, or the Statutes of a particular province. Territorial laws, which are similar to STATUTES, are called "ordinances". Each statute or ordinance appears as a chapter of the annual statute-book. Therefore the 1876 Indian Act is found in the *Statutes of Canada* for 1876, as "chapter 18". Older statutes are often referred to, not by year, but by the year of the current Queen or King's reign. (For example, the federal statute on Indian Affairs of 1868 was referred to as "*Statutes of Canada*, 31 Vic., chapter 42", since it was issued in the 31st year of Queen Victoria's reign. Statutes amending existing laws also appear as chapters or parts of chapters. Every so often an existing statute is reprinted unofficially, together with the amendments made since it was first passed. This process is called "consolidation" and the document is used for reference purposes only. (There have been, for example, "office consolidations" of the Indian Act in 1938, 1963 and 1978.) From time to time all existing statutes are consolidated, and technical or grammatical revisions are made to them. These are printed as the *Revised Statutes of Canada*, or of a province. There have been five sets of federal Revised Statutes since Confederation, in 1886, 1906, 1927, 1952 and 1970. The *Revised Statute* books also contain other important legal documents, such as the Interpretation Act (which determines how the revisions are to be understood), the ROYAL PROCLAMATION OF 1763, and the CONSTITUTION.

To identify a statute, give the name, year and chapter of the statute book it appeared in, and also the statute's title. For example, the Indian Act as revised and consolidated in 1906 would be referred to as follows: "Revised Statutes of Canada (or R.S.C.), 1906, chapter 81 — The Indian Act."

See also INDIAN ACT and REGULATIONS.

SURRENDER

A formal agreement by which an Indian Band consents to give up part or all of its rights on its RESERVE. A surrender for sale allows the CROWN to sell a specific part of the reserve to outside buyers, under stated conditions. Land surrendered for sale has special status (see under INDIAN LANDS). It is held for the Band's benefit, until it is patented to the buyer. The sales revenue is banked in the Band's TRUST FUND, except when levies are made for the INDIAN LAND MANAGEMENT FUND. A surrender for lease allows the Crown to lease reserve land on specified conditions. The land does not lose its reserve status. A mineral surrender, timber surrender, or surrender of other on-reserve resources, allows the Crown to lease the rights for exploitation by third parties and to collect the revenue for Band funds. Some RIGHTS OF WAY cannot be EXPROPRIATED and must be surrendered.

Accepted procedure for surrenders has been laid down in law, beginning with the ROYAL PROCLAMATION OF 1763, and continuing up to the present detailed provisions of the Indian Act. These laws all provide, among other things, that only the Crown can take and dispose of Indian land. The distinction between certain early "TREATIES" and "SURRENDERS" is often unclear. Both are often referred to as "cessions" or "releases", even though the four terms do not have exactly the same legal meanings.

Since about 1888, standard printed forms have been used for most surrenders and related AFFIDAVITS. These have been revised several times, most extensively in 1914 and 1951. Procedure for the sale of surrendered land was governed mainly by custom and special ORDERS-IN-COUNCIL before 1876; by the Indian Act after 1876; and by the "Indian Land Regulations" from 1887 to about 1951. These sales are documented in the INDIAN LAND REGISTRY.

See also AFFIDAVIT, INDIAN LANDS, LAND PAYMENTS, ROYAL PROCLAMATION OF 1763, and TRUSTEESHIP.

SURVEY SYSTEMS

The systems set up by federal and provincial law to survey and grant public lands. Three basic systems have been used in Canada, all of which affect the layout and ownership of Indian reserve lands:

(a) The SEIGNEURIAL SYSTEM of Quebec before 1854, in which grants are of relatively irregular size. They are arranged in ranges of lots, often in the "riverlot" strip pattern along major rivers. This system was also used in the old Red River area around Winnipeg before Confederation. Affects a few reserves in Quebec and Manitoba.

(b) The English colonial system, in which the land is divided up into more or less irregular counties, each subdivided into townships and standard-sized concessions and lots. Affects reserves in the Maritimes, Ontario and Quebec.

(c) The Dominion Lands system, in which the land is divided up into standard-sized townships, each containing 36 square miles or "sections", with more or less uniform patterns of road allowances. This system was used in western and northern Canada from 1871 onward. A similar "township" pattern was also used in new Quebec surveys from the mid-19th century onward.

Indian reserves were sometimes established within these systems, and sometimes stood outside them; that is, the layout and granting procedures relating to reserves sometimes conformed to local survey systems, and sometimes did not.

TIMBER BERTH (or TIMBER LIMIT)	A piece of Crown Land leased exclusively for timber-cutting.
TIMBER RIGHTS	On Indian reserves, these rights can be SURRENDERED and leased out to outsiders separately from rights to land, in much the same way as MINERAL RIGHTS. They can also be granted by PERMIT, to Band members or others, under the Indian Act.
TOTEM	See MARK.
TRADE GOODS	European goods that were commonly traded to Indian people for furs, etc., during most of the fur trade period. Typical trade goods were metal knives, axes, guns, and ammunition; metal "kettles" (large pots); blankets, cloth and clothing; foods such as flour, sugar, and pork; tea; tobacco; liquor; and silver jewelry ("trade silver"). Many trade goods were made in special styles or materials, sometimes to the specifications of the Indians who received them. See also PRESENTS.
TRAPPING BLOCK	See REGISTERED TRAPLINE.
TREASURY BOARD MINUTE	See ORDER-IN-COUNCIL (FEDERAL).
TREATY (or INDIAN TREATY)	An agreement signed between an Indian group (or groups) and the Crown, through their representatives. The Canadian Treaties purport to cover just under half of the land area of Canada, including parts of the Maritimes, British Columbia and the Northwest Territories; Ontario; and the Prairie provinces. Members of Treaty Bands today make up a little over half the REGISTERED INDIAN population of Canada. The numerous pre-Confederation Treaties in British Columbia, Ontario and the Maritimes vary widely as to style and terms. The post-Confederation Treaties of Ontario, the Prairies, British Columbia and the NWT are more uniform and cover larger areas, as noted under NUMBERED TREATIES. Most of these agreements have been published in book form; those dating from 1680 to 1903 in Indian Treaties and Surrenders, 3 volumes (Ottawa: Department of Indian Affairs, 1891-1912, reprinted Toronto: Coles, 1971); and the Robinson and post-

Confederation Treaties in fourteen separate booklets (Ottawa: Queen's Printer, 1957-1969). The originals of most of these Treaty documents are in the Public Archives of Canada, Record Group 10, volumes 1840-1853.

The true historical and legal meanings of the Canadian Treaties, and the true intentions of each side in making them, are still uncertain. The written texts sometimes refer to alliances and the maintaining of peace and friendship, and sometimes to the CESSION of Indian rights to land in return for various benefits granted by the Crown. These may include money, land, goods, the continuance of hunting and fishing rights, and other forms of CONSIDERATION. In some cases there were also "outside promises" -- benefits promised during the Treaty negotiations but not included in the final written text; these, too, are of uncertain legal effect.

Certain important kinds of SPECIFIC CLAIMS relate to the interpretation of Treaties and the carrying out of their provisions: for example, claims relating to land ENTITLEMENT, ANNUITIES, hunting, fishing, and trapping, and the provision of specific goods and supplies.

See also ABORIGINAL RIGHTS, CLAIMS, MARK, and SURRENDER.

TREATY COMMISSIONER	The government official formally empowered to negotiate a TREATY on the CROWN's behalf. His authorization may be by formal INSTRUCTIONS or by ORDER-IN-COUNCIL.
TREATY DAY	The annual meeting at which Treaty ANNUITIES were (and in some remote areas still are) distributed to members of particular Bands under the NUMBERED TREATIES. These occasions were often used by federal officials to transact other business with the Band.
TREATY INDIAN	See INDIAN STATUS.
TREATY PAYLISTS (or TREATY ANNUITY PAYSHEET)	Lists of members of a particular Band, used to record yearly payments of Treaty ANNUITIES. They sometimes give details about family sizes, births, marriages, deaths and places of residence. Therefore they are often used in historical research, especially on INDIAN STATUS or ENTITLEMENT. Regular annual paylists have been kept for Bands in the ROBINSON TREATY areas since 1850; for the NUMBERED TREATY bands since 1871; and on a less regular basis for other Treaties involving annuities. Paylists vary widely in detail and accuracy. See also ANNUITY, CENSUS and INTEREST.
TRESPASS	Going on to another person's property illegally and without the owner's consent. The Indian Act defines trespass on Indian reserves in special ways and provides for special penalties. Long-term trespass may be referred to as SQUATTING, especially if the SQUATTER gains, or purports to gain, rights to the land he occupies.
TRIBAL ADMINISTRATION	A term that has recently come into use in some regions to refer to what was previously called a BAND COUNCIL, including the elected council itself and its administrative staff.

TRIBAL COUNCIL	A term that has recently come into use in some regions to refer to a grouping of TRIBAL ADMINISTRATIONS or BAND COUNCILS into a regional political unit. The Tribal Council may or may not be empowered to represent the Bands externally, or to administer common funds or resources. The term is sometimes also used as a substitute for BAND COUNCIL.
TRUST FUNDS (or BAND FUNDS, or INDIAN FUNDS, or INDIAN TRUST FUND)	Moneys belonging to individual Indian Bands, held and (until recently) managed by the federal government for each Band as a group. Most are made up of proceeds from the sale, lease or expropriation of reserve lands and the resources on them. Some Ontario funds were originally based on "capitalized" lump-sum ANNUITIES paid under pre-Confederation TREATIES. Rules for their management are given in the Indian Act, a series of historic ORDERS-IN-COUNCIL relating to interest rates and interest handling, various ORDERS-IN-COUNCIL and REGULATIONS governing the sales of Indian land and resources, and any specific SURRENDER agreements governing the spending of money for particular Bands. Indian Band trust funds, referred to collectively as "the Indian Fund", should not be confused with public moneys (APPROPRIATIONS) granted by Parliament to the Department of Indian Affairs or to BAND COUNCILS. Both types of fund are held by the federal Receiver-General and receive the same rate of government INTEREST. However, the Indian Fund is not the property of the CROWN in precisely the same sense. Each Band has its own numbered trust fund account. Yearly statements of all debits and credits on each account have been compiled since 1860, or earlier for a few Bands. There are also federal "savings" accounts for individual Indian people, accounts for groups of Bands, and "funds" for various special purposes. See also INDIAN LAND MANAGEMENT FUND and INTEREST.
TRUSTEE and TRUSTEESHIP	Legal terms referring to a relationship between two people or groups, one of which has a special responsibility to protect or manage the property or interests of the other. For example, a lawyer may be a trustee responsible for managing the money of his or her client, who is called the "beneficiary", "trustor" or "cestui que trust". This trust relationship may be set up and governed by a formal written agreement, or it may simply be "implied" by the actual relations between the two parties. Canadian law lays down certain other definite rules that apply to a legal trust. Relationships that do not have all the features of a legal trust, but which still involve one party taking responsibility for the property or interests of another, may be called fiduciary relationships. The meaning of the term "trusteeship" in Canadian Indian history and law is as yet unclear. It has been tentatively applied to two somewhat different situations: (a) the federal government's management of Indian reserve lands and resources and Band TRUST FUNDS on behalf of the Bands; and (b) the Crown's general moral and political relations with Indian people (not confined to matters of property). A fuller legal definition of the term may arise out of various court actions that are still (as of November 1982) unsettled.

USUFRUCT (or **USUFRUCTUARY RIGHTS**) (legal term: from the Latin, "use of the fruits")	The right to use and occupy a property or piece of land (as opposed to owning it). One legal view of ABORIGINAL RIGHTS is that they are usufructuary rights on land actually owned by the Crown. That is, Indians have rights to live on, use, and make a living from their traditional territories; but they do not own them outright, and the Crown can appropriate them for other uses, if it chooses to do so. This interpretation has, however, been challenged by some legal scholars.
WAMPUM	Valuable shell beads, once widely used by eastern Canadian and American Indian groups for ornament and ceremony, and by non-Indians for currency. (It appears that Indians generally did not use wampum as money, although they esteemed it as a valuable TRADE GOOD). Wampum was made into jewelry, strung on cords ("strings") or woven into patterned strips ("wampum belts"). The belt and string patterns often symbolized particular events, peoples, or alliances. Different groups used them for various ceremonies, such as ransoming captives, paying tribute, proposing marriage, and condoling on the death of chiefs. Their best-known use, however, was in the establishment of trade or political relations between peoples. Wampum of this kind was formally displayed, or "read" by speakers, on occasions commemorating or renewing the relationship. Wampum was exchanged between Indians and non-Indians in the early Canadian fur trade, and in military contexts, both ceremonially and as a TRADE GOOD. Indian groups showed their assent to certain pre-Confederation Canadian TREATIES by presenting wampum to Crown officials. Wampum takes its English name from a New England Algonkian word meaning "white strings". It comes in two basic colours, white and purple (also called "black" or "blue", and varying from light to very dark violet). It was made from several different kinds of shell, mainly Atlantic Coast seashells. Porcelain substitutes were used in some places. Some early wampum was disc shaped, but most ceremonial wampum beads are cylindrical. Wampum is sometimes confused with other kinds of shell that have esoteric religious meanings.
WATER RIGHTS	Generally speaking, the term "water rights" includes various kinds of water use, such as rights to use water for navigation, drinking, irrigation, and fishing; access rights to water or to the shores of bodies of water; and RIPARIAN RIGHTS. On Indian reserves, water rights are governed by a number of different legal principles, including the terms of any relevant Treaties, federal and provincial STATUTES, the common law, and the specific terms under which the reserve was originally established.

APPENDIX 2

RESTRICTIONS ON ACCESS TO RECORDS ON INDIAN HISTORY AND CLAIMS

This section describes the most important official restrictions on federal, provincial, and private records used by Indian historical and claims researchers. That is, it describes records that are closed to researchers in whole or in part, and records that can only be used for special purposes.

Records of the Federal Government

The rules that apply to researchers' access to federal government files and other records are in the process of change. As of November 1982, access to all federal records was governed by federal policy statements issued in 1969 and 1977, supplemented by various departmental "guidelines". In July of 1982, however, two new laws, the Access to Information Act and the Privacy Act, were passed to govern future access to federal records. Since these Acts will not actually come into force until July 1983, both present and future rules are outlined here.

1. Current federal access rules

As of November 1982, the rules for access to federal government records in all departments are set down in two federal policy statements, dated 1969 and 1977.[1] Most federal departments also have written access directives or guidelines, prescribing in more detail how these policies are to be carried out. Some departments may also modify their rules unofficially to comply with the spirit of the new access laws.

---

[1] That is, the Prime Minister's statement to the House of Commons on 1 May 1969 (see House of Commons, *Debates*, 1969, pages 8199-8200) and a formal Cabinet Directive dated 23 June 1977, and issued on 14 November 1978. (The latter superseded a similar Cabinet Directive, No. 46 of 7 June 1973). Copies of these documents are available from the Federal Archives Division of the Public Archives of Canada.

An important feature of the federal policy in all departments is the "30-year rule". By this, a department is allowed, if it chooses, to close any record that is less than 30 years old. This rule is not uniformly applied, and is practically a dead letter in relation to DIAND records. However, it remains an option that is used by some departments who, for various reasons, cannot or will not open current records to "outsiders". Researchers who need to use the records of any federal government department other than DIAND should contact the records manager of the department in question for further information on this or other departmental practices.

Department of Indian Affairs records

DIAND's present rules for access to claims information are laid out in special guidelines based on the 1969 and 1977 policy statements, the "Indian-Inuit Affairs Program Circular #A-2", dated 1 September 1977. Copies of the circular can be obtained from the Department's Treaties and Historical Research Centre. Research on matters other than claims is governed by very similar rules set out in other statements.[2]

The Department's present philosophy on records access was laid out in letters to several Indian organizations in March 1973.[3] These letters state that, "because of the unique needs of the Indian peoples in the area of claims research", DIAND "must...interpret the [1969 access policy] statement more liberally than might otherwise have been the case, so that the work of researchers in that area can be facilitated". To this end, the Minister "asked Departmental officers to make every effort to provide with the least delay possible, the fullest possible information on Indian claims".[4] The letters also stated that Indian groups should work with the Department to achieve the mutual understanding necessary to identify the records needed to resolve the claims.

---

[2] Department of Indian and Northern Affairs, Departmental Directive D/D-62, "Release of Material from Departmental Records"; and Records Management Manual DRM 10-10, volume 1 part 1.

[3] Letter, Jean Chrétien (Minister, DIAND) to David Ahenakew (President, Federation Of Saskatchewan Indians), 28 March 1973. Copy available from DIAND, Treaties and Historical Research Centre, Ottawa.

[4] Ibid.

Current rules, which are summed up below, are to remain in effect until the 1982 Acts are declared in force. Consult the Treaties and Historical Research Centre of DIAND for further details.

Qualifications of researchers: Researchers wanting to use government documents for claims research must be officially accredited to do so by the Indian or Inuit Band or association for which they are working. The kind of accreditation needed is described below. Chiefs, Councillors, and other Band officials do not need special authorization papers as long as they are "acting on the instruction" of their Band Council. Other researchers are admitted to the records at the discretion of the Department; they do in fact usually get access to non-restricted documents for ordinary research purposes.

Accreditation to do Research: DIAND asks that claims researchers have a letter from their Band or Indian association, stating that they are authorized to do research on their group's behalf. These letters are usually signed by their Chief or Research Director. Associations must also have Band authorization (that is, a Band Council Resolution or an All-Chiefs' Conference resolution) to allow their researchers to request access to records on the Band's behalf. Copies of these resolutions and/or letters should be given to the Department office when the work is begun.

Authorizations are considered to be valid until they are formally withdrawn, or until the researcher leaves his or her job.

Authorizations normally name the association or researcher, but otherwise can be worded in general terms. The researcher is thus free to request any records necessary to document a claim. The authorization may, however, be confined to a particular subject. As discussed below, a specially worded letter is needed to gain access to certain of the "restricted" records. A few types of records cannot be opened at all.

What Records are Open? All DIAND records which are not specifically restricted are normally open to all researchers. This is true for records in Ottawa and in Regional and District offices, and for the older records in the Public Archives of Canada, and for records less than 30 years old (unless otherwise restrictable).

What Records are Restricted? The following records are not open to claims (or other) researchers, except where special conditions are noted[5].

- Personal information (that is, information that "might violate the privacy of any individual"). Examples include records on Indian status and membership (including personal status cases, adoption, divorce, illegitimacy, and enfranchisement) where the records mention individuals; certain Band membership lists and related material; hiring and firing of Band officials; debts of individuals; and criminal "case files", such as those involving murder and liquor offences.

  The particular people mentioned in a record can usually (though not always) have access to it themselves, or can authorize others to have access on their behalf. In some cases, especially for older records, claims researchers can get access to claims-related "membership" records if they obtain a Band Council letter or resolution that grants them specific permission to use those records. The format of this authorization, and the conditions of access, must be negotiated with the Registrar of Indian Membership in Ottawa. If allowed, access may be supervised and copying limited.

---

[5] The principles stated here are derived from the 1977 DIAND guidelines (Program Circular A-2), the 1969 and 1977 federal policy statements, and information from Department officers as to current (1982) standard practice.

Some of the older "personal" records are opened on request to researchers, without special authorization being required. This is the case with Treaty annuity paylists before 1900 (and in some cases up to 1955); and the pre-1946 files on annuity payments, band transfers, and scrip, found on restricted microfilm runs of the Black and Red Series of RG-10 in the Public Archives of Canada.

- Records of business with other governments and Indian Bands. These include letters and other papers sent between Indian Affairs and other governments (municipal, provincial, and foreign, as well as other federal departments). These are restricted if release of these records might break a written or unwritten agreement between the governments, or if their disclosure might "embarrass" the federal government in its dealings with them. Records giving "details of band business with the government" are also restricted, except to accredited Band researchers. As a general rule, these documents can be released only if the researcher gets written permission from both the governments involved.

- Personnel records. Records on the hiring, employment, and firing of DIAND and other federal staff are closed (unless the person's permission is given) until 90 years after the person's birth.

- Cabinet documents. All Cabinet minutes, and draft and final submissions to Cabinet and Treasury Board, are closed until they are thirty years old.

- Justice opinions. The "text or substance" of all legal opinions given by Department of Justice lawyers to DIAND since after 1934 are closed. The Department of Justice may, in certain cases, reveal the facts going into an opinion, but not the opinion itself.

Justice opinions before 1934 are available in the Public Archives of Canada, in Record Group 13 (parts A-1 and A-3, the Indexes and Letterbooks, indexed under "Indian Affairs").

- Matters under litigation. DIAND's legal advisors have recently begun to impose closure on DIAND background records on particular cases, once these cases come before the courts. (This includes ordinary reserve land and membership files as well as records relating directly to the court action itself.) It is not clear how far this power extends, and whether it can be exercised before as well as after the court action begins.

- Opinions of federal officials. "Subjective comment reflecting upon an individual, or particular situation" by a government official in records less than thirty years old, are closed. Screeners have tended in the past to remove only the most extreme or controversial documents of this type.

- Contracts with the Crown. That is, papers relating to the negotiation and fulfilment of contracts of any kind with the Department. These records may be released after the contract is fulfilled, if the Department decides to do so.

- Records closed by a specific law. For example, those labelled "confidential", "secret", and "top secret". This includes records relating to Canadian security and intelligence covered by the Official Secrets Act.

How Restrictions Are Applied: Before you begin work on DIAND files, you will be asked to fill out a form applying for general access to departmental records. This includes a statement pointing out that your access to the files will be governed by current federal policies. (This clause has no practical effect other than getting you to acknowledge that such policies exist and are applied to you.) After you sign this form and deposit your letters of authorization, you may begin work on your files.

All files shown to you are "screened" first. That is, a departmental official reads them and takes out of them all documents which are restricted under the rules listed above. (These documents are kept separately and returned to the file when it is sent back to storage.) Some files have too much restricted material to screen off; these are closed to researchers completely.

If you ask, however, the officials in charge should tell you whether anything has been removed from a file. In some offices (and depending on circumstances) you may also be told the amount and date of the screened-off material, and even its general subject. You can also protest the withholding of any material by appealing to the District Supervisor, or Regional or Branch Director. If the appeal is rejected, the decision must be given in writing.

Variations between offices: Access rules for DIAND claims research apply equally in all departmental offices -- whether in Ottawa, the Regions or the Districts. In practice, there is some variation across Canada as to procedure and interpretation of the guidelines. Bring any significant differences between offices to the notice of senior officials of the Department.

What do restrictions mean to researchers? Different researchers have different views about federal access restrictions. Some people feel that they are used unjustly to withhold important information. Others do not feel that restrictions affect their work. To some degree your opinion will depend on what topic you are researching, since some projects use fewer restricted records than others. More important is the fact that departmental screeners have not been consistent, over time and in different offices, as to the documents they decide to restrict. (Thus many files closed in the early 1970s have since been declassified, and some documents given out by one DIAND office are withheld by another.) For these reasons some researchers conclude that federal officials deliberately conspire to hide documents from them.

My experience is that this belief is usually -- though not always -- wrong. It is clear that problems do arise from variations in the application of discretionary powers by individual government screeners, and from the conflicts of interest inherent in the documentation of litigated claims using government records. However, unnecessary problems are also created when researchers do not know the access rules well, and conclude that ordinary restrictions are directed at them personally, or at the claim they are researching. They may also not realize that government files are often disordered, incomplete, or even lost, and may decide incorrectly that the records have been tampered with. Some officials make the situation worse by acting confused about what they are allowed to show to researchers, by being unwilling to make efforts to find out-of-the-way records, or by showing suspicion that researchers may try to steal the documents for which they (the officials) are responsible.

The result is delay and mistrust on both sides. What can researchers do to minimize these problems? I can only suggest that you learn as much about the records as you can before you begin research, so that you can state clearly what you are after. Then, learn the access rules well yourself, make sure that they are properly applied in your case, arm yourself with any special authorizations you may need before requesting access, and question any restrictions you think are improper.

2. New federal rules under the Access to Information and Privacy Acts

The Access to Information Act[1] and the Privacy Act[2] were passed by Parliament in July of 1982. The first-named Act defines the public's right to see and use federal government records generally. The Privacy Act closes or restricts certain government records relating to individual peoples' personal lives and private business. Both Acts set up complicated systems to administer access. They lay down detailed rules for the enforcement of the law; the government's use of discretionary powers to open or close certain types of records; appeals against restrictions; and corrections of mistakes in existing records.

However, the Acts will not come into effect until they are formally "proclaimed" to be in force; this is now scheduled for some time in July of 1983. At that time, the federal Treasury Board will also issue regulations specifying how the Acts are to be carried out. Both the Acts and the Treasury Board regulations will apply to Indian historical and claims researchers, except where they are specifically exempted by the law. DIAND will probably also set up its own third-level policy directive stating exactly what procedures (e.g., what forms and authorizations) will be required to implement the Act and the regulations.

It is not yet known exactly what changes the Acts will make to the present system. The following are some probable developments.

- In general, the present level of access to records other than "personal" records will continue. Access to some documents, such as certain Cabinet records, may be quicker and easier.

---

[1] Canada, Statutes, 1981-82, chapter number to be announced.

[2] Canada, Statutes, 1981-82, chapter number to be announced.

- There will be much broader and more rigid restrictions on "personal information". Since personal information is very broadly defined in the Privacy Act[3], some frequently-used records (such as Treaty annuity paylists), and many general documents that contain incidental personal information, may be closed to people who are not exempted claims researchers (see next section). The screening procedures required to separate "personal" from non-personal materials may make research by non-exempted persons in DIAND records more difficult and time-consuming.

- Accredited claims researchers will probably continue to have access to "personal information", under a special exemption in the Privacy Act, clause 8(2)(k), which states that:

  > "Subject to any other Act of Parliament, personal information under the control of a government institution may be disclosed ... (k) to any association of aboriginal people, Indian band, government institution or part thereof, or to any person acting on behalf of such association, band, institution or part thereof, for the purpose of researching or validating the claims, disputes or grievances of any of the aboriginal peoples of Canada".

- However, DIAND will continue to have significant discretionary control over the release of material, even under the claims exemption just quoted. How far this control will extend is not yet clear. The extent of control by the Privacy Commissioner, a "watchdog" official with certain other discretionary powers over personal records, is also not clear.

---

[3] For example, it may include any reference whatever to a person's address, marital status or political views, regardless of context, even if the information was given voluntarily to the government.

- Documents now open to researchers in the Public Archives of Canada are likely to remain open, even if they would otherwise be restricted.

- It is not clear whether the new Acts will allow government lawyers to close background records relating to a particular claim once the claim has been taken to court; or, if this power does exist, whether it will extend to the period before the claim is formally filed.

- "Justice opinions" (legal opinions on Indian claims and related matters rendered by government lawyers to DIAND) dated after 1934 will remain closed to researchers under a specific provision (clause 24) of the Access to Information Act, unless the Department chooses to make them public.

- A special legal process will be set up by which researchers can appeal restrictions. This process may in practice be cumbersome, or expensive, or both.

- The paperwork required to accredit researchers and authorize their access to records will be more standardized, but may be more complex.

- None of the restrictions cited apply to the federal government's claims research staff.

Note that these are tentative predictions only. The full meaning of the new laws will not become clear until after they go into effect. For further information about these matters, consult the full texts of the new Acts, and contact the Treaties and Historical Research Centre, DIAND, or archivists in charge of RG-10 at the Public Archives of Canada.

Records of the Provincial Governments

Provincial governments generally have access-to-records policies that are more restrictive than those of the federal government. Only a few provinces have access-to-information laws or regulations as yet. They tend simply to deny access where there is doubt as to whether the records are personal or controversial.

Use tact if you are applying for permission to use provincial files on claims-related subjects. Your chances of success will be greater if you find out beforehand (a) exactly what records you need; (b) roughly where in the filing system they are; (c) who is responsible for giving you permission to see them; and (d) what access rules, if any, the province may apply to your request. Remember that access is often denied simply because the civil servant in charge does not know where the requested record is, or what rules apply to it. If you are refused access unreasonably, contact someone higher up in the department involved. Make your problem their problem, and you may get results.

Records of Private Bodies

Many collections of records used in claims research have been created by churches, companies, and similar bodies. These are often subject to special restrictions, even when they have been deposited in public archives and libraries.

The rules for access to these records vary widely. Some groups impose restrictions to protect the privacy of individuals. Others limit use because they do not have the facilities to accommodate outside researchers. Some wish to influence opinions expressed by the researcher in his or her final published report.

Researchers should consult the church, company or archive concerned in each case. An adequate arrangement for access can almost always be worked out. In the event that you have major difficulties, remember that you have no absolute legal right of access to these records, short of the legal right to demand or "subpoena" them during a court case. Thus negotiation is usually your only practical alternative.

To give an example, the Hudson's Bay Company records are probably the most often-used of all private records on Indian history. Permission to use them (whether the originals at the Public Archives of Manitoba in Winnipeg, or the microfilms at the Public Archives of Canada in Ottawa) must be obtained from the Company's archivist. The Company requests a brief statement of the subject being researched, and imposes certain requirements if the researcher wishes to publish the final report or any lengthy quotations from the records. Indian historical and claims researchers normally have no problem in getting access or in using material from HBC records for ordinary purposes.

You may also be required to give "acknowledgments" to a private archive in your final report: that is, to state that you have used their material according to their formal permission. Thanking your sources is in any case a courtesy much appreciated by archivists (and others) who may have given a great deal of time and effort to your project.

APPENDIX 3

BORROWING OR BUYING MICROFILM FOR RESEARCH ON INDIAN HISTORY

The following three lists indicate:

A. Major document collections on Indian history from the Public Archives of Canada and National Library of Canada which have been microfilmed and are available on loan outside Ottawa.

B. How to buy microfilms for private use.

C. What libraries and archives outside Ottawa hold their own permanent copies of the Department of Indian Affairs (RG-10) records on microfilm listed in "A", above.

Thanks are due to the various archives and libraries who helped to compile this list. Please bring any mistakes or additions to the attention of the Treaties and Historical Research Centre, DIAND (Ottawa) for use in future revisions.

A. Microfilmed Records Available On Interlibrary Loan From The Public Archives Of Canada And National Library Of Canada

The following is a selection of the records most often used by researchers in Indian history that are on microfilm, and that can be borrowed on interlibrary loan through local libraries. The list is valid as of March 1982. More will be available in future, as microfilming continues.

In some cases only part of the Public Archives' total microfilm holdings of a record group are available on loan. Where this list is not specific as to the parts available, consult the archivists for details before beginning your research. Some films are not loaned out because of access restrictions or technical problems; these are not included in the list. Note that the PAC usually restricts borrowing outside Ottawa to a limited number of reels per person per month.

A more detailed listing of available microfilm will be included in a general review of PAC records relating to native people, to be published by the Treaties and Historical Research Centre in 1983.

1. RG-10 (Records of the Indian Affairs Department)

MICROFILM:	All non-restricted files, ledgers, and letterbooks in RG-10 volumes 1-991A, 1078-1133, 1273-1672, 1730-1761, 1819-1837, 1839, 1855-5836, 6001-7194, 7325-7337, 7459-8096, 8114-8129, 8184-8896, 8952-8953, 10017-10031, and 10445-10660.

MICROFILM OR MICROFICHE:

(a) complete lists of files ("box lists") and computerized subject indexes for the Red and Black series (volumes 1855-3251 and 3555-4095); (b) complete list of files ("box list") and computerized subject index to the Schools files, volumes 6001-6491, accession 72/596; and (c) complete list of files and computerized subject index to the "new accessions" (that is, the eleven groups from 72/597 to 72/601 and 72/603 to 73/103). NOTE: THE NEW ACCESSION INDEXES WILL NOT BE AVAILABLE UNTIL LATE 1982. Box lists and subject indexes include file, volume, and microfilm reel references as well as file titles and outside dates.

Note on irregularities in indexing of RG-10 microfilm: Some of the original files in the RG-10 series listed above are restricted, because they contain personal or business information relating to particular individuals or Bands. Some, though not all, appear in the overall subject indexes and lists. Some restricted files have not been microfilmed, and some have been filmed in separate groups. These restricted microfilms are not ordinarily loaned out. In some cases they can be used by researchers in Ottawa, if the permission of DIAND and of the Bands or persons concerned is obtained. Contact the Federal Archives Division of the Public Archives of Canada for details.

Several dozen files in the Black or Western series were omitted from the microfilm of volumes 3555-4095; these are available separately on reel C-11063. A list is available from the Public Records Division.

2. RG-8 (British Military and Naval Records)

Substantial portions of the record group are available. Consult PAC, Manuscript Division, for details.

3. RG 13 (Department of Justice)

Sections A-3 (departmental letterbooks, 1867-1934) and B-2 (Records of the trial of Louis Riel and Riel's private papers, 1873-1886) are available; note that the indexes to the letterbooks (A-1) are not.

4. RG-15 (Department of the Interior)

A few isolated records are available, including the Department's Letters Patent (1883-1950) and some Métis land grant records. Consult PAC (Public Records Division) for details.

5. RG-18 (RCMP)

The RCMPs Yukon regional records (1898-1951) are available.

6. RG-31 (Canada Census Records)

The federal census records for 1825-1881 are available; some regional libraries also hold permanent copies.

7. RG-45 (Geological Survey)

Letterbooks of the Director (1865-1908) and the field notebooks of George Mercer Dawson (1875-1900), some of which include ethnological observations, are available.

8. RG-68 (Registrar-General)

Some indexes and some copies of patents to sold surrendered Indian lands (1845-1960) are available. Consult PAC, Public Records Division, for details.

9. RG-91 (Yukon Territorial Government Records)

The entire collection (1898-1951) is available.

10. Manuscript Groups

Significant portions of the following manuscript groups, including much material relating to native history, are available for loan: MG-1 and MG-4 (Archives of the French Colonies and the Military); MG-11 (Colonial Office Papers); MG-19 (Fur Trade and Indian History); MG-23 and MG-24 (18th and 19th century documents, including the Simcoe, Russell, Colborne, and Strachan papers); MG-26 (Prime Ministers' Papers) and MG-27 (Papers of political figures, including those of Edgar Dewdney, Louis Riel, Alexander Morris, and Adams Archibald).

Contact PAC, Manuscript Division, for details of holdings and restrictions on use.

11. Canadian Government Records (Published)

The following are available on microfiche for interlibrary loan from the National Library of Canada:

Department of Indian Affairs Annual Reports (1867-1975) and various special Pre-Confederation reports on Indian Affairs, including those of 1844-47 and 1858.

NOTE: The National Library of Canada is missing the reports for the years 1868/9, 1887/8, 1970/1 and 1971/2.

Special Joint Committee on the Indian Act — Minutes of Proceedings and Evidence (1946-48).

Senate/House of Commons Joint Committee on Indian Affairs — Minutes of Proceedings and Evidence (1959-1961).

Standing Committee of the House of Commons on Indian Affairs and Human Rights — Minutes of Proceedings and Evidence (1966-1967).

Standing Committee of the House of Commons on Indian Affairs and Northern Development — Minutes of Proceedings and Evidence (1968 to present).

Other Canadian government documents available on microfilm are listed in the National Library of Canada's booklet, *Official Publications Division* (Ottawa: Minister of Supply and Services 1981), available free from the Library.

12. United States Government Records

A good selection of American government and related records are available on interlibrary loan from US libraries, although loans through the National Archives in Washington, DC have recently been curtailed. For detailed listings of existing microfilms see *The American Indian: Select Catalog of National Archives Microfilm Publications* (Washington: National Archives and Records Service, 1972) and *Catalog of National Archives Microfilm Publications* (Washington: National Archives and Records Service, 1974). For a guide to the use of these records, see Francis Paul Prucha, *A Bibliographical Guide to the History of Indian - White Relations in the United States* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1977) pp. 3-16. Check with the National Library of Canada, or directly with the National Archives, for further information on loan procedures.

13. British Government Documents (Published)

Some historic British documents - in particular the records of the British Parliament - are available from the National Library of Canada. See the short description in the National Library of Canada's booklet, Official Publications Division (Ottawa: Minister of Supply and Services, 1981), available free from the Library.

14. University Theses

A good selection of unpublished university theses on Canadian native history is available on microfiche or microfilm, either from the National Library of Canada, or from American sources. Contact the National Library for further information.

15. Miscellaneous Publications

The Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions is putting on microfiche all books ever published on or in Canada. Available to date are approximately 50,000 items published before 1900. See section B.3 (Commercial Firms), below.

B. Buying Microfilm For Private Use

1. Sales by the Public Archives of Canada

Some of the films listed above (including all the non-restricted microfilms of RG-10) can be bought for private use. Consult the Federal Archives Division of the Public Archives of Canada, at the address given in Appendix 4, for details. Below are current prices, not including sales tax. These are valid as of April 1982, but are subject to change.

Price per reel of microfilm (16mm size).......	$ 12.50
(35mm size).......	$ 18.25
Price per card of microfiche....................	$ 0.40
Price per storage envelope (per fiche)........	$ 0.10

A reel may contain anywhere from one to several dozen files, ledgers or other records. RG-10 includes both 16 mm and 35mm reel sizes, depending on the volumes ordered. Note that file lists and subject indexes to the Red and Black Series, the School Files and the New Accessions are available on either reel or fiche.

2. Other archives and libraries

Microfilms made by archives other then the PAC are sometimes available for sale. Consult the institution concerned for details. In some cases, PAC holds copies of "outside" microfilm, and will refer your inquiry to the appropriate archive.

3. Commercial firms

Published Canadian government reports and minutes (those listed in section 11, above, as well as some of those in sections 12 and 13) are all available for sale from Micromedia Ltd. Contact their offices at: 144 Front Street West, Toronto, Ontario M5J 1G2, tel. 1-416-593-5211. Prices vary according to the volume of the records and other factors. The cost of a partial run of the DIA Annual Reports from 1872 to 1975, as of March 1982, was about $746.00, tax not included; the 1946-48 Minutes of the Committee on the Indian Act were $76.00, plus tax. Prices of other records are comparable.

A wide variety of historical and other published books on Canada dating from before 1900, including many relating to Canadian Indians, are available on microfiche from the Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions (P.O. Box 2428, Station "D", OTTAWA, Ontario K1P 5W5, tel. 1-613-563-3629). Their catalogue, Canada, The Printed Record: A Bibliographic Register With Indexes, is available in most large reference libraries. Their charge, as of May 1982, is $5.25 per book, regardless of length; discounts are sometimes given on large orders.

C. Libraries Holding Indian Affairs Records (RG-10) on Microfilm

Only RG-10 holdings as of March 1982 are listed here. Parts of other Public Archives of Canada collections, especially the federal censuses (RG-31), the Prime Ministers' Papers (MG-26) and the Colonial Office Papers (MG-11) are also available at some archives or libraries across Canada.

A few Indian organizations and Band Council offices, not listed here, have private reference copies of RG-10 microfilms. These usually include the "Red" or "Black" Series and their indexes. Some allow outside researchers to consult these records by special arrangement.

British Columbia

1. University of British Columbia (Vancouver): (a) Black Series files (all non-restricted files in RG-10 volumes 3555-4095); (b) Black Series registers and register indexes (RG-10 volumes 4096-4375); (c) Deputy Superintendent-General of Indian Affairs Letterbooks (RG-10 volumes 1078-1133); (d) B.C. Inspectorate, Agency, and miscellaneous local records (reels C-13908 to 13933, C-14264 to 14279, and C-14876 to 14881 or approximately RG-10 volumes 1310-1390, 1442-1493, 1565-1566, 1583-1590, 1622, and 1646-1661).

   (Available at: Government Publications and Microforms Division, University of British Columbia Library, 1965 Main Mall, Vancouver, B.C. V6T 1Y3; tel. 1-604-228-2584).

2. Provincial Archives of British Columbia (Victoria): (a) Black Series files (all non-restricted Files in RG-10 volumes 3555-4095); (b) Black Series File list and computerized subject index; (c) miscellaneous records relating to or created by B.C. Superintendencies, Inspectorates, Agencies, etc. (RG-10 volumes 1310-1328, 1336-1392, 1442-1449, 1451-1495, 1563-1567, 1583-1591, 1648-1654, and 1658-1665); (d) miscellaneous files on Indian Affairs in B.C., concerning schools, game laws, fisheries, military service, etc. (parts of RG-10 volumes 6001-6002, 6031, 6036-6040, 6422-6423, 6731-6737, 6762-6765); (e) records of the B.C. Indian Reserve Commission, 1877-1910, and the McKenna-McBride Commission (RG-10 volumes 1273-1286); (f) computerized index and file list for the School files Series (for the files themselves see section (d), above); and (g) Schools Branch letter-books and related accounts (RG-10 volumes 1287-1306).

   (Available at: Reference Room, Provincial Archives of British Columbia, 655 Belleville, St., Victoria, B.C., V8V 1X4; tel. 1-604-387-3620).

Alberta

1. University of Calgary: (a) Black Series files (all non-restricted files in RG-10 volumes 3555-4095; ON ORDER AS OF MARCH 1982 — NOT YET AVAILABLE FOR RESEARCH); (b) Black Series registers and register indexes — part only (RG-10 volumes 4095-4246); (c) Red Series files (all non-restricted files in RG-10 volumes 1855-3251; (d) Red Series registers and register indexes (RG-10 volumes 3252-3554 approximately); (e) Red and Black Series Box Lists and computerized subject indexes (APPARENTLY ON ORDER AS OF MARCH 1982-NOT YET AVAILABLE FOR RESEARCH); (f) Deputy Superintendent General of Indian Affairs Letterbooks (RG-10 volumes 1078-1133); and (g) Headquarters Letterbooks (RG-10 volumes 4376-5836).

   (Available at: Microfilm Section, University of Calgary Library, Third Floor, 2500 University Drive N.W., Calgary, Alberta, T2N 1N4; tel. 1-403-284-5962).

2. Glenbow-Alberta Institute Archives (Calgary): (a) two isolated Black Series files on the Kootenay Indians (RG-10 volume 3719 file 22673 and volume 3738 file 28013); (b) Treaty annuity paylists for Treaty 4 (1874-1900), Treaty 6 (1876-1900), Treaty 7 (1877-1900) and Treaty 8 (1899-1900). (Headquarters copies, from DIAND, Ottawa, Programme Reference Centre, Treaty Annuity Paylist Collection).

   (Available at: Glenbow-Alberta Institute Archives, 9th Avenue and 1st Street S.E., Calgary, Alberta T2G 0P3; tel. 1-403-264-8300)

3. Provincial Archives of Alberta (Edmonton): (a) Black Series files (all non-restricted files in RG-10, volumes 3555-4095); (b) Schools Files (RG-10 volumes 6001-6491); (c) computerized subject indexes to the Black Series and Schools files.

   (Available at: Provincial Archives of Alberta, 12845-102d Avenue, Edmonton, Alberta, T5N 1M6; tel. 1-403-427-1750).

4. Nakoda Institute (Morley): (a) All non-restricted microfilm of RG-10 that is available to date (with all computerized subject indexes); (b) the entire collection (about 50,000 titles) of pre-1900 books on Canada microfilmed by the Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions. (NOTE: PART OF COLLECTION IS STILL ON ORDER AND IS NOT YET AVAILABLE FOR RESEARCH).

   (Available at: Nakoda Institute, c/o Stoney Indian Tribe, Morley, Alberta, T0L 1N0; tel. 1-403-881-3949/881-3951)

Saskatchewan

Saskatchewan Archives Board (Regina): Extracts from isolated Black Series files on Saskatchewan subjects, microfilmed as SAB reel no. 2.575. Files covered are: RG-10 vol. 3573 file 136G; v. 3666 f. 10181; v. 3682 f. 12667; v. 3729 f. 26137; v. 3732 f. 26623; v. 3761 f. 32182; v. 3782 f. 40468-1; v. 3870 f. 88298; v. 3984 v. 167049; and v. 4053 f. 379203-1 and 379203-2.

(Available at: Saskatchewan Archives Board (Regina), University of Regina, Regina, Saskatchewan, S4S 0A2; tel. 1-306-565-4068).

Manitoba

1. Provincial Archives of Manitoba: Selected Schools Files relating to Manitoba, with shelf list and computerized subject index. (Files are taken from RG-10 volumes 6001-6319 and 6480-6491, on microfilm reels C-7953 to 7963, C-8134 to 8142, C-8146 to 8151, C-8639 to 8666, and C-8800.) (NOTE THAT REELS C-8134 to 8142 and C-8147 to 8151 ARE NOT YET CATALOGUED OR AVAILABLE FOR RESEARCH AS OF MARCH 1982).

   (Available at: Provincial Archives of Manitoba, Manitoba Archives Building, 200 Vaughan St., Winnipeg, Manitoba, R3C 1T5; tel. 1-204-944-3971).

2. Treaty and Aboriginal Rights Research Centre of Manitoba: (a) Black Series files (all non-restricted files in RG-10 volumes 3555-4095); (b) computerized subject indexes and shelf lists for the Black Series; (c) documents on land matters selected from volumes 1078-1132 (DSGIA Letterbooks); (d) non-restricted files in volumes 6492-6925 and 6943-8096; (e) Manitoba Treaty annuity paylists, 1871 - c. 1900, from volumes 9350-9380; and (f) a large collection of related historical materials from collections other than RG-10.

   (Available at: Treaty and Aboriginal Rights Research Centre of Manitoba, 300-191 Lombard Avenue, Winnipeg, Manitoba, R3B 0X1; tel. 1-204-943-6456. Note that special arrangements should be made with the Director to consult these records, as the collection is also used for current claims research).

3. University of Brandon: Black Series files (all non-restricted files in RG-10 volumes 3555-4095; NOT YET CATALOGUED AS OF MARCH 1982 - TO BE AVAILABLE LATER IN YEAR).

   (Available at: Brandon University Library, Brandon, Manitoba, R7A 6A9, tel: 1-204-728-9520).

Ontario

1. Archives of Ontario (Toronto): No holdings as yet, but the Archives expects to acquire parts of RG-10 through the PACs diffusion program in the foreseeable future.

2. Department of Indian Affairs Library (Ottawa): Holds all non-restricted microfilm of RG-10 available to date (with all computerized subject indexes). Collection is to be expanded as microfilming continues.

   (Available at: Department of Indian Affairs Library, 14th Floor, 10 Wellington Street, Hull, Quebec; tel. 1-819-997-0799).

3. Trent University (Peterborough): A small selection of early Indian Affairs records, including records of the Superintendent's Office, records of the Military Commission for Indian Affairs at Albany, and Western Post records, 1677-1855 (RG-10 volumes 1819-1832, 1836, 1837, and 1839, microlfilm reels C-1220 to C-1224).

   (Available at: The Archives, Trent University Library, Peterborough, Ontario, K9H 2N3, tel. 1-705-748-1413).

Quebec

No known holdings.

New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, Prince Edward Island, and Newfoundland

No known holdings.

Yukon and Northwest Territories

No known holdings.

APPENDIX 4

ADDRESSES FOR RESEARCHERS

ARCHIVES, LIBRARIES, INDIAN ASSOCIATIONS, GOVERNMENT OFFICES, AND OTHER RESOURCES

(MARCH 1982)

Listed here are the addresses and telephone numbers of the main collections of records used by researchers working on Indian history and claims.

This list does not show hours of opening or other special information, since these are subject to change. When you plan a research trip, be sure to contact the offices you want to visit in advance to find out about any unusual access problems. To avoid postal delays, always use special mailing addresses where these are given.

The addresses are organized under the following nine headings:

A. Federal and Provincial Archives
B. Other Archives (Private and Specialized Collections)
C. Church Archives
D. Map, Picture, Film and Sound Archives
E. Indian Associations
F. Department of Indian Affairs Records Offices
G. Other Federal Government Records Offices
H. Libraries in Ottawa
I. Sources of Legal Information

A. FEDERAL AND PROVINCIAL ARCHIVES:

PUBLIC ARCHIVES OF CANADA

395 Wellington Street,
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0N3

General Information: (1-613) 995-5138
Federal Archives Division: (1-613) 996-8507
Manuscript Division: (1-613) 995-8094
Family History Consultant: (1-613) 996-7458
Messages (Commissionaire): (1-613) 992-2562

A. Federal and Provincial Archives (continued)

NATIONAL MUSEUM OF MAN: CANADIAN ETHNOLOGY SERVICE (MANUSCRIPT COLLECTION)

Ashton Press Building,
Northside Road,
Nepean, Ontario

Mailing Address:
National Museum of Man,
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0M8

Curator of Ethnology Manuscripts,
Louise Dallaire: (1-613) 996-4540
Librarian, Elaine Slone: (1-613) 998-3924

Holdings: Field notes, interviews and museum correspondence on Canadian native peoples, including the papers of Marius Barbeau, Diamond Jenness, Edward Sapir, and many contemporary anthropologists.

NATIONAL MUSEUM OF MAN: ARCHAEOLOGICAL SURVEY OF CANADA

Address: same as Canadian Ethnology Service (above)

Curator of Scientific Records,
Geneviève Eustache: (1-613) 996-5250

Holdings: Records and indexes relating to archaeological sites across Canada.

CANADIAN INDIAN RIGHTS COLLECTION (NATIONAL LIBRARY OF CANADA)

J. Alfred Fisher,
Head, Canadian Indian Rights Collection,
National Library of Canada,
Room 215, 395 Wellington Street,
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0N3 (1-613) 992-6628

Holdings: Book and manuscript collections of the former Canadian Indian Rights Commission, and related materials on native history and claims.

PROVINCIAL ARCHIVES OF BRITISH COLUMBIA

655 Belleville Street,
Victoria, B.C.
V8V 1X4 (1-604) 387-5885

PROVINCIAL ARCHIVES OF ALBERTA

12845-102nd Avenue,
Edmonton, Alberta
T5N 0M6 (1-403) 427-1750

SASKATCHEWAN ARCHIVES BOARD

Regina Office,
University of Regina,
Regina, Saskatchewan
S4S 0A2 (1-306) 565-4066

Saskatoon Office,
University of Saskatchewan
Saskatoon, Saskatchewan
S7N 0W0 (1-306) 664-5832

A. Federal and Provincial Archives (continued)

PROVINCIAL ARCHIVES OF MANITOBA

Main Floor, Section B,
Manitoba Archives Building,
200 Vaughan Street,
Winnipeg, Manitoba
R3C 1T5 (1-204) 944-3738/3971

ARCHIVES OF ONTARIO

77 Grenville Street,
Toronto, Ontario
M7A 2R9 (1-416) 965-4039

ARCHIVES NATIONALES DU QUEBEC

C.P. 10450,
Pavillon Caseault,
Université Laval,
Sainte-Foy, Québec,
G1V 4N1 (1-418) 643-2167

PROVINCIAL ARCHIVES OF NEW BRUNSWICK

Mailing Address:
Box 6000,
Fredericton, New Brunswick,
E3B 5H1 (1-506) 453-2637

PUBLIC ARCHIVES OF NOVA SCOTIA

6016 University Avenue,
Halifax, Nova Scotia
B3H 1W4 (1-902) 423-9115

PROVINCIAL ARCHIVES OF NEWFOUNDLAND

Colonial Building,
Military Road,
St. John's, Newfoundland
A1C 2C9 (1-709) 753-9390

PUBLIC ARCHIVES OF PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND

Mailing Address:
P.O. Box 7000,
Charlottetown, P.E.I.
C1A 7M4 (1-902) 892-7949

NORTHWEST TERRITORIES ARCHIVES

Prince of Wales Northern Heritage Centre,
Yellowknife, N.W.T.
X1A 2L9 (1-403) 873-7551

YUKON ARCHIVES

2071-2nd Avenue,
Whitehorse, Y.T.

Mailing Address:
Box 2703,
Whitehorse, Y.T.
Y1A 2C6 (1-403) 667-5321

B. OTHER ARCHIVES (PRIVATE AND SPECIALIZED COLLECTIONS)

This is only a selection of the largest archives holding material relating to Indian history. The best guide to archives in Canada is the Directory of Canadian Archives (Ottawa: Bureau of Canadian Archivists, 1981). For fuller lists of archives and museums relating to native people specifically, see The Native Directory (Ottawa: National Indian Brotherhood/Assembly of First Nations, 1981), Simon Brascoupé, Directory of North American Indian Museums and Cultural Centers 1981 (Niagara Falls, N.Y.: North American Indian Museums Association, 1980), the Directory of Canadian Museums and Related Institutions (Ottawa: Canadian Museums Association, 1981), John E. Hunter's Inventory of Ethnological Collections in Museums of the United States and Canada, 2nd edition (New York: Wenner-Area Foundation for Anthropological Research, 1967), and R.S. Allen's Native Studies in Canada: A Research Guide (Ottawa: DIAND, Treaties and Historical Research Centre, 1982).

For US institutions see The Native American Directory. Alaska, Canada, United States (San Carlos, Ariz.: National Native American Co-operative, 1982), Arnold Marquis, A Guide to America's Indians. Ceremonials, Reservations and Museums (Norman: University of Oklahoma Press, 1974), and, for U.S. archival collections, Francis Paul Prucha's A Bibliographical Guide to the History of Indian-White Relations in the United States (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1977).

BOREAL INSTITUTE FOR NORTHERN STUDIES (LIBRARY)

C.W. 401,
Biological Sciences Building,
University of Alberta,
Edmonton, Alberta
T6G 2E9 (1-403) 432-4409

Holdings: Theses, archival material and research data relating to northern Canadian native peoples. The recent closure of the Boreal Institute has left the fate of the library temporarily uncertain.

CENTRE D'ETUDES NORDIQUES

Université Laval,
Cité universitaire,
Ste-Foy, Québec
G1K 7P4 (1-418) 656-2131

Holdings: Research material relating to native peoples of the Canadian north.

GLENBOW - ALBERTA INSTITUTE ARCHIVES

Glenbow Centre,
9th Avenue and 1st Street S.E.,
Calgary, Alberta
T2G 0P3 (1-403) 264-8300

Holdings: Records relating to Indian and Métis groups throughout western Canada.

HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY ARCHIVES

Shirlee Anne Smith,
Archivist, Hudson's Bay Company,
Provincial Archives of Manitoba,
200 Vaughan Street,
Winnipeg, Manitoba
R3C 1T5 (1-204) 944-3738

Holdings: Historic records of the Hudson's Bay Company relating to the fur trade and native peoples.

MCCORD MUSEUM (ARCHIVES)

690 Sherbrooke Street West,
Montreal, Quebec
H3A 1E9 (1-514) 392-4778

Holdings: Records relating to explorations and the fur trade across Canada.

METROPOLITAN TORONTO PUBLIC LIBRARY (BALDWIN ROOM)

789 Yonge Street,
Toronto, Ontario
M4W 2G8 (1-416) 928-5275

Holdings: Records relating to pre-Confederation exploration, Indian administration, and missions in Ontario and western Canada.

NORTHERN STUDIES LIBRARY (MCGILL UNIVERSITY)

Centre for Northern Studies and Research,
McGill University,
1020 Pine Avenue West,
Montreal, Quebec
H3A 1A2 (1-514) 392-8202

Holdings: Research collections related to the native people of northern Canada.

NORTHERN RESEARCH INFORMATION AND DOCUMENTATION SERVICE

The Co-Ordinator, Northern Social Research Division,
Northern Affairs Program,
Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development,
9th Floor, 10 Wellington Street,
Hull, Quebec

Mailing Address:
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0H4 (1-819) 997-9666

Holdings: Information on recent and current research in the North, particularly social research. Service open to public but copies of reports, etc., must be consulted in the Service's library.

UNIVERSITY OF WESTERN ONTARIO (REGIONAL COLLECTION)

Mr. Ed Phelps,
D.B. Weldon Library,
1151 Richmond Street,
London, Ontario
N6A 3K7 (1-519) 679-6213

Holdings: Archival records relating to the Indian people of southwestern Ontario and the Great Lakes region.

UNIVERSITY OF BRITISH COLUMBIA MUSEUM OF ANTHROPOLOGY

6393 N.W. Marine Drive,
Vancouver, B.C.
V6T 1W5 (1-604) 228-5087

Holdings: Archival material and photographs relating to the Museum's work, and especially to its Northwest Coast art and artifact collections. Visits to the archive section are by appointment only.

B. Other Archives (continued)

WOODLAND INDIAN CULTURAL EDUCATIONAL CENTRE

P.O. Box 1506,
Brantford, Ontario
N3T 5V6 (1-519) 759-2653

Holdings: Archival and other material relating to the Indian people of southern Ontario, and particularly to the Six Nations.

C. CHURCH ARCHIVES

Note: Only the central archives of each church are listed. In most cases you will also find important records scattered among public, private, provincial and local archives. To locate these, consult your Provincial Archives, or the Directory of Canadian Archives (Ottawa: Bureau of Canadian Archivists, 1981).

ANGLICAN CHURCH OF CANADA ARCHIVES

General Synod Archives,
Church House,
600 Jarvis Street,
Toronto, Ontario
M4Y 2J6 (1-416) 924-9192

CANADIAN BAPTIST ARCHIVES

McMaster Divinity College,
Hamilton, Ontario
L8S 4K1 (1-416) 525-9140, ex. 4401

PRESBYTERIAN CHURCH IN CANADA ARCHIVES

Knox College Library,
59 St. George Street,
Toronto, Ontario
M5S 2E6 (1-416) 595-1277

ROMAN CATHOLIC ARCHIVES

Most of the records relating to Catholic Indian missions in Canada remain in the hands of local parishes, dioceses and individual missionary orders. For addresses, see two guides published by the Saint Paul University Research Centre in the Religious History of Canada: Abridged Guide to the Archives of Religious Communities in Canada (Ottawa: St. Paul University, 1974) and Abridged Guide to the Archives of Catholic Dioceses in Canada (Ottawa: St. Paul University, 1981).

One important central archive - that of the Oblate Order of Mary Immaculate - is in Ottawa:

Archives Deschâtelets,
175 rue Main,
Ottawa, Ontario
K1S 1C3 (1-613) 237-0580 (Fr. Gaston Carrière, archivist)

Holdings: Manuscripts, photographs, and publications relating to Oblate missions across Canada, including material copied from local and foreign collections. Visits by appointment only.

C. Church Archives (continued)

UNITED CHURCH OF CANADA ARCHIVES

Victoria University,
Avenue Road at Queen's Park Crescent,
Toronto, Ontario
M5S 2C4 (1-416) 978-3832

Holdings: A substantial collection of records relating to missions of the churches which united in 1925 to form the present United Church of Canada (that is, the Methodist, Presbyterian, Congregationalist, Evangelical and United Brethren churches).

D. MAP, PICTURE, FILM AND SOUND ARCHIVES

1. MAPS

Most local and university libraries have small historic map collections. Listed here are the three central federal collections, the most important sources of historic and legal maps for researchers working on Indian history. Other map archives are listed in Lorraine Dubreuil, Directory of Canadian Map Collections (4th edition; Ottawa: Association of Canadian Map Libraries, 1980).

NATIONAL MAP COLLECTION

Public Archives of Canada,
4th Floor, 395 Wellington Street,
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0N4 (1-613) 995-1077

LEGAL SURVEYS SECTION, LANDS AND MEMBERSHIP DIVISION, DEPARTMENT OF INDIAN AFFAIRS AND NORTHERN DEVELOPMENT

Map Collection,
18th Floor,
10 Wellington Street,
Hull, Quebec.

Mailing Address:
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0H4 (1-819) 994-3666

CANADA LANDS SURVEY RECORDS

Legal Surveys Division, Surveys and Mapping Branch,
Department of Energy, Mines and Resources,
535-615 Booth Street,
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0E9

(1-613) 995-4481 (to consult historic maps)
(1-613) 994-5225 (map sales counter, 580 Booth Street, to buy current maps)

2. PICTURES AND PHOTOGRAPHS

Listed here are the Canadian archives with the largest picture collections relating to native people. There are many other important collections, especially in the individual provincial archives and in certain American museums. For further addresses, see Alain Clavet, Guide to Canadian Photographic Archives (Ottawa: Public Archives of Canada, 1979).

D. Map, Picture, Film and Sound Archives (continued)

NATIONAL PHOTOGRAPH COLLECTION

Public Archives of Canada,
3rd Floor, 395 Wellington Street,
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0N3 (1-613) 992-3884

NATIONAL PICTURE COLLECTION (pictures other than photographs)

Public Archives of Canada,
3rd Floor, 395 Wellington Street,
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0N3 (1-613) 995-1300

NATIONAL FILM BOARD (PHOTOTHEQUE)

Personnel Records Centre,
Tunney's pasture,
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0M9 (1-613) 593-5826

Holdings: Still pictures of modern native people and communities. Detailed subject index available in the office. About one-tenth of collection is catalogued in the NFB's *Canada Picture Index*, Vols. 1-6; vol. 7 is entitled *Photothèque: Photos Canada* (Ottawa: National Film Board, various dates).

NOTMAN PHOTOGRAPHIC ARCHIVES

McCord Museum,
690 Sherbrooke Street West,
Montreal, Quebec
H3A 1E9 (1-514) 392-4781/293-4782

YUKON ARCHIVES PHOTOGRAPH COLLECTION

Yukon Archives,
2071-2nd Avenue,
Whitehorse, Y.T.

Mailing Address:
Box 2703,
Whitehorse, Y.T.
Y1A 2C9 (1-403) 667-5321

HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY ARCHIVES (Photo Collection)

Provincial Archives of Manitoba,
200 Vaughan Street,
Winnipeg, Manitoba
R3C 1T5 (1-204) 994-3738

Holdings: Photographs of native people, 19th and 20th centuries. See John Murdoch, *Photographic Holdings of the Hudson's Bay Company* [Rupert House, Que.]: Cree Way Project, 1974.

GLENBOW - ALBERTA INSTITUTE ARCHIVES (Photo Collection)

The Glenbow Museum,
9th Avenue and 1st Street S.E.,
Calgary, Alberta
T2G 0P3 (1-403) 264-8300

BRITISH COLUMBIA PROVINCIAL MUSEUM

Parliament Buildings,
Victoria, British Columbia
V8W 1A1 (1-604) 387-6514

D. Map, Picture, Film and Sound Archives (continued)

3. FILM AND SOUND

This section lists only federal film libraries. Most provincial museums, and many of the local Indian resource centres (listed in *The Native Directory*) also have collections of filmstrips, tapes, and films.

NATIONAL FILM BOARD

150 Kent Street,
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0M9 (1-613) 992-3848 (Film Librarian)

Holdings: Recent fictional and non-fictional films relating to native people. For older or ethnographic films, see the addresses listed below. Subject catalogues are available. Researchers can arrange to borrow or view NFB films through the Board's Ottawa and Regional offices and through Canadian embassies/consulates abroad. For addresses of NFB outlets outside Ottawa, consult a local federal government information office.

NATIONAL FILM, TELEVISION AND SOUND ARCHIVES (PUBLIC ARCHIVES OF CANADA)

West Memorial Building,
344 Wellington Street,
Ottawa, Ontario

Mailing Address:
395 Wellington Street,
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0N3 (Librarian): (1-613) 995-1311;
visits by appointment are advised.

Holdings: Concentrates on oral history recordings, Canadian commercial films and TV shows, and government productions. Researchers can arrange to view many commercial and ethnographic films relating to Canadian native people at or through this office.

Holdings: Concentrates on the making of current ethnographic and technical films relating to native people. For older material of the same type, see the Canadian Ethnology Service archives, listed below.

NATIONAL MUSEUM OF MAN — CANADIAN ETHNOLOGY SERVICE COLLECTIONS

Ashton Press Building,
Northside Road,
Nepean, Ontario

Mailing Address:
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0M8 (Ethnology archivist): (1-613) 996-4540;
visits by appointment are advised.

Holdings: Ethnographic films relating to Canadian native people. Partially catalogued by region and subject. A number of the Service's older holdings are also available for viewing at the National Film, TV and Sound Archives (see above).

E. INDIAN ASSOCIATIONS

Listed here are the main Indian organizations, and the national Inuit and Métis associations, as of March 1982. Not all Indian bands in any given area are members of the local organization. Representation in some areas is divided among several associations. A more complete list (including Indian Bands, special-purpose organizations, and local Inuit, Métis and non-status groups) is given in The Native Directory (Ottawa: National Indian Brotherhood/Assembly of First Nations, 1981). American organizations are listed in the Native American Directory (San Carlos, Ariz.: National Native American Co-Operative, 1982).

Except where noted otherwise, the historical research office of each group is located at the head office.

1. NATIONAL

Assembly of First Nations
(formerly the National Indian Brotherhood)
5th Floor, 222 Queen Street,
Ottawa, Ontario
K1P 5V9 (1-613) 236-0673

Native Council of Canada (Métis and Non-Status Indians)
5th Floor, 170 Laurier Avenue West,
Ottawa, Ontario
K1P 5V5 (1-613) 238-3511

Inuit Tapirisat of Canada
3d floor, 176 Gloucester St.,
Ottawa, Ontario
K2P 0A6 (613) 238-8181

2. MARITIMES

Union of New Brunswick Indians
35 Dedam Street,
Fredericton, New Brunswick
E3A 2V2 (1-506) 472-6281/523-6144

Union of Nova Scotia Indians
P.O. Box 961,
Sydney, N.S.
B1P 6J4 (1-902) 758-2048/758-3856/539-4107

Newfoundland Indian Government (Ktagmkukewey Mi'kmawey Sagnawuti)
Conne River,
Bay D'Espoir, Newfoundland
A0H 1J0 (1-709) 882-2303

Naskapi-Montagnais Innu Association
Northwest River,
Labrador, Newfoundland
A0P 1M0 (1-709) 497-8353/8592

Abegweit Band
P.O. Box 220,
Cornwall, P.E.I
C0A 1H0 (1-902) 675-3842/892-9584

Lennox Island Band
Lennox Island, P.E.I
C0B 1P0 (1-902) 831-2779/882-2002

E. Indian Associations (continued)

3. QUEBEC

Confédération des Indiens du Québec (CIQ)
P.O. Box 810,
Kahnawake, Quebec
J0L 1B0 (1-514) 632-7321

Association des chefs et conseils algonquins
782-3d Avenue,
Val d'Or, Québec (1-819) 825-5191

Conseil Attikamek - Montagnais
Boulevard Bastien,
Village des Hurons,
Lorette, Quebec
G0A 4V0 (1-418) 842-0277

Grand Council of the Crees of Quebec/Cree Regional Authority
1500 Sullivan Road,
Val d'Or, Quebec
J9P 1M1 (1-819) 825-3402

4. ONTARIO

Chiefs of Ontario
2 Carlton Street, Suite 1411,
Toronto, Ontario
M5B 1J3 (1-416) 596-0618

Association of Iroquois and Allied Indians (A.I.A.I.)
920 Commissioners Road East,
London, Ontario
N5Z 3J1 (1-519) 681-3551

908-77 Metcalfe Street,
Ottawa, Ontario
K1P 5L6 (1-613) 232-1710/1719

Research Office:
R.R. #3,
Wallaceburg, Ontario
N8A 4K9 (1-619) 627-1475

Union of Ontario Indians
2nd Floor, 27 Queen Street East,
Toronto, Ontario
M5C 1R2 (1-416) 366-3527
(1-613) 563-0178 (Ottawa office)

Ontario Reserves Association (Six Nations and Mississaugas of the Credit)
Office of the Secretary,
Ohsweken, Ontario
N0A 1M0 (1-519) 445-2084

Grand Council Treaty No. 3
P.O. Box 1720,
Kenora, Ontario
P9N 3X7 (1-807) 548-4214/5

Grand Council Treaty No. 9
71-3rd Avenue,
Timmins, Ontario
P4N 1C2 (1-705) 267-7911

E. Indian Associations (continued)

5. PRAIRIES

Four Nations Confederacy
274 Garry Street,
Winnipeg, Manitoba
R3C 1H3 (1-204) 944-8245

Manitoba Keewatinowi Okimakanak
145-74 Caribou Road,
Thompson, Manitoba
R8N 0L3 No telephone as yet. Contact individual chiefs for information.

Treaty and Aboriginal Rights Research Centre of Manitoba
300-191 Lombard Avenue,
Winnipeg, Manitoba
R3B 0X1 (1-204) 943-6456
Note: This office serves all Manitoba Indian organizations.

Federation of Saskatchewan Indians
1114 Central Avenue,
Prince Albert, Saskatchewan
S6V 5T2 (1-306) 764-3411

(Research Office)
Box 4066,
109 Hodsman Road,
Regina, Saskatchewan
S4P 3R9 (1-306) 525-9842

Indian Association of Alberta
General Delivery,
Winterburn, Alberta
T0E 2M0 (1-403) 487-0070

(Ottawa Office)
3rd Floor, 100 Gloucester Street,
Ottawa, Ontario
K2P 0A4 (1-613) 235-6701

6. BRITISH COLUMBIA

Union of B.C. Indian Chiefs
440 West Hastings Street,
Vancouver, B.C.
V6B 1L1 (1-604) 684-0231

Aboriginal Council of B.C.
c/o Bill Wilson,
United Native Nations,
240-2609 Granville St.,
Vancouver, B.C.
V6H 3H3 (1-604) 732-3726

7. NORTH

Dene Nation
P.O. Box 2338,
Yellowknife, N.W.T.
X0E 1H0 (1-403) 873-4081

E. Indian Associations (continued)

Council for Yukon Indians
22 Nisutlin Drive,
Whitehorse, Yukon
Y1A 2S5 (1-403) 667-7631
and
704-151 Slater Street,
Ottawa, Ontario
K1P 5H3 (1-613) 236-9844

8. UNITED STATES

National Congress of American Indians
202 "E" Street N.E.,
Washington, D.C.
U.S.A. 20002 (1-202) 546-1168

Note: This organization occupies a position similar to that of the Assembly of First Nations in Canada.

F. DEPARTMENT OF INDIAN AFFAIRS (DIAND) RECORDS OFFICES

To gain access to all Ottawa offices listed in this section, researchers register with the Treaties and Historical Research Centre. For access to records in DIAND Regional and District offices, contact the relevant office directly.

Telephone numbers in Hull, Quebec, can be dialled from Ottawa without long-distance charges.

OTTAWA/HULL OFFICES

GENERAL ADDRESS:

Indian-Inuit Affairs Program
Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development,
North Tower, Terrasses de la Chaudière,
10 Wellington Street,
Hull, Quebec

Mailing Address -- all Ottawa offices of DIAND:
Indian-Inuit Affairs Program,
Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development,
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0H4

TREATIES AND HISTORICAL RESEARCH CENTRE

Room 1924, 10 Wellington Street, Hull

(1-819) 994-1182

INDIAN LAND REGISTRY (formal documentation relating to past and current land transactions)

18th Floor, 10 Wellington Street, Hull

(1-819) 994-3666

F. Department of Indian Affairs (continued)

LEGAL SURVEYS (map collection)

18th Floor, 10 Wellington Street, Hull

(1-819) 994-3366

PROGRAM REFERENCE CENTRE (historical statistics, DIAND internal publications, and miscellaneous membership and economic information)

16th Floor, 10 Wellington Street, Hull

(1-819) 997-9117

INDIAN MEMBERSHIP SECTION (information on status and membership)

18th Floor, 10 Wellington Street, Hull

(1-819) 994-3980/994-4007

INDIAN-INUIT PROGRAM INFORMATION AND SERVICES (current political, statistical and policy information)

Room 1619, 10 Wellington Street, Hull

(1-819) 997-0060

DEPARTMENTAL PUBLICATIONS DISTRIBUTION COUNTER

Main Floor, 10 Wellington Street, Hull

(1-819) 997-0380

OFFICE OF NATIVE CLAIMS (current Indian claims)

20th Floor, 10 Wellington Street, Hull

(1-819) 994-1200

REGIONAL OFFICES

ATLANTIC REGION

Indian and Inuit Affairs,
40 Havelock Street,
Amherst, N.S.

Mailing Address:
P.O. Box 160,
Amherst, Nova Scotia
B4H 3Z3 (Information): (1-902) 667-3818

QUEBEC REGION

Indian and Inuit Affairs,
Ste-Foy, Quebec

Mailing Address:
P.O. Box 8300,
Ste-Foy, Quebec
G1V 4C7 (1-418) 694-4903

F. Department of Indian Affairs (continued)

ONTARIO REGION

Indian and Inuit Affairs,
5th Floor, 55 St. Clair Avenue East,
Toronto, Ontario
M4T 2P8 (1-416) 966-5544

MANITOBA REGION

Indian and Inuit Affairs,
11th Floor, 275 Portage Avenue,
Winnipeg, Manitoba
R3B 3A3 (1-204) 949-4928

SASKATCHEWAN REGION

Indian and Inuit Affairs,
2332-11th Avenue,
Regina, Saskatchewan
S4P 2G7 (1-306) 359-6421

ALBERTA REGION

Indian and Inuit Affairs,
4th Floor, 9942-108th Street,
Edmonton, Alberta
T5K 2J5 (1-403) 420-2836

BRITISH COLUMBIA REGION

Indian and Inuit Affairs,
Pacific Centre Ltd., 700 West Georgia Street,
P.O. Box 10061,
Vancouver, B.C.
V7Y 1C1 (1-604) 544-1296/1298

YUKON REGION

Indian and Inuit Affairs,
Whitehorse, Y.T.

Mailing Address:
P.O. Box 4100,
Whitehorse, Y.T.
Y1A 3S9 (1-403) 667-7855

NORTHWEST TERRITORIES REGION

Indian and Inuit Affairs,
Bellanca Building, 4914-50th Street,
Yellowknife, N.W.T.

Mailing Address:
P.O. Box 2760,
Yellowknife, N.W.T.
X0E 1H0 (1-403) 920-8283

INDIAN MINERALS ADMINISTRATION OFFICES

EASTERN REGION

Indian Minerals (East),
Suite 302, 1 Front Street West,
Toronto, Ontario
M5J 1A4 (1-416) 369-4615

F. Department of Indian Affairs (continued)

WESTERN REGION
Indian Minerals (West),
Government of Canada Building,
Room 654, 220-4th Avenue S.E.
Calgary, Alberta

Mailing Address:
P.O. Box 2924, Station M,
Calgary, Alberta
T2P 2M7 (1-403) 231-5625

G. OTHER FEDERAL GOVERNMENT RECORDS OFFICES

Each Federal department has its own rules for granting public access to current records. The offices listed below have made information on Indian issues available to researchers in the past (subject to restrictions described in Appendix 2 of this book).

To locate and gain access to the records of departments not listed here, contact: the department's "Research" division (if it has one); or the head of the department's Administration Branch; or the office of the Minister or Deputy Minister. In regional or local offices, approach the section responsible for the subject you are researching, or else the Director or Superintendent of the office.

NORTHERN AFFAIRS PROGRAM (DEPARTMENT OF INDIAN AFFAIRS AND NORTHERN DEVELOPMENT)

Treaties and Historical Research Centre (see note below)
Room 1924, 10 Wellington Street,
Hull, P.Q.

Mailing Address:
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0H4 (1-819) 994-1182

Holdings: Records relating to native affairs in the N.W.T. and Yukon, and to departmental research on northern affairs generally. At the moment, researchers must request access to Northern Affairs files by contacting the Treaties and Historical Research Centre of the Indian-Inuit Affairs Program.

PARKS CANADA (DEPARTMENT OF THE ENVIRONMENT)

Program Management Division,
5th Floor, 10 Wellington Street,
Hull, Quebec

Mailing Address:
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 1G2 (1-819) 994-1790

Holdings: Records relating to: (a) National Parks across Canada - current and historical; (b) current research on Federal "historic sites", including those connected with the fur trade; (c) archaeological research; and (d) files relating to certain western Indian reserves from the old Dominion Lands Branch series of the Interior Department, held by the Realty Policy Division (tel. 1-819-994-2444); a list of these files is available from the archivist in charge of RG-15, Public Archives of Canada (tel. 996-8507).

G. Other Federal Records Offices (continued)

CANADA LANDS SURVEY RECORDS (DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY, MINES AND RESOURCES)

Legal Surveys Division,
Surveys and Mapping Branch,
Department of Energy, Mines and Resources,
535-615 Booth Street,
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0E9 (1-613) 995-4481

Holdings: Historic maps, surveyors' field notes, and some files relating to surveys of Indian reserves, settlements, and adjacent lands since 1867. Most (but not all) are also available on microfiche in the Legal Surveys Section of DIAND.

PRIVY COUNCIL (ORDER IN COUNCIL SECTION)

Office of the Privy Council,
Room 320, 85 Sparks Street,
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0A3 (1-613) 992-3020

Holdings: Copies of, and indexes to, federal Orders-in-Council passed in the last five years. Orders more than five years old are found in the Public Archives of Canada, Federal Archives Division, Record Group 2, Series 1.

REGISTRATION OF LAND PATENTS (DEPARTMENT OF CONSUMER AND CORPORATE AFFAIRS)

Chief of Registration, Registrar-General's Office,
Department of Consumer and Corporate Affairs,
Place Du Portage, Tower I, 50 Victoria Street,
Hull, Quebec

Mailing Address:
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0C9 (1-819) 997-1265

Holdings: Land patents issued to confirm grants of surrendered Indian lands sold to non-Indians, dating from 1867 to the present day. Copies of patents up to about 1960 are also held by the Indian Land Registry, DIAND.

NATIVE HEALTH SERVICES (HEALTH AND WELFARE CANADA)

Native Health Services Division,
Medical Services Branch, Health and Welfare Canada,
19th Floor, Jeanne Mance Building,
Tunney's Pasture,
Ottawa, Ontario

Mailing Address:
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0K9

Information officer (1-613) 996-8025
Records manager (1-613) 996-8348
Reference collection (1-613) 995-3561
Native health policy consultant (1-613) 996-0737

Holdings: Historic policy, hospital, and case files of the Indian and Native Health Services section, dating back to the 1920s; and current research and reference collections on native health.

G. Other Federal Records Offices (continued)

NATIVE CITIZENS' DIRECTORATE (SECRETARY OF STATE)

Department of the Secretary of State,
29th Floor, 15 Eddy Street,
Terrasses de la Chaudière,
Hull, Quebec

Mailing Address:
Secretary of State,
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0M3 (1-819) 994-2066

Holdings: Recent federal records on native organizations and Métis/non-status claims activities.

NORTHERN PIPELINE AGENCY

Office of the Commissioner,
8th Floor, Victoria Building,
140 Wellington Street,
Ottawa, Ontario

Mailing Address:
P.O. Box 1605, Postal Station "B",
Ottawa, Ontario
K1P 5A0 (1-613) 992-9652

Holdings: Records relating to northern pipeline research. Note that the Agency also has regional offices in Calgary, Whitehorse and Vancouver.

CANADIAN WILDLIFE SERVICE (DEPARTMENT OF THE ENVIRONMENT)

Place Vincent Massey,
351 St. Joseph Boulevard,
Hull, Quebec
K1A 0E7 General Information: (1-819) 997-1271
Migratory Birds section: (1-819) 997-1123

Holdings: Information on wildlife and conservation research generally.

H. LIBRARIES IN OTTAWA

For addresses of provincial or university libraries near you, look in a telephone directory or ask at your local public library.

Listed here are some Ottawa libraries that you may find useful on research trips. All are open to the public, but ordinarily no books can be taken out. Most have photocopy services: charges for copying vary from none to 25 cents per page.

1. NATIONAL LIBRARY OF CANADA

2nd Floor, 395 Wellington Street,
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0N4

Enquiries and General Reference	(1-613) 995-9481
Circulation Desk	(1-613) 996-3260
Interlibrary Loan	(1-613) 995-7591
Canadian Government Documents	(1-613) 996-3842
Newspapers Collection	(1-613) 996-1338
Rare Books Collection	(1-613) 996-1318

H. Libraries in Ottawa (continued)

Note: Researchers can get a special pass and, if supply permits, a book locker allowing them to use material 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. Call 996-3260 for information.

2. PUBLIC ARCHIVES LIBRARY

2d floor, 395 Wellington Street,
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0N3 (1-613) 992-2669

Holdings: Good general reference collection of Canadian government documents and historical sources. Separate from and smaller than the National Library, but somewhat easier to use.

3. DEPARTMENT OF INDIAN AFFAIRS LIBRARY

14th Floor, 10 Wellington Street,
Hull, Quebec (1-819) 997-0797

Holdings: A very good general collection on native affairs.

4. PARKS CANADA LIBRARY

5th Floor, 10 Wellington Street,
Hull, Quebec (1-819) 997-1767

5. PARKS CANADA DOCUMENTATION CENTRE

23rd Floor, 10 Wellington Street,
Hull, Quebec (1-819) 994-2844

Holdings: Unpublished material and indexes relating to parks and wildlife.

6. HEALTH AND WELFARE LIBRARY

8th Floor, Brooke Claxton Building,
Tunney's Pasture, Ottawa (1-613) 996-4434

Holdings: Material on Indian and Inuit health.

7. LIBRARY OF PARLIAMENT

Parliament Buildings (Centre Block),
Ottawa, Ontario (1-613) 992-2896

Holdings: Not normally open to the public for general research, but can be used for special work on certain parliamentary and government documents that are not easily available elsewhere.

8. CANADIAN INSTITUTE FOR SCIENTIFIC AND TECHNICAL INFORMATION (CISTI)

Building M-55, National Research Council,
Montreal Road,
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0S2 (1-613) 993-1600

Holdings: Canada's national science and medicine library. Extremely useful for all research on topics such as health, sociology and technical aspects of economic development.

H. Libraries in Ottawa (continued)

9. OTTAWA PUBLIC LIBRARY (Main Branch)

120 Metcalfe Street (at Laurier)
Ottawa, Ontario
K1P 5M2 (1-613) 236-0301

Holdings: A good general library.

10. UNIVERSITY OF OTTAWA LIBRARIES

General: Morrisset Library,
Hastey St. and Cumberland Lane,
Ottawa, Ontario
K1N 6N5 (1-613) 231-6880

Science and Medicine: Vanier Library,
11 Somerset St. East (at Nicholas)
Ottawa, Ontario
K1N 6N5 (1-613) 231-2322

Holdings: Good general research libraries. The Morrisset Library has the cheapest public photocopying in Ottawa (8 cents/page; 5th floor, self-serve only; call 231-2279 for information on hours of service).

11. CARLETON UNIVERSITY LIBRARY

Murdoch Maxwell MacOdrum Library,
Colonel By Drive,
Ottawa, Ontario
K1S 5B6 Reference: (1-613) 231-2683

Holdings: Good general research library. Has somewhat better collections on Canadian history and ethnology than does the University of Ottawa.

I. SOURCES OF LEGAL INFORMATION

NATIVE LAW CENTRE

University of Saskatchewan,
410 Cumberland Avenue North,
Saskatoon, Saskatchewan
S7N 1M6 (1-306) 244-9720

Holdings: Research material on native law in Canada, held at the Centre, and at the University of Saskatchewan Law Library.

CANADIAN INDIAN LAWYERS' ASSOCIATION

3634 Victoria Avenue,
Regina, Saskatchewan,
S4T 1M3

SUPREME COURT OF CANADA

Wellington Street (at Kent)
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0J1 Registrar's office: (1-613) 996-2052
Library: (1-613) 995-6354/5

Holdings: The Registry holds files of documents relating to current and past Supreme Court cases on native issues. The library has a complete reference collection, including law reports, statutes, and journals. Open only when the Court is in session.

FEDERAL COURT OF CANADA (TRIAL AND APPEAL LEVELS)

Federal Court of Canada Annex Building,
Wellington Street (at Kent)
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0H9

Registrar's offices: (1-613) 992-4238 (Trial)
(1-613) 996-6795 (Appeal)
To order and view files: (1-613) 992-9928

Holdings: The Registry holds files of documents relating to native law cases (past and current) brought before the Federal Court and the old Exchequer Court of Canada.

UNIVERSITY OF OTTAWA LAW LIBRARY

59 Copernicus Street (at Osgoode),
Ottawa, Ontario
K1N 6N5 (1-613) 231-4943

Holdings: A good general reference library; open outside civil service hours.

INDIAN LAW RESOURCE CENTRE

601 "E" Street S.E.,
Washington, D.C.
U.S.A. 20003 (1-202) 547-2800

Holdings: Research material on Native law in the U.S.A.

SUBJECT INDEX

See also the Glossary
(pages 300 - 330) for
subjects not indexed
here.

Aboriginal peoples outside Canada, 195-6

Access to records, 135-37, 331-43

Addresses of research collections, 352-72

Alberta - bibliographies, 19, 208

Annuities, see Treaties

Anthropology - bibliographies, 197-218

Archaeology, 268-70

Archives
  - to find and use, 1-2, 10-11, 226-31, 281, 352-72
  - Band archives, 226, 279
  - Public Archives of Canada, 233-49, 352
  - provincial and local, 9-11, 226-31, 342, 353-57
  - foreign, 260-64

Art and artists, 178-9

Audio-visual material, 7-10, 215-16, 249, 360

Autobiographies, 186-90

Band Councils
  - addresses, 361
  - history of, 155-59, 253
  - minutes of, 156
  - bylaws of, 159

Bibliographies
  - Indian local history, 17-22
  - general, 197-218

Biographies, 186-90

Border-crossing, see International Issues

British Columbia - bibliographies, 19, 57, 209

British North America Act, see Constitution

Businesses - Indian, 106, 110-12

Bylaws, see Band Councils

Certified True Copies, 284

Children's literature, 200

Church records
  - use of, 227-29
  - location of, 176-77, 260, 263, 357-8

Claims - Indian
  - bibliographies, 265-68
  - role of researcher in, 25-28
  - how to write up, 296-99
  - types of, 25, 296-99, 303
  - outside Canada, see International issues

Constitution, 45, 151-54

Courts (see also Claims and Legal Research)
  - structure, 258, 305
  - copies of decisions, 258, 266-68

Crown Lands, 45

Department of Indian Affairs
  - addresses, 364-67
  - departments in charge of, 21, 246, 250
  - historic records, 234-47
  - current records, 250-56
  - annual reports, 10-11, 21-22
  - Regional and District Offices, 9, 231-2

Economic Development (see also Finances, Taxation, Trust Funds), 104-20

Education, 83, 160-63

Elders, see Oral History

Entitlement, see Reserves

Eskimo, see Inuit

Experts - as advisors, 286-88

Expropriation, see Reserves

Family Trees, 130-32

Farming, 105, 112

Filing systems, 278-80

Films, 215, 249, 360-61

Finances
  - Band, 104-117
  - federal government, 109-19

Fishing, see Hunting, Fishing and Trapping

Folklore and mythology, 176

France - research in, 262

Fur trade - sources, 121-29, 270-73

Genealogy, 130-49

Glossary, 300-330

Government records
  - Department of Indian Affairs, 234-56
  - other federal, 247, 256-59, 367-69
  - provincial and local, 197, 226-31, 342, 353-7

Government - Indian forms of, 155-59

Great Britain - research in, 261

Health, 163-67, 257

Historiography, 210-15

Hudson's Bay Company records, 270-73, 343

Hunting, fishing and trapping, 81, 121-28, 258

Indian Act, 265, 309

Indian Land Registry, 252, 310-12

Indian organizations
  - records, 155-59, 229
  - addresses, 361-64

Indian status, 130-49, 253, 312

Interlibrary loan, 281-82

International issues
  - border-crossing and related, 172-4
  - claims outside Canada, 172-4, 263
  - world aboriginal peoples, 195-6

Interviews, see Oral History

Inuit, 191-93, 204

Italy - research in, 263

Justice and law enforcement, 167-69

Labour, Indian, 106, 112

Land, see Reserves; Hunting, Fishing and Trapping; Economic Development; etc.

Land use and occupancy studies, 121-28, 314

Languages, native, 179-83

Lawyers, 287-88

Leasing, see Reserves

Legal research (see also Claims and Indian Act)
  - sources and methods, 265-68, 325
  - libraries, 371-72

Libraries
  - how to use, 10-11
  - addresses, 259-60, 369-71

Literature
  - by Indians, 177-85
  - Indians in, 210-15

Local history
  - how to write, 5-22
  - bibliographies, 17-22

Locations and location tickets, see Reserves

Manitoba - bibliographies, 19, 208

Manuscript Groups (MGs), see Public Archives of Canada

Maps
  - use of, 7-10, 29-51
  - location of archives, 52-53, 248, 252, 257, 358

Maritime provinces - bibliographies, 20, 58, 206

Membership, see Indian status

Métis, 130-149, 193-5, 316

Microfilm
  - how to use, 282-83
  - locations of, 344-51
  - purchase of, 347-48

Military issues, 171-72

Mineral rights, 46-49, 88-119

Missions and missionaries, 176-77, 227-29, 260, 263, 357-8

Museums
  - use of, 229, 256
  - addresses, 352-57

Music, 177-8

National Library of Canada
  - use of, 259
  - addresses, 369

Native studies courses, 210-215

Newspapers
  - Indian, 184-5
  - use in research, 216-18

North, Canadian - bibliographies, 19, 191-3, 204

Notes - how to take, 274-80

Ontario - bibliographies, 19-20, 57, 205-09

Oral history, 5-18

Orders-in-Council, 29, 98, 103, 257, 318-19

Organizations, Indian, 155-59 229, 361-64

Paylists, see Treaties

Periodicals, see Newspapers

Photocopying, 277, 283

Photographs and pictures
  - use of, 7-10, 215
  - archives, 7, 248, 358-9

Politics, Indian, see Band Councils; Indian organizations

Population figures, see Statistics

Prairie Provinces - bibliographies, 19, 57, 208

Prehistory, see Archaeology

Privacy Act, see Access

Public Archives of Canada
  - address, 352
  - use of, 198, 233-49
  - Record Group 10, 234-45
  - Other Record Groups, 245-8
  - Manuscript Groups, 198, 245-8
  - other collections, 248-9

Publishing, 294-96

Quebec - bibliographies, 20, 207

Record Groups, see Public Archives of Canada

Regulations, 51, 98, 266

Religion, 174-77, 227-29

Restrictions on records, see Access

Research methods
  - local history, 5-22
  - advanced, 220-299
  - planning and budgeting, 220-25
  - main sources, 5-22, 226-73
  - evaluating and writing up findings, 286-92
  - use of research, 293-99
  - claims, 25-28, 296-99
  - research and style manuals, 22, 218

Reserves, Indian
  - history and status of, 29-61, 230
  - lists and maps of, 51-59, 358
  - survey and establishment of, 29-42
  - Treaty land entitlement, 77-81
  - location and location tickets, 39-40, 315
  - special reserves, 46
  - expropriation and rights of way, 43
  - leasing of, 39-40
  - surrender and sale of, 45, 88-119, 257, 326
  - resources on, 46-49, 88-119
  - valuation of, for claims, 106, 113

Resources, see Minerals, Timber, Water

RG-10, see Public Archives of Canada and Department of Indian Affairs

Rights of Way, see Reserves

Royal Canadian Mounted Police, 167-69, 247

Royal Proclamation of 1763, 323

Saskatchewan - bibliographies, 19, 208

Schools, see Education

Settlements, 45, 55

Social services, 112, 163-67

Sound archives, 249, 360-61

Statistics, 134-48, 252-53

Storage of records, 293-95

Style manuals, see Research Methods

Surrenders
  - land, see Reserves
  - mineral and timber, 88-102
  - and Treaties, 62

Surveys, 29-42, 51-56

Taxation of Indians, 108, 117

Timber rights, 46-49, 88-119

Trapping, see Hunting, fishing and trapping

Treaties (see also Claims)
  - negotiation, 62-76, 327-8
  - fulfilment of, 77-87
  - copies of, 67-68, 72
  - annuities and annuity paylists, 73, 82, 139-47, 301
  - land, see Reserves

Trust Funds, 96, 107, 113, 329

United States - research in, 59, 209-10, 263

Urban Indian issues, 169-70

Veterans' Rights, see Military

Voting rights, 159

Water rights, 48, 58

Women - Indian
  - status and rights, 148-9
  - biographies, 186-90

Writing, see Research Methods

POOR

QUALITY

ORIGINAL